

Spw

733

Karl Hansfordel
Nördlingen

Study and Recreation.

ENGLISCHE
CHRESTOMATHIE

für

REAL- UND GELEHRTE-SCHULEN UND DEN PRIVATGEBRAUCH

bearbeitet

von

LUDWIG GANTTER,

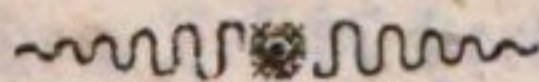
Englischer Lector am K. obern Gymnasium und der K. polytechnischen Schule
zu Stuttgart.

Erster Cursus

für

Mittlere Classen.

Zweite veränderte Auflage.



STUTTGART.

VERLAG VON EBNER & SEUBERT.

1852.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

Vorwort zur zweiten Auflage.

We spend much time in youth, in admiring the wards of a key,
which we should employ in opening the cabinet and examining its
treasures. Sir Walter Scott.

Als ich beim Antritt meines öffentlichen Lehramtes meine englische Chrestomathie ausarbeitete, berücksichtigte ich zunächst das Bedürfniß der Schüler der K. Polytechnischen Schule und des K. oberen Gymnasiums dahier, und versuchte einen für ihr reiferes Alter passenden Lehrstoff zu sammeln. Da dieselben zugleich Anfänger waren, mußte ich in einem einzigen Bande ihnen die Mittel geben, von den Elementen an bis zum Verständniß der klassischen Literatur fortschreiten zu können, wobei natürlich nicht zu lange bei dem rein Elementaren verweilt werden konnte. Da aber dieses Buch die ursprünglichen Grenzen bald überschritt, und sich im ganzen deutschen Vaterlande, hauptsächlich im Norden, wo das Englische schon in niederen Klassen getrieben wird, Eingang verschaffte, so wurden bald Wünsche laut, und zwar von den tüchtigsten Philologen Deutschlands, wie z. B. Rektor Dr. Fricke zu Gladbach, Dr. Berglein zu Lennep und Dr. Philippi zu Düsseldorf, welche dahin gingen, es möchte der elementare Theil mehr berücksichtigt werden, damit dieses Buch auch an unteren und mittleren Anstalten mit Erfolg benützt werden könnte. Obgleich für meine Zwecke die Anlage des Buches hinreichte, so hielt ich es doch für eine Pflicht der Dankbarkeit für die günstige Aufnahme des Buches, dem Rathe wohlmeinender und nachsichtsvoller Männer zu folgen, und da ich zugleich — man erlaube mir, den abgenützten Ausdruck zu gebrauchen — dadurch eine Lücke ausfüllen konnte, die meines Wissens noch in englischen Lesebüchern für Schüler von 10—14 Jahren vorhanden ist, so habe ich die Chrestomathie in zwei Cursus getheilt, von denen der erste einen sprachlich und inhaltlich lehrreichen Stoff für Schüler unterer und mittlerer Klassen bilden soll, und der zweite als ein Handbuch der englischen Literatur — wenn ein solcher Name für ein Buch von beschränktem Umfange erlaubt ist — für die höheren Klassen gebraucht werden kann. Dadurch ist es mir möglich geworden, reichlicher aus englischen Jugendschriften zu schöpfen, die in andern Lesebüchern so wenig benützt worden sind, und die ich für die allein sichere Grundlage des englischen Sprachstudiums erachte.

Obgleich durch diese Veränderung des ursprünglichen Planes jene Unbequemlichkeit eintritt, die von Antiquaren und Brüdern, respective Eltern, in pekuniärer Hinsicht beklagt wird, so habe ich doch vorgezogen, gleich bei der zweiten Auflage diese wesentlichen Veränderungen eintreten zu lassen, damit in den vielleicht spätern Auflagen in dieser Hinsicht nichts mehr geändert werden darf. Auch ist die Anschaffung des Werkes dadurch erleichtert worden, weil der Preis sich für jeden einzelnen Band verringert hat. Ich bin daher gewiß, daß diese Umänderung sich des Beifalles derjenigen Lehrer erfreuen wird, denen daran liegt, daß ein Sprachlesebuch nicht nur Anekdoten und lustige Geschichten enthalte, sondern mit dem Unterhaltenden, das bei der ohnehin so schwer geplagten Jugend natürlich nicht fehlen darf, auch Stoff zur Belebung und Erweiterung der allgemeinen Bildung des Herzens und Geistes verbinde. Solcher Lehrer hat sich aber unser deutsches Vaterland mehr und mehr zu erfreuen, besonders seitdem man eingesehen hat, daß der Unterricht in fremden Sprachen (ich meine natürlich zunächst an öffentlichen Anstalten) oft mit besserem Erfolg von deutschen Schulmännern getrieben wird, als von Eingebornen des fremden Landes, die sich selten die Mühe geben, die deutsche Sprache so zu studiren, daß sie Stücke exponiren lassen können, von denen keine Interlinear oder sonst bequeme Uebersetzung (wie z. B. vom Vicar of Wakefield) im Drucke erschienen ist; während wir Deutsche, wenn wir ins Ausland gehen, uns schämen würden, heimzukehren, ohne die Sprache des gastfreundschaftlichen Landes ihrem ganzen Umfange nach erfaßt zu haben. Ich bin auch fest überzeugt, daß, wenn der englische Unterricht im Allgemeinen ernsthafter und wissenschaftlicher betrieben würde, demselben mehr Raum unter den Bildungsfächern unserer Jugend eingeräumt würde, und wenn ich in dieser Chrestomathie mich bemüht habe, einen Lehrstoff zu geben, der sich ebenbürtig an Würde und Ernst dem anderer bevorzugten Sprachen an die Seite stellen darf, so bin ich darin bloß der festen Ueberzeugung gefolgt, die ich während meines zehnjährigen Aufenthaltes in dem von mir so vielgeliebten England erhalten habe, daß die englische Sprache als vollkommener Ausdruck eines ernsten, sittlichstrengen, charakterfesten, freiheitsliebenden Volkes unserer deutschen Jugend von mehr Nutzen werden kann, als die, freilich ebensowenig entbehrliche, aber zu viel Zeit verschlingende Sprache unserer westlichen Nachbarn.

Stuttgart, im März 1852.

Ludwig Gantter.

Inhaltsverzeichnis.

ERSTER ABSCHNITT.

Lesestücke für Anfänger.

	Seite
1. Human Beings. — The Senses (Menschliche Wesen. — Die Sinne)	1
2. Division of Time. — The Seasons (Eintheilung der Zeit. — Die Jahreszeiten)	2
3. Our Homes (Unsere Heimath)	3
4. Vegetables (Pflanzen)	4
5. Animals (Thiere)	5
6. Benefits derived from Animals (Vorthelle die uns die Thiere gewähren).	6
7. Of Earths. — Stones. — Metals (Erde. — Steine. — Metalle)	7
8. Of Cities. — Towns. — Villages. — Land (Städte. — Dörfer. — Land)	8
9. Of Travelling and of Nations (Reisen. — Nationen)	10
10. Commerce. — Trades (Handel. — Gewerbe)	11
11. Of the Wants of Man. — Clothing (Von den Bedürfnissen des Menschen. — Kleidung)	12
12. Some of the Faculties of the Mind (Von einigen Fähigkeiten des Geistes)	13
13. Lessons on Geography (Ueber Geographie)	14
14. England (England)	16
15. Wales (Fürstenthum Wales)	18
16. Scotland (Schottland)	19
17. Ireland (Irland)	20
18. Character of the Principal Nations of Europe (Charakter der hauptsächlichsten Nationen Europas)	21

ZWEITER ABSCHNITT.

Gespräche und dramatische Scenen.

1. Canute's Reproof to his Courtiers (Canut's Zurechtweisung seiner Höflinge)	23
2. The two Robbers (Die zwei Räuber)	24
3. King Alfred (König Alfred)	26
4. The Colonists (Die Ansiedler)	30
5. On Emblems (Ueber Sinnbilder)	33
6. Aversion Subdued (Ueberwundene Abneigung)	38

DRITTER ABSCHNITT.

Erzählungen.

	Seite
1. Both Sides of a Question (Beide Seiten einer Frage). <i>Beaumont</i>	44
2. The Industry of Demosthenes (der Fleiß des Demosthenes). <i>David Blair</i>	45
3. Envy and Emulation (Neid und Wetteifer). <i>Mrs. Barbauld</i>	47
4. Examples of filial Affection (Beispiele kindlicher Liebe). <i>David Blair</i>	48
5. Account of the Admirable Crichton (Eintges über den bewunderungswürdigen Crichton). <i>Hawkesworth</i>	50
6. Sayings of Eminent Men (Ausprüche berühmter Männer) <i>D. Blair</i>	52
7. The Golden Mean (Der goldene Mittelweg). <i>Dr. Johnson</i>	53
8. Difference and Agreement, or Sunday Morning (Abweichende und übereinstimmende Ansichten, oder der Sonntagsmorgen). <i>Mrs. Barbauld</i>	54
9. Generous Revenge (Edle Rache). <i>Dr. Aikin</i>	55
10. The two Brothers (Die zwei Brüder). <i>Thomas Day</i>	58
11. An Early Riser (Frühes Aufstehen). <i>The Student's Manual</i>	61
12. Against Cruelty to Animals (Gegen Thierquälerei). <i>Hawkesworth</i>	64
13. Law (Processiren). <i>Stevens</i>	67
14. The Adventure of a Mason (Abenteuer eines Maurers). <i>Washington Irving</i>	69
15. The Peregrinations of the Sieur Godolphe, the Shell-Gatherer (Wanderungen Godolphs des Muschelsammlers). <i>H. D. Inglis</i>	71
16. Forester (Der junge Sonderling). <i>Miss Edgeworth</i>	81
17. The Valley of Diamonds (Das Diamantenthal). <i>Basil Hall</i>	84
18. Achates Digby (Mein uneigennütziger Freund). <i>Alfred Crowquill</i>	86
19. The Way I made my Fortune (Die Kunst reich zu werden). <i>Dickens, Household Words</i>	91
20. The One Black Spot (Der einzige Makel). <i>Household Words</i>	97
21. Lost in London (Verlassen in London). <i>Household Words</i>	108
22. Promotion (Beförderung, eine Anekdote). <i>London Illustrated News</i>	120
23. A Candid Confession (Ein ehrliches Geständniß, eine Anekdote). <i>London Illustrated News</i>	120

VIERTER ABSCHNITT.

Bilder aus der Natur.

1. The Elephant (Der Elephant). <i>William Martin</i>	
I. Rap. Of the Extinct Species of Elephants (Fossile Elephanten).	120
II. Rap. Of the living Species of Elephants (Von den noch vorhandenen Elephantenarten).	123
III. Rap. The Way Elephants are captured (Elephantenjagd).	125
IV. Rap. Stories about Elephants (Anekdoten von Elephanten).	129
2. The Boa Constrictor (Die Riesenschlange). <i>William Martin</i>	
I. Rap. Description (Beschreibung)	131
II. Rap. Story of a Boa Constrictor (die Riesenschlange, eine Geschichte)	133
3. The Whale (Der Walfisch). <i>William Martin</i>	
I. Rap. Description (Beschreibung)	135
II. Rap. Whale Fishery (Walfischfang)	138
4. The Bread-fruit Tree (Der Brodbaum). <i>William Martin</i>	140
5. Aurora Borealis (Das Nordlicht). <i>David Blair</i>	143

	Seite
6. The Great Earthquake at Lisbon (Das große Erdbeben zu Lissabon, von einem Augenzeugen geschildert). <i>David Blair</i>	144
7. The Sea (Das Meer). <i>Monthly Magazine</i>	148
8. The Tides (Ebbe und Fluth). <i>David Blair</i>	151
9. The Winds (Die Winde). <i>David Blair</i>	152
10. Pearl-Fishing (Perlenfischerei). <i>David Blair</i>	154
11. Observations of one who was born blind, and obtained his sight by couching (Eindrücke eines Blindgeborenen, der durch Staarstechen sehend wurde). <i>Monthly Magazine</i>	155
12. The Mines of England (Die Bergwerke Englands).	
I. Rap. Coal-Mines (Steinkohlengruben)	156
II. Rap. The Lead-Mines in Somersetshire (Bleibergwerke in der Grafschaft Somerset)	157
III. Rap. The Copper-Mines of Cornwall (Kupferbergwerke in Cornwallis)	158
IV. Rap. The Tin-Mines of Cornwall (die Zinngruben daselbst)	159

FÜNFTER ABSCHNITT.

Geschichte.

1. The Ancient Britons (Die alten Britonen). <i>David Hume</i>	160
2. The Romans in Britain (Die Römer in Britannien). <i>Holt</i>	162
3. The Scots and Picts (Die Scoten und Picten). <i>Holt</i>	164
4. The Saxons (Die Angelsachsen). <i>D. Hume</i>	166
5. Alfred the Great (Alfred der Große). <i>D. Hume</i>	169
6. The Battle of Hastings (Die Schlacht bei Hastings). <i>D. Hume</i>	174
7. Henry II.'s Conquest of Ireland (Heinrichs II. Eroberung von Irland). <i>Oliver Goldsmith</i>	176
8. Death and Character of Richard I. (Tod und Charakter des Königs Richard Löwenherz). <i>D. Hume</i>	179
9. Magna Charta (Die große engl. Freiheitsurkunde). <i>D. Hume</i>	180
10. Edward I.'s Conquest of Wales and Scotland (Eduards I. Eroberung von Wales und Schottland). <i>Holt</i>	184
11. Battle of Crecy (Die Schlacht bei Crecy). <i>D. Hume</i>	186
12. The Maid of Orleans (Die Jungfrau von Orleans). <i>D. Hume</i>	192
13. The War of the Roses (Die Fehden zwischen den Häusern York und Lancaster). <i>Holt</i>	203
14. Henry VII. (Heinrich VII.). <i>Holt</i>	207
15. Henry VIII. (Heinrich VIII.). <i>Holt</i>	208
16. The Discovery of America (Die Entdeckung von Amerika). <i>Washington Irving</i>	211
17. "Noche Triste" or the Melancholy Night at Mexico (Die Schreckensnacht oder Corte's Rückzug aus Mexico). <i>William Prescott</i>	216

Anhang I.

Fifty Years, or the Adventures of two School-Fellows, an Allegorical Play in Six Acts (Fünfzig Jahre oder die Abenteuer zweier Schulfameraden, ein allegorisches Schauspiel in 6 Acten). <i>P. Sadler</i>	125
---	-----

A n h a n g II.

Bermischte Gedichte zum Memoriren.

	Seite
1. God save the Queen. — Englische Nationalhymne	248
2. Rule Britannia. — Englisches Volkslied. — James Thomson	248
3. Sea Song. — Seelied. — Thomas Campbell	249
4. The Minstrel-boy. — Der junge Minnesänger. — Thomas Moore	249
5. The Burial of Sir John Moore. — Begräbniß des Sir John Moore. — Charles Wolfe	249
6. The Abbot of Canterbury. — Der Abt von Canterbury. — Old English Ballad	250
7. The Negro's Complaint. — Des Negers Klaglied. — William Cowper.	251
8. The diverting History of John Gilpin. — Hans Gilpins Spazierritt. — William Cowper	252
9. The Pauper's Deathbed. — Am Todtenbett eines Verarmten. — Mrs. Southey	255
10. The Monkey. — Der Affe. — Mary Howitt	255
11. The Orphan Boy's Tale. — Der Waisenknaabe. — Mrs. Opie	256
12. Ode to the Germans. — Ode an die Deutschen. — Thomas Campbell.	256
13. We are Seven. — Wir sind sieben. — William Wordsworth	256
14. The Graves of a Household. — Die Gräber einer Familie. — Felicia Hemans	257
15. The Hour of Prayer. — Die Stunde des Gebets. — Felicia Hemans.	258
16. The Star. — Der Stern. — Anonym.	258
17. The Captive Knight. — Der gefangene Ritter. — Felicia Hemans	258
18. Love of Country. — Vaterlandsliebe. — Sir Walter Scott	259
19. The Warrior's Death-Song. — Des Kriegers Todtenlied. — Miss Landon	259
20. As slow our Ship. — Lied. — Thomas Moore	260
21. The Old Familiar Faces. — Die alten bekannten Gesichter. — Charles Lamb.	260
22. The seven Sisters. — Die sieben Schwestern. — William Wordsworth.	260
23. The Palmer. — Der Pilgrim. — Sir Walter Scott	261
24. The Universal Prayer. — Das allgemeine Gebet. — Pope	261
Wörterverzeichnis und Bemerkungen zum ersten Theil der Chrestomathie	263

ERSTER ABSCHNITT.

Lesestücke für Anfänger.

1. HUMAN BEINGS—THE SENSES.

I AM a human being. I walk upright. All human beings do the same. Other animals walk with their faces towards the ground. I use my legs in walking. Other animals also use their legs in walking.

5

I can see, hear, feel, taste, and smell. Other animals can do the same. Seeing, hearing, feeling, tasting, and smelling, are called the five senses. I see with my eyes, I hear with my ears, I taste with my tongue, I smell with my nose, and I can feel pain in any part of my body. Other animals also see with their eyes, hear with their ears, taste with their tongues, smell with their noses, and feel pain when they are hurt. I can also feel joy, sorrow, and fear. The other animals feel the same. The dog feels joy when he sees his master pleased, feels sorrow when he sees his master uneasy, feels fear when he sees his master threaten him with a whip.

I can speak. I can express what I feel in words. Other animals utter sounds, but they cannot speak. The dog expresses joy by barking and pain by howling: he expresses sorrow by a look, and fear by hanging down his tail between his legs, but he cannot speak.

I can think. Reason is the power of thinking. Reason is one of the gifts which Almighty God, in his great goodness, has bestowed on human beings. God has not given reason to the other animals. He has given to them instinct. Animals which are without reason are called brutes.

I can understand by reason why a house has windows, doors, and chimneys; why a stove is made of metal, and not of wood;

why a pitcher has a handle; why the blade of a knife has a sharp edge; and why my shoes are made of leather, and not of tin, wood, or cloth. The brutes cannot understand what I do. For example, neither a cat nor a dog knows the reason of these things.

5 I can also understand why I am not always permitted to do what I please; why I ought to do what my parents and teachers desire; why I ought to be obedient, diligent, and attentive.

I observe that the rose is like the carnation, for both are flowers; both have an agreeable smell and fine colours; both have
10 a root, leaves, and stem; both grow from a bud; both come out into flower for a short time, and then fade.

But I observe also that they are unlike. The rose differs from the carnation, for it has not the same kind of smell. The rose has thorns, but the carnation has not. I can by reason com-
15 pare the rose with the carnation; and I can distinguish the one from the other.

2. DIVISION OF TIME — THE SEASONS.

I know how many years and months I am old.

I have been taught how time is divided. Seven days make
20 a Week. Four weeks and two or three days make a Month. Twelve months make a Year; six months, half a year; and three months, a quarter of a year.

The names of the twelve months are: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, No-
25 vember, December.

Thirty days has September,
April, June, and November,
February twenty-eight alone,
All the rest have thirty-one.

30 And so there are three hundred and sixty-five days in the twelve months.

When twelve months are past, the old year is at an end, and a new one begins. The first day of the year is called New Year's Day. On that day, neighbours, friends, and relations, wish each
35 other health and happiness.

One hundred years make a century. This century is the nineteenth century. The years are counted from the birth of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. It is now more than one thousand eight hundred and fifty years since our blessed Lord came upon the earth.

40 In the first two months of the year, and in the last month, the weather is often very cold; snow falls, and water is frozen into ice. This season of the year is called *Winter*.

In the three months after February it is not quite so cold; the ice melts; it snows little and seldom; the trees have buds, blossoms, and leaves; the swallows make their appearance; and some flowers, especially the snowdrop, the violet, and the primrose, are in bloom. This pleasant season is called *Spring*. 5

In June, July, and August, the sun is hot, and makes the air warm. Grass is then cut down, and made into hay by drying it in the sun. The heat also ripens the corn and many useful fruits, such as strawberries, currants, gooseberries, and peaches, which grow in gardens; and plums, cherries, apples, and pears, which 10 grow in orchards. This is the *Summer* season.

In September, October, and November, the produce of the fields is gathered. The farmer cuts his corn, which he calls his harvest, with sickles and scythes. He then binds it up in large bundles, called sheaves, and carries it to the barn, where it is 15 threshed.

He puts the corn, when threshed, into large sacks, and sells it to the miller to be ground into flour at the mill. He then clears the cornfield, and ploughs up the ground for other seed.

The owner also gathers the fruit in the orchards, and such as 20 he does not want for his own family, he takes to market and sells. The season in which all this is done is called *Autumn*.

Thus there are four seasons: Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter.

3. OUR HOMES.

25

I live in a house. A house has different floors. There is a floor level with the ground, and there are floors again above that. That part of a house which is level with the ground is called the ground-floor, and the house is said to have as many stories as it has floors. Beneath the ground-floor is the cellar. 30

Each floor consists of one, two, or more rooms. The highest story is generally called the garrets, or attics. The cooking, that is, the boiling or roasting of meat, and the preparing of the food, is done in the kitchen. Rooms in which persons sleep are called bed-rooms. Rooms in which persons sit are often called parlours. 35 Many poor persons are very thankful to have even one room, which serves them for kitchen, sitting-room, and bed-room. A cellar is used by those who are rich enough, as a place in which they may keep coals, or wine, or beer.

The house in which every man lives is his home. The per- 40 son to whom a house belongs is called the landlord. Sometimes a person takes a lodging in the house of another, and pays money

to the owner of the house for permission to live in it. This money is called rent. In some houses several families have separate lodgings.

I live at my home with the family to which I belong. The family consists of my parents, my brothers, and my sisters. My parents are my father and mother, and I know that it is my duty to honour and obey them. I will also love my brothers and my sisters. They are very kind to me, and I will be kind to them. All men are ordered to help one another, even if they are not of the same family; but brothers and sisters have the first claim for help. And I do not think that I should be obeying my parents if I did not everything in my power for those whom my parents love as much as they love me.

4. VEGETABLES.

I know many plants that grow in the garden: such as peas, beans, cucumbers, radishes, parsley, and celery. I know what are weeds, and I can distinguish them from the useful plants.

Various sorts of small trees, or bushes, are planted in gardens; and upon these bushes grow currants, gooseberries, and raspberries. Pears, apples, plums, cherries, and walnuts grow on large trees in orchards. All these fruits are fit to eat, and are also wholesome when they are ripe. But unripe fruit is not wholesome, and ought not to be eaten.

Wheat, barley, oats, rye, and flax grow in the fields. Vetches, beans, peas, turnips, and potatoes also grow in the fields. All these are therefore called field crops.

Trees, which supply us with their fruit in Autumn, delight us in Spring with their white and pink blossoms. We are also refreshed in the heat of Summer under the shade of trees; and in Winter we are warmed by the fire made of their wood.

A tree stands firm because it has a root, which grows deep into the ground. The trunk rises from the root. The trunk is clothed with bark, as with a coat. The branches spread forth from the trunk. Twigs grow on the branches, and leaves and fruit grow on the twigs. A tree has but one thick stem, or trunk; but a bush has several slender stems.

In the beginning of Spring neither leaves nor fruit, but only buds, are to be seen on the twigs. The buds open by degrees, and blossoms and leaves grow from them. The blossoms produce the fruit. The leaves adorn the tree, and screen the fruit from the burning sun. When a tree loses its leaves before the fruit is ripe, the fruit withers or dries up.

When the bark of a tree is injured, the tree becomes sickly, and dies. It is, therefore, very wrong in children to cut or pull off the bark of trees.

5. ANIMALS.

All animals have not the same shape. There is a great difference between a dog and a sparrow, a herring and a frog, a spider and a snail. The dog has four legs, and therefore belongs to the class of animals which are called quadrupeds. Quadruped means an animal which has four legs and feet.

The sparrow has only two legs; but it has also two wings; it is clothed with feathers, and lays eggs; and it belongs to the class of animals which are called Birds.

The herring has neither legs nor wings; it has neither hair, like the dog; nor feathers, like the sparrow; but it is covered with scales. It can neither walk, like the dog; nor fly, like the sparrow; but it can swim — that is, it can move from place to place in the water. For this purpose it uses its *fins* and its tail. It belongs to the class of animals which are called Fishes, and live only in the water.

The frog has four legs. Its hind legs are the longest, and they are more useful for swimming than for moving about on the ground. It cannot walk, but only leap. It lives both in the water and on land, and therefore is one of the animals that are called Amphibious. An amphibious animal means that which lives both on land and in the water.

The spider has eight legs, and has not red, but whitish blood. It is one of the class of animals which are called Insects.

The snail has no legs, and can only creep. It has whitish blood; and is one of the class of animals which are called Worms.

Almost every animal has a peculiar voice. The lark and the nightingale sing; the magpie chatters; the cock crows; the peacock screams; the goose hisses; the owl hoots; the dog barks and snarls; the ass brays; the goat and the sheep bleat; the young pig squeaks; the horse neighs; the cow lows; the lion roars; the cat mews; the frog croaks; and the cricket chirps. The fishes, the worms, and many of the insects seem to have no voice.

Animals are provided by nature with clothing. Some are covered with hair; some with wool; some with bristles; some with feathers; some with scales; and others with shell.

Tame animals are supplied with food by man. Wild animals seek their own food. Some of them kill other animals, and then eat them; these are called Beasts of Prey. Others devour dead

animals; others live on grass, herbs, roots, leaves, flowers, and grain, and even on plants which would poison us.

Oxen, cows, sheep, horses, and goats eat grass. Dogs and cats eat flesh. Fowls and geese eat barley and corn of other
5 kinds. Bees live on the juices of flowers. Caterpillars, and many other insects live on leaves.

Some animals have arms and legs, as the apes: others, such as snakes and worms, have neither arms nor legs. Some animals have two legs; others four, others six or eight, and some many
10 more legs. Some have wings, as birds; others fins, as fishes; and others, as insects and worms, have feelers, like horns, which they can draw in or thrust out as they please.

Animals sleep when they are tired; and some of them, the hare for instance, sleep with their eyes open; some sleep standing,
15 as the horse often does. Many of them sleep in the daytime, because they hunt at night for prey; this is the case with owls and bats, and several wild beasts. Some animals, like the dormouse, sleep through the whole winter, and do not wake till warm weather returns.

Every animal can defend itself against its enemy when it is
20 attacked. Some animals that live in water make it muddy when they are pursued, like the flounder; others drive away their enemies by an unpleasant smell, like the weasel and the pole-cat.

Quadrupeds live upon the earth; birds live in the air; fishes
25 live in the water. Some animals live under ground, as the mole, the rat, the mouse, and worms.

6. BENEFITS DERIVED FROM ANIMALS.

We make great use of some of the animals, particularly of sheep, of oxen, and of cows. The sheep gives us wool, and we
30 make our clothes of the wool. The sheep, when it is killed, gives us meat, which we call mutton.

The flesh of the ox is called beef; and roastbeef is the favourite food of an Englishman. The hide, or skin of the ox, is tanned into leather, and the shoemaker makes shoes and boots of
35 leather. In many countries, the ox draws the plough. The cow gives us milk; and butter and cheese are made of milk.

Horses are useful for riding, for drawing carriages, and for ploughing. Asses are smaller than horses; they are very strong, and carry heavy loads, but are not so swift-footed as horses.

40 In cold countries the rein-deer draws sledges; and in hot countries the elephant and the camel carry heavy loads for the use of men.

Birds are useful in various ways. Some delight us with their song; some serve for food both with their flesh and their eggs; some supply feathers, with which beds are filled. Others destroy vermin, which would injure the fruits, and some large birds kill snakes and lizards. 5

Fowls are commonly kept in poultry yards; water-fowl, such as ducks, swim about in ponds; singing-birds are heard in the woods and fields, and some are, as bullfinches and canaries, kept in cages. Birds of prey, such as eagles, vultures, and hawks, seldom come within the reach of men. 10

Fishes also supply man with food. There are some countries where the inhabitants live all the year round upon fish.

Insects render us service in destroying weeds, and in consuming the carcasses of dead animals which would make the air unwholesome. Bees supply us with honey and wax, which they 15 store in bee-hives.

Some sorts of shell-fish are eatable, such as the oyster, the lobster, and the crab. Mother-of-pearl is found in the shells of fish; the handles of pen-knives are sometimes made of mother-of-pearl. 20

Some little insects are useful in making sponge. They make it upon rocks in the sea; and they live in the holes which we see in the sponge.

The leech, which is a sort of worm, is often very useful to some sick persons, by sucking their blood, and thus saving their lives. 25

Many animals serve us with their skins. Such animals are the ox, the calf, the sheep, the horse, the hog, the goat, the deer, and the ass. Various kinds of leather are made of their skins; and shoes, saddles, harness, trunks, and many other useful things are made of leather. 30

There is also an animal called the seal, whose skin is very useful. Oil for burning in lamps is also obtained from the seal, and from other animals, as the whale.

The skins or hides of animals, when they are thickly covered with soft downy hair, are made into furs. The short hair of some 35 animals is scraped off, and used in making hats.

The animals whose flesh is eaten, are the ox, the sheep, the hog, the deer, the hare, the rabbit, fowls, ducks, geese, turkeys, the partridge, the pheasant, and many others.

7. OF EARTHS — STONES — METALS. 40

There are various kinds of *earth*: for instance, Sand, Marl, Clay, Chalk.

Sand is used by the bricklayer, and mixed with lime to make mortar. Fine sand is sprinkled upon wet writing to prevent its blotting; and in many houses sand is strewed upon floors.

Marl is used by the potter in building his oven. The walls of
5 some cottages are of marl; and the floors of barns and stables are sometimes made of this kind of earth, beaten till it becomes hard.

Clay is wrought by the potter into plates, dishes, jugs, cups, and saucers, and all sorts of earthenware; bricks for the building of houses are also made of clay, mixed with ashes.

10 *Chalk* is burned into *lime* for the bricklayer, and may also be used for writing or rough drawing.

Stone is used for many purposes. One sort of stone, when cut into proper shapes, called Millstones, is employed in grinding corn at the mill. Other stones are used for grinding knives, scis-
15 sors, and hatchets; these are called Grindstones.

Lime-stone and *Free-stone* are chiefly used for large buildings, such as churches, castles, bridges, and public halls. Marble, which is a kind of lime-stone, is used for chimney-pieces, and for statues and busts.

20 *Granite* and *Flint* are cut and broken up to make pavements for streets and roads. But granite is sometimes made use of in buildings.

One of the most useful sorts of stones that we have is the *chalk-flint*; it is ground up in mills, and mixed with fine clay, and
25 is then used in making the better sorts of earthenware.

Slate is also a very useful kind of stone. It is employed in covering the roofs of houses and other buildings; it is also used by children at school to write upon.

Some very costly and beautiful stones serve for ornaments:
30 these are called *precious stones*. The Diamond is the most valuable of precious stones; it is not only very beautiful, but useful also; it is so hard that it is used by the glazier to cut glass. The Emerald is a fine green stone; the Ruby is red; the Sapphire is blue; the Topaz is yellow; the Amethyst is of a violet colour; and
35 the Turquoise is light blue.

In the earth are also found coal, rock-salt, and brimstone; as well as various metals, such as Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Tin, and Lead. Gold, Silver, and Copper are coined into *Money*.

8. OF CITIES — TOWNS — VILLAGES — LAND.

40 In a Country there are Cities, Towns, and Villages. *Cities* are generally larger than towns, though there are some *Towns* that are larger than some cities. In England we call that place a city

where there is a Cathedral, as London, Canterbury, York, Chester, Norwich. Birmingham and Liverpool are large towns, but are not cities.

Many houses, shops, and manufactories, with market-places, churches, and public buildings, together form cities and towns. The largest city in the kingdom is called the *Capital* or the *Metropolis*; here the king resides; the Parliament also sits here; and here the nobility, and other rich persons generally live.

London is the capital of England; Edinburgh of Scotland; Dublin of Ireland; and Paris of France. The building in which a king lives is called a *Palace*.

Between the towns lie corn-fields, meadows, woods, hills, valleys, ponds, rivers, brooks and springs. *Farmers*, who cultivate the land, and rear cattle, live in the country. Near the rivers and the sea dwell the *Fishermen*.

The land outside a town or a village is called the *Fields* or the *Country*. Land which is ploughed and sown with grain, is called *Arable Land*. A field, in which grass and clover grow, is called a *Meadow*. In spring the grass of a meadow is suffered to grow, and it is then cut down, and made into hay for the food of cattle.

A field, in which the grass is not cut, but only eaten off by horses, cows, or sheep, is called a *Pasture*.

A piece of ground which is enclosed with a wall, a fence, or a hedge, and planted with fruit-trees, is called an *Orchard*.

An open piece of ground which is covered with bushes and brambles is called a *Heath*.

In the country there are sometimes tracts of land which are very wet and so soft that a person who should endeavour to walk there would sink into them; these are called *Bogs*.

A spot covered with water which is mostly muddy, is a *Swamp*. A small swamp produced by rain is called a *Pool*.

Some swamps are frequented by various kinds of birds, especially storks, cranes, herons, snipes, plover, wild ducks, and moorhens, which are thence called water-birds.

A small artificial lake is called a *Pond*. The rushes which are used by basket-makers grow in lakes.

Lakes and ponds are frequented by swans, geese, ducks, and other water-fowl; for these birds partly subsist on fish, which generally abound in lakes.

In many places water is seen gushing from the earth; this is called a *Spring*. Where there are several springs together, they give rise to a *Rivulet* or a small *River*.

9. OF TRAVELLING, AND OF NATIONS.

A broad road, running from one town to another, is called a High-road. Narrower roads branching from it, and leading to villages, or other small places, are called By-roads, or Cross-roads.

5 There are various modes of travelling, or getting from one place to another. Men travel on foot, on horseback, by means of a carriage, or they sail in a ship. Some travel for business, others for amusement.

One mode of travelling is by coaches. The man who drives
10 is called the coachman or driver. Stage coaches set off daily from one town to another, carrying travellers with their luggage: and parcels also of various goods. Coaches employed in the king's name to carry letters to and from all parts of the kingdom, are called Mail-coaches. The man who sits behind, and delivers the letter-
15 bags, when they have arrived at the proper place, is called the Guard; because he guards, or takes care of the letters and goods.

A journey which can be performed in a day is called a day's journey. A journey over the sea in a ship is called a voyage. Since steam-vessels have been invented, many persons go on the
20 sea in them, but seldom for a very long voyage.

The longest voyage that can be taken is a voyage round the world, or the earth. Whoever performs this voyage must travel a distance of at least twenty-four thousand miles.

Those persons who travel much hear and see a great deal.
25 They also become acquainted with various sorts of people, animals, and plants, and with many countries and cities.

Great Britain is my native country, because I was born in it. My native country contains a great many cities, towns and villages. In all these together, many millions of people dwell. All the people
30 living together in a country, and speaking the same language, form together a Nation.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, with its numerous cities, towns, and villages, forms only a small portion of a much larger country, called Europe.

35 Europe is but a small part of the vast Earth, or the whole World; and the whole Earth itself is but a very small part of the Universe, that is to say, of all that God has created. For the Sun and the Moon, and all those bright Stars, which we see glistening in the Heavens, belong to the Universe. The Sun alone is many
40 thousand times larger than our Earth.

10. COMMERCE—TRADES.

A City wherein many merchants reside, and in which much trade is carried on, is called a Commercial City. Commercial cities are generally built on the banks of large rivers, because goods may be most conveniently sent from place to place by water. 5

The things which a tradesman offers for sale are called Goods, Wares, or Commodities. A building in which great quantities of goods are kept is called a Warehouse.

All goods are not sold in the same manner. Some are sold by measure; some by weight; some by number; and others by 10 the piece.

Linen and woollen cloth, and cotton and silk goods, are mostly measured with a wooden measure called a yard. A yard is equal to three feet. Each foot consists of twelve inches. Nine inches are a quarter of a yard. Eighteen inches half a yard. Twenty- 15 seven inches three-quarters of a yard. And thirty-six inches a yard.

Liquids, such as ale, beer, milk, wine, and vinegar, are measured by the gallon, quart, and pint. Solids, such as bread, butter, cheese, sugar, tea and many other articles are weighed in scales. 20 The weights are the pound and the ounce; and these are divided into halves and quarters.

Coals used formerly to be sold by the chaldron, they are now sold by the ton weight.

Fruit is sold either by number or measure, as oranges a dozen 25 for a shilling, gooseberries a quart for threepence. Corn is measured by quarters, bushels, and pecks.

The work, or trade, in which a man employs himself, and by which he earns his living, is called his business.

Painters, sculptors, and engravers, are called Artists. 30

Bricklayers, carpenters, blacksmiths, cabinet makers, turners, and persons of similar trades are called Mechanics or Artisans.

Those who are engaged in the making of cotton, woollen, silk, and other goods, in great quantities, are called Manufacturers; and the building in which such business is carried on is termed a Ma- 35 nufactory, or a Factory.

The people who sell small quantities of any thing in a shop are called retail dealers; those who buy larger quantities from the maker, to supply the shopkeepers, are called traders.

Merchants are those who buy and sell large quantities of ar- 40 ticles, such as corn or coals. Merchants also send ships to foreign countries laden with English goods, and bring back the produce of those countries in return.

Many of the articles we have in daily use are brought from a distance of several thousand miles in the ships of the merchants. The tea we use comes from China, and the sugar from the West Indies; cotton comes from India and America; oranges are brought
5 across the sea from Portugal; and even the plums used in our puddings are brought by the merchants from distant parts of Europe.

11. OF THE WANTS OF MAN. CLOTHING.

Wherever men dwell, God, in his wisdom and goodness, has so ordained it, that with industry and care they may obtain all
10 that is necessary for their wants. But what are the wants of man?

If a man were cast on a desert Island, where he found neither food nor drink, he would die of hunger and thirst. If, in a severe winter, a man could not procure fire, he would be frozen, and die; for no one can live without warmth.

15 If a little infant were carried into the fields, where there was no one to feed it, to warm it, to clothe it, and keep it clean, it would soon perish. Warmth, food, clothing, and shelter, therefore are necessary to man. Every one wants all these things, and cannot live without them; they are accordingly called the wants
20 of life.

But all can live without rich food and wine, nor do we require fine clothes or ornaments. These things, then, we do not want; they are not necessary, though they may add to our comforts and enjoyments.

25 A person who is tired may sleep soundly on the earth, though some sleep on beds of down. A chair with a cushion is an agreeable seat, but we can sit and rest sufficiently on a plain bench. A coat of coarse cloth protects us from cold and rain, though one of superfine cloth may look better to the eye. Down beds, cushioned chairs, and fine clothes, are therefore not among the wants
30 of life.

If we have enough of wholesome food, useful clothes, and a decent place to live in, let us be content.

We may often tell by a man's dress what business he follows,
35 or to what class he belongs. By his dress we may distinguish the soldier from the tradesman; the servant from the master; the countryman from the townsman; the miller from the soldier; the baker from the butcher.

The dress of a soldier is called his Uniform; the dress of a
40 servant, his Livery. By his uniform we may know a horse-soldier from a foot-soldier, and a serjeant from a drummer.

12. SOME OF THE FACULTIES OF THE MIND.

I can name all the parts of my dress, and can tell what they are made of.

I know that a shirt is made of linen cloth, and stockings of cotton; a coat of woollen cloth, and shoes of leather; that men's 5 black hats are made of felt, and the hats worn in hot weather by young persons, of plaited straw.

I can tell the difference between what these things are made of, because when I have been once told about it, I continue to understand it. 10

I know that the sun rises in the morning, and sets in the evening; I know also that we have light, while the sun is present, and darkness when it departs.

I know the difference between the sun and the moon, and I know that the light which the moon sometimes gives us at night 15 is not like the light of the sun. I know that we sometimes see a full round moon, and sometimes only a part of it, and I know also that the sun never changes its shape, like the moon.

I know that in Winter trees lose their leaves, and flowers die; that snow falls and water freezes. In Spring, that the trees 20 put forth new leaves, and the flowers begin to grow, and the corn sprouts out from the earth. In Summer, that the Sun shines most brightly, and causes great heat; that gardens are then most beautiful; and the corn ripe for the harvest. In the Autumn I know that fruit is ripe, and in great abundance, that the hops are gathered, 25 and that flowers decay.

I think about what I have to do; about dinner-time, and school-time, and bed-time.

I remember that I must say my prayers to God when I go to bed, and when I rise; that I must attend to my book at school, 30 and that I must behave properly at church.

I can tell to others my thoughts, my wishes, and my feelings, by words; that is, I can speak.

I see the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars in the heavens. Upon the earth I see people and animals: trees, plants, and stones, hills 35 and mountains; rivers, lakes, ponds, brooks, and springs; cities, towns, and villages. In the air I see birds, insects, and bats; in the earth I find worms; in the water, I see fishes.

I hear the song of birds, the cracking of a whip, the neighing of a horse, the murmuring of a brook, the tones of music, and the 40 ticking of a watch. I can hear at a distance the bark of a dog, the crowing of a cock, the report of a gun, the rolling of thunder, and the sound of bells.

I feel that fire burns, and that ice is cold; that the rays of the sun warm me; that stone is hard, wool soft, glass smooth, and bricks rough.

I taste that sugar is sweet, vinegar sour, and that some herbs
5 are bitter.

I smell with pleasure the scent of the rose, the violet, and the lily. I smell with dislike the scent of some other plants and flowers.

I remember a story which I may have heard some time since;
10 and a stranger whom I have once seen; I remember also what I learned yesterday at school.

If I had not a mind, I could not learn or understand any thing. I could neither read nor cipher; for while I am reading and ciphering I must think, and I can think only with my mind.

15 While I am ciphering, I think with my mind of the figures which I have to add or subtract; to multiply or to divide. With my mind I think of what our teacher tells us, and about what I read of in my book. With my mind I think of the punishment I must undergo if I behave ill.

20 I will think on what I have been taught, and I will try to answer the questions my teacher may ask me out of this book. I will also remember the other good lessons I have learned at school. They will then be of use to me as long as I live.

13. LESSONS ON GEOGRAPHY.

25 The surface of the earth is divided into land and water. A continent is a very large extent of land. An island has water all round it, and may be large or small. Great Britain is an island. A peninsula is not quite surrounded with water, being joined on one side to the main land. An isthmus is a narrow strip of land, joining
30 a peninsula to the continent, or connecting two peninsulas or continents together. A cape is a high land or promontory, jutting into the sea, or into any lake or river. A cape is literally a headland. A coast is a portion of the land on the shore of a sea or lake, whether it be rock or sand.

35 A mountain is a very high hill. There are no very high mountains in Great Britain, but plenty in other parts of the world. A hill is a little mountain; you have often been at the top of one, I dare say. But mountain, and mount, and hill, are names sometimes used the one for the other. A valley is a hollow between
40 two hills or mountains; in most instances a stream runs through it. A plain is a flat space of land, that extends some distance. High, open plains, with surfaces consisting in small, round or undulating

hills, are sometimes called downs. A table land means either the flat top of a hill, like the Table Mountain at the Cape of Good Hope, or any portion of land which is much raised above the surrounding country, like the province of Castile, in Spain.

A forest is a large portion of country covered with trees. 5
A wood is a smaller portion. A desert is generally a stony or sandy tract of land, of great extent, and sometimes interspersed with the most beautiful and fertile spots. A park is an enclosed space of ground, usually ornamented with trees and lawns.

A sand-bank is a hill, or heap of sand, formed by the tides 10
of the ocean; some of these are always under water. Those which are formed by sand blown on the shore are called sand hills, and downs. A rock is a great mass of stone, either on the land or in the sea. When a rock is quite hid by the waters of the great deep it is often very dangerous to ships. 15

A ravine, or pass, or a defile, for these are three terms for the same thing, is a narrow passage between two mountains, rocks or cliffs. It is called a pass, because you must pass through it to go from one part of the land to another.

You must bear in mind that the water which is on the surface 20
of the globe takes up three times as much room as the land. I will now describe it more particularly.

An ocean is the very largest space of water. There are but five oceans in all the world. The Atlantic, the Pacific, the Northern, the Southern, and the Indian. A sea is smaller than an ocean, but in 25
books of voyages and travels, the words *sea* and *ocean* are often words for the same thing. A lake is a large body of water, with land all round it. There are salt-water and fresh-water lakes; and some so large that you would take them for seas.

A gulf and a bay, as to their figure, are much the same thing. 30
An arm of the sea running up for some distance into the land is called a gulf. Generally speaking, a gulf runs deeper into the land than a bay does. Look for the Bay of Biscay, and the Gulf of Finland in the map, and you will see what difference there is between them. 35

A strait joins two seas together. It is a narrow neck of salt water. A channel is only different from a strait in this, that it is wider. You will find a strait on the map between Italy and Sicily. Look for the Straits of Dover, between England and France. A creek runs up into the land like a gulf, but it is a great deal narrower. 40

A road or roadstead, is a part of the sea favourable for riding at anchor. Of this kind are Yarmouth Roads. A haven or harbour, is a small gulf, often narrower at its entrance, and much broader inside. A frith is the mouth of a river, or rather the part where it widens itself into the sea. Look for the Frith of Forth in Scot- 45

land. A sound is a shallow strait, where the bottom may be reached with a plummet. A river is a current of fresh water, which, running from the land, empties itself into the ocean, or into another body of fresh water. A small river is called a stream. Some
5 rivers are more than two thousand miles long.

The natural productions of the land are men, animals, birds, reptiles, and insects, as well as minerals and vegetation. The natural productions of the water are fishes, and other living things, shells, coral, pearls, salt, marine plants, &c.

10 The artificial formations on the land are houses, cities, towns, villages, churches, castles, forts, docks, &c. Light-houses are usually built on rocks springing out of the sea. The artificial formations on the water are ships, boats, rafts, &c.

Nations differ in the colour of their skins, the clothes they
15 wear, the houses they inhabit, the food they eat, the language they speak, the knowledge they have obtained, the religion they profess, and the humanity they practise.

In one country the people are white, in another olive, in a third copper-coloured, and in a fourth black. Some nations are
20 governed by kings, and others by representatives of the people. In some countries the climate is hot, in others cold; in one the land is well cultivated, in another it is a waste wilderness. In some places the people are kind, in others cruel. Some nations worship God, and others bow down to stocks and stones.

25

14. ENGLAND.

I shall now describe the most powerful country of the modern world. When we look on the map, and see what a speck the island of Great Britain is, compared with the territory of many other kingdoms, it appears wonderful that its power should be so great.
30 As the oak, the king of the forest, stands among the trees, striking its roots deep into the ground, raising its lofty head in the air, and spreading out its branches on every side, so the British Islands stand among kingdoms. Powerful and majestic, they stretch forth their strong arms to the north and the south, the east and the west.

35 Great Britain, in India alone, extends her power over eight hundred thousand square miles of territory. The largest island in the world, if an island is its proper title, is Australia, which is in Australasia, one of the great divisions of the globe. Here Britain has established colonies, as well as in Van Diemen's land, in Australasia also, and at the Cape of Good Hope in Africa. In parts
40 of America, both North and South, in the West Indies, and in other portions of the world, her empire is acknowledged.

But Great Britain is not only great in power, she has a name among the kingdoms of the earth for justice, generosity, humanity, and piety; and this extends her influence to all parts of the habitable globe. The name of Great Britain is sometimes used to denote the whole British empire, and sometimes simply as consisting of Eng- 5 land, Wales, and Scotland, or the island of Britain only. The English are fond of giving to their country the name of Old England, and it seems to make it dearer to their hearts, conjuring up, as it were, before them, all the noble deeds of their ancestors.

The capital of England, and indeed of the British empire, is 10 London, a wonderful city. Its size is very great, its riches unbounded, and its commerce amazing. Manchester is a wealthy and populous town, famous for its cotton manufactories. Bristol and Liverpool are celebrated seaports, Birmingham and Sheffield are well known for hardwares, and Leeds and Bradford for clothing. 15 Coventry is an ancient city, now famous for watches and ribands. Kidderminster is equally well known for carpets; the fine city of Worcester for porcelain; and the town of Burslem for its potteries. There are two places that must be especially remembered, on account of their universities, the one is the city of Oxford, and the 20 other Cambridge. Canterbury and York are cities in which stand beautiful cathedrals. They are the seats of archbishoprics. Woolwich has a military and naval arsenal, the most ancient in England, and a noble dock-yard. Immense magazines of powder, balls, bombs, mortars, and cannon are kept there. The arsenal at Chatham 25 exceeds, perhaps, that of Woolwich; it is thought to be the finest in the world. Sheerness, Portsmouth, and Plymouth, have also noble dock-yards. Chelsea has a famous hospital for wounded, aged, and invalided soldiers, and Greenwich a still finer one for disabled seamen. 30

The inhabitants of England yield to those of no country under the skies; wise in council, brave in the field, enterprising in commerce, industrious in agriculture, and ardent in pursuit of general knowledge, they are generally acknowledged to have no superiors. The men are well formed, and the beauty of the women is not 35 surpassed in the world.

The animals are various, though there are no wild creatures in the woods of England more formidable than foxes, badgers, otters, and polecats. English horses are the finest in the world, and perhaps the same thing may be said of her oxen; her sheep, too, 40 are excellent. The bull-dog and game cock used to be valued more than they are now, as the cruel sports of bull-baiting and cock-fighting are much on the decline. The British oak furnishes the best timber in the world for building ships. The lofty elm-

trees add much to the beauty of the country; and the ash, the beech, and other trees, flourish in all directions. The grain of the ground is excellent, and the fruits of the trees are good, though, as to some of them, not equal to those in other countries where
 5 the sun has more power to ripen them. Lead, tin, copper, iron, and coal are found in the mines, and freestone and marble in the quarries. The climate is subject to occasional fog, but is still healthy. Vegetation is abundant, and the trees are very fine.

15. WALES.

10 Many a pleasant walk have I had in Wales, that country of simple and hospitable manners; of hills, valleys, and gushing streams. The solitary scenes and retired nooks of this thinly peopled country are more favourable to virtuous thoughts, and quietness and peace. Wales is not large, being only about one hundred and
 15 twenty miles long, and much less in breadth. It is much visited in summer and autumn by tourists, for its beauty, and, for the same reason, by artists, who may be seen sitting here and there on their camp-stools on the top of a high mountain, at the foot of an old bridge, or, at a goodly fall of water. In these situations they
 20 sketch the natural beauties of the country, and afterwards finish their sketches into valuable pictures.

I do not know a better harbour any where for safety than that of Milford Haven. It matters not whether the wind blow from the east or the west, the north or the south, you may sail in or out
 25 without danger. This is saying a great deal; and when I tell you that a thousand ships may ride there in safety, you will think with me that it is a capital haven. Aberystwith and Swansea are bathing places, Merthyr Tydvil is celebrated for its iron works, and Wrexham, the largest town in North Wales, is famous for flannels. Most
 30 people who go from England to Ireland, make for the seaport of Holyhead, and cross the water to Dublin.

In days gone by, the Welsh proved their bravery, for when England was conquered, they retired to their native mountains and remained unsubdued. When Edward the First was king of England,
 35 he defeated Llewellyn, the last prince of the country, and since then the eldest son of the reigning king of England has always been called the Prince of Wales.

16. SCOTLAND.

I can hardly think of Scotland without having before me the figure of a Highland-chief in his plaid and philibeg, or short petticoat; with his broad sword by his side, not forgetting the bonnet, or cap, upon his head. Then, too, I fancy that I see castles, and steep crags, with a screaming eagle flying over them, and high mountains, and deep valleys, and dangerous passes, and rushing cataracts, with moss covered moors, and red deer.

I will tell you the old name for Scotland; it is Caledonia. The northern part is very mountainous and rocky; it is called the Highlands; the southern part is called the Lowlands; it is level compared with the other, and the crops of corn and the pasture growing upon it are good. You must not, however, look for many fine trees in Scotland. Taking the country altogether, it has much that is romantic in its appearance. Among the poets of the country, Robert Burns and Walter Scott are in high estimation.

Scotland is more than double the size of Wales. Its breadth being one hundred and forty miles, and its length twice as much. The waves of the ocean wash it on all sides except the south, where the high Cheviot hills rise to separate it from England, and the Frith of Solway and the river Tweed spread their waters.

The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh. It occupies a commanding situation, and its castle, on a solid rock, is very imposing, as well as Holyrood Palace. One part of the city is particularly elegant; it is called the New Town. Glasgow is the next city of importance, and a noble city too. It has not only capital houses and some public buildings, but also capital manufactories of cotton and glass, as well as others of gloves and stockings. Not a finer city of its size is to be found any where.

No one should see Scotland without visiting the lakes, especially Loch Lomond. Among the mountains Ben Nevis lifts up his head nearest to the skies. Scotland has hundreds of islands; they are called the Western Isles, Orkney Isles, and Shetland Isles. Many of these are uninhabited.

The Scotch people are universally allowed to be hardy, prudent, and industrious. No men are more brave, nor greater lovers of school-learning. Go where you will, you will find the lowest classes of people are not without education. Education is a fine thing. Never let it be neglected. Even of the best kind it is cheap in Scotland; no wonder, then, that the poor of the country have more of it than in some other places.

Iron, lead, and coal are found in Scotland, as well as granite, slate, and marble. Scotch granite is in much repute. The carriages

of London roll along many a street paved with this stone. It grinds into a dust and mud of peculiar colour and texture. Among the curiosities of Scotland, Fingal's cave should be mentioned; it is a cavern, in an island called Staffa, and is more than a hundred feet
5 high and nearly four hundred feet long. Romain remains, such as coins, inscriptions, and vases, have been found in great abundance, as well as druidical monuments.

There was a time when Scotland was a kingdom of itself. It was conquered by the English king Edward the First; but you must
10 know that the Scottish king, James the Sixth, was made king of England, so that he reigned over both kingdoms at once. In 1707 the two kingdoms were united by act of parliament. Great changes take place in nations, as well as among individuals; friends become strangers, and enemies become friends. Scotland and England used
15 always to be fighting one with another; they are now firmly united, and will steadily remain so.

17. IRELAND.

We have been speaking about Scotland, let us now cross over the Irish Sea, and take a peep at Ireland.

20 Ireland is about as big as Scotland, perhaps a little bigger. It lies to the west of Great Britain, and is numerously inhabited. Ireland is well adapted for commerce, for few places have more safe and commodious harbours. Many a good ship has been lost for the want of a haven to shelter in. The country is not mountainous,
25 except in parts of Connaught and Munster, but, on the contrary, flat; it is well watered with rivers and lakes, and in most parts very fertile; vast herds of cattle and extensive flocks of sheep are fed on the pasturage. A large quantity of beef and butter is exported every year, and a great number of pigs. Ireland ought to
30 be a prosperous country. It has seven millions of inhabitants; the land is capable of great improvement; and the natural productions of the country are of great value. Coal, copper, iron, lead, and silver are found, and quarries of slate and marble are numerous. The country is not without manufactures. Irish linen is famous all
35 over the world.

The capital of Ireland is Dublin. It is here, at the Castle, that the lord lieutenant, sent over by England, holds his court. Dublin has a university, and many fine public buildings. The city stands on the banks of the river Liffey, about half a dozen miles from
40 the sea.

The Irish are strong, and generally handsome; generous, warm-hearted, brave, and industrious; courteous, and obliging to strangers;

yet are the poor very ignorant. They are reckless of the future, careless of their own lives, and, when under excitement, violent and cruel, and prodigal of the lives of others. Ireland was conquered by Henry the Second, in 1172, but had a parliament of its own. In the year 1800 a change took place, and England and Ireland 5 were united.

18. CHARACTER OF THE PRINCIPAL NATIONS OF EUROPE.

In *religion*, the German is sceptical; the Englishman devout; the Frenchman zealous; the Italian ceremonious; the Spaniard a bigot. 10

In *keeping his word*, the German is faithful; the Englishman safe; the Frenchman giddy; the Italian shuffling; the Spaniard a cheat.

In *giving advice*, the German is slow; the Englishman fearless; the Frenchman precipitate; the Italian nice; the Spaniard 15 circumspect.

In *external appearance*, the German is large; the Englishman well made; the Frenchman well looking; the Italian of middle size; the Spaniard awkward.

In *dress*, the German is shabby; the Englishman costly; the 20 Frenchman fickle; the Italian ragged; the Spaniard decent.

In *manners*, the German is clownish; the Englishman barbarous, the Frenchman easy; the Italian polite; the Spaniard proud.

In *keeping a secret*, the German forgets what he has been 25 told; the Englishman conceals what he should divulge, and divulges what he should conceal; the Frenchman tells every thing; the Italian is close; the Spaniard mysterious.

In *vanity*, the German boasts little; the Englishman despises all other nations; the Frenchman flatters every body; the Italian 30 estimates cautiously; the Spaniard is indifferent.

In *offending and doing good*, the German is inactive; the Englishman does both without consideration; the Italian is prompt in beneficence, but vindictive; the Spaniard indifferent.

In *speaking*, the German and Frenchman speak badly, but 35 write well; the Englishman speaks and writes well; the Italian speaks well, writes much and well; the Spaniard speaks little, writes little but well.

Servants are companions in Germany; obedient in England; masters in France; respectful in Italy; submissive in Spain. 40

The *women* are housewives in Germany; queens in England; ladies in France; captives in Italy; slaves in Spain.

In *courage*, the German resembles a bear; the Englishman a lion; the Frenchman an eagle; the Italian a fox, and the Spaniard an elephant.

In the *sciences*, the German is a pedant; the Englishman a philosopher; the Frenchman a smatterer; the Italian a professor, and the Spaniard a grave thinker.

Magnificence. — In Germany the princes, in England the ships, in France the court, in Italy the churches, in Spain the armories, are magnificent.

19. NATIONAL PARADOXES.

Somebody once remarked, that the Englishman is never happy but when he is miserable; the Scotchman is never at home but when he is abroad; and the Irishman is never at peace but when he is fighting.

20. THE VALUE OF THE RIVER THAMES.

Fuller justly says, in his 'Worthies of England', that London owes its grandeur and opulence, under God's Providence, to the well-conditioned river Thames, which employs its greatness to goodness — to be beneficial to commerce by the reciprocation of the tides. Hence it was, that when King James I., offended with the city, threatened to remove his Court to another place, the Lord Mayor boldly told him — 'Your Majesty may remove the Court at your pleasure, but you cannot remove the river Thames.'

ZWEITER ABSCHNITT.

Gespräche und dramatische Scenen.

1. CANUTE'S REPROOF TO HIS COURTIER.

Persons.

CANUTE, King of England.

OSWALD, OFFA, Courtiers.

SCENE. *The Sea Side near Southampton.*

5

The Tide coming in.

Canute. Is it true, my friends, what you have so often told me, that I am the greatest of monarchs?

Offa. It is true, my liege; you are the most powerful of all kings.

10

Oswald. We are all your slaves; we kiss the dust of your feet.

Offa. Not only we, but even the elements, are your slaves. The land obeys you from shore to shore; and the sea obeys you.

Canute. Does the sea, with its loud boisterous waves, obey me? Will that terrible element be still at my bidding?

Offa. Yes, the sea is yours; it was made to bear your ships upon its bosom, and to pour the treasures of the world at your royal feet. It is boisterous to your enemies, but it knows you to be its sovereign.

20

Canute. Is not the tide coming up?

Oswald. Yes, my liege; you may perceive the swell already.

Canute. Bring me a chair, then; set it here upon the sands.

Offa. Where the tide is coming up, my gracious lord?

25

Canute. Yes, set it just here.

Oswald (aside). I wonder what he is going to do!

Offa (aside). Surely he is not such a fool as to believe us.

Canute. O mighty Ocean! thou art my subject; my courtiers tell me so; and it is thy bounden duty to obey me. Thus, then, I stretch my sceptre over thee, and command thee to retire. Roll back thy swelling waves, nor let them presume to wet the feet of me, thy royal master.

Oswald (aside). I believe the sea will pay very little regard to his royal commands.

Offa. See how fast the tide rises.

Oswald. The next wave will come up to the chair. It is a folly to stay: we shall be covered with salt water.

Canute. Well, does the sea obey my commands? If it be my subject, it is a very rebellious subject. See how it swells, and dashes the angry foam and salt spray over my sacred person. Vile sycophants! did you think I was the dupe of your base lies? that I believed your abject flatteries? Know, there is only one Being whom the sea will obey. He is Sovereign of heaven and earth, King of kings, and Lord of lords. It is only He who can say to the ocean "Thus far shalt thou go, but no farther, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed." A king is but a man; and a man is but a worm. Shall a worm assume the power of the great God, and think the elements will obey him? Take away this crown—I will never wear it more. May kings learn to be humble from my example, and courtiers learn truth from your disgrace!

2. THE TWO ROBBERS.

SCENE. *Alexander the Great in his tent. Guards. A Man with a fierce countenance, chained and fettered, brought before him.*

Alex. What, art thou the Thracian Robber, of whose exploits I have heard so much?

Rob. I am a Thracian and a soldier.

A. A soldier! — a thief, a plunderer, an assassin! the pest of the country! I could honour thy courage, but I must detest and punish thy crimes.

R. What have I done, of which you can complain?

A. Hast thou not set at defiance my authority; violated the public peace, and passed thy life in injuring the persons and properties of thy fellow-subjects?

R. Alexander! I am your captive — I must hear what you please to say, and endure what you please to inflict. But my soul

is unconquered; and if I reply at all to your reproaches, I will reply like a free man.

A. Speak freely. Far be it from me to take the advantage of my power to silence those with whom I deign to converse!

R. I must then answer your question by another. How have 5 you passed your life?

A. Like a hero. Ask Fame, and she will tell you. Among the brave, I have been the bravest: among sovereigns, the noblest: among conquerors, the mightiest.

R. And does not Fame speak of me, too? Was there ever 10 a bolder captain of a more valiant band? Was there ever — but I scorn to boast. You yourself know that I have not been easily subdued.

A. Still what are you but a robber—a base dishonest robber?

R. And what is a conqueror? Have not you, too, gone about 15 the earth like an evil genius, blasting the fair fruits of peace and industry: — plundering, ravaging, killing, without law, without justice, merely to gratify an insatiable lust for dominion? All that I have done to a single district with a hundred followers, you have done to whole nations with a hundred thousand. If I have 20 stripped individuals, you have ruined kings and princes. If I have burned a few hamlets, you have desolated the most flourishing kingdoms and cities of the earth. What is then the difference, but that as you were born a king, and I a private man, you have been able to become a mightier robber than I? 25

A. But if I have taken like a king, I have given like a king. If I have subverted empires, I have founded greater. I have cherished arts, commerce, and philosophy.

R. I, too, have freely given to the poor, what I took from the rich. I have established order and discipline among the most 30 ferocious of mankind; and have stretched out my protecting arm over the oppressed. I know, indeed, little of the philosophy you talk of; but I believe neither you nor I shall ever repay to the world the mischiefs we have done it.

A. Leave me — Take off his chains, and use him well. (*Exit 35 Robber.*) — Are we then so much alike? — Alexander to a robber? — Let me reflect.

3. KING ALFRED.

A DRAMA.

Persons of the Drama:

5 ALFRED, King of England. GUBBA, a Farmer.
 ELLA, an Officer of Alfred. GANDELIN, his Wife.

SCENE. *The Isle of Athelney.*

Alfred. How retired and quiet is every thing in this little spot! The river winds its silent waters round this retreat; and the tangled bushes of the thicket fence it in from the attack of an
 10 enemy. The bloody Danes have not yet pierced into this wild solitude. I believe I am safe from their pursuit. But I hope I shall find some inhabitants here; otherwise I shall die of hunger. — Ha! here is a narrow path through the wood; and I think I see the smoke of a cottage rising between the trees. I will bend
 15 my steps thither.

SCENE. *Before the Cottage.*

GUBBA coming forward. GANDELIN within.

Alfred. Good evening to you, good man. Are you disposed to show hospitality to a poor traveller?

20 *Gubba.* Why, truly there are so many poor travellers now a days, that if we entertain them all, we shall have nothing left for ourselves. However, come along to my wife, and we will see what can be done for you.

Wife, I am very weary; I have been chopping wood all day.

25 *Gandelin.* You are always ready for your supper, but it is not ready for you, I assure you: the cakes will take an hour to bake, and the sun is yet high; it has not yet dipped behind the old barn. But whom have you with you, I should like to know?

30 *Alfred.* Good mother, I am a stranger and entreat you to afford me food and shelter.

Gandelin. Good mother? no! Good wife, if you please, and welcome. But I do not love strangers; and the land has no reason to love them. It has never been a merry day for Old England since strangers came into it.

35 *Alfred.* I am not a stranger in England, though I am a stranger here. I am a true-born Englishman.

Gubba. And do you hate those wicked Danes, that eat us up, and burn our houses, and drive away our cattle?

Alfred. I do hate them.

Gandelin. Heartily: He does not speak heartily, husband.

Alfred. Heartily I hate them; most heartily.

Gubba. Give me thy hand, then; thou art an honest fellow.

Alfred. I was with King Alfred in the last battle he fought.

Gandelin. With king Alfred? heaven bless him! 5

Gubba. What is become of our good King?

Alfred. Did you love him, then?

Gubba. Yes, as much as a poor man may love a king; I kneeled down and prayed for him every night, that he might conquer those Danish wolves; but it was not to be so. 10

Alfred. You could not love Alfred better than I did.

Gubba. But what is become of him?

Alfred. He is thought to be dead.

Gubba. Well, these are sad times, heaven help us! Come, you shall be welcome to share the brown loaf with us; I suppose 15 you are too hungry to be nice.

Gandelin. Ay, come with us: you shall be as welcome as a prince! But, hark ye, husband: though I am very willing to be charitable to this stranger (it would be a sin to be otherwise), yet there is no reason he should not do something to maintain himself; he looks strong and capable. 20

Gubba. Why, that's true. What can you do, friend?

Alfred. I am very willing to help you in any thing you choose to set me about. It will please me best to earn my bread before I eat it. 25

Gubba. Let me see. Can you tie up faggots neatly?

Alfred. I have not been used to it. I am afraid I should be awkward.

Gubba. Can you thatch? There is a piece blown off the cow-house. 30

Alfred. Alas, I cannot thatch.

Gandelin. Ask him if he can weave rushes, we want some new baskets.

Alfred. I have never learned.

Gubba. Can you stack hay? 35

Alfred. No.

Gubba. Why, here's a fellow! and yet he has as many pair of hands as his neighbours. Dame, can you employ him in the house? He might lay wood on the fire, and rub the tables.

Gandelin. Let him watch these cakes then: I must go and 40 milk the kine.

Gubba. And I'll go and stack the wood, since supper is not ready.

Gandelin. But pray observe, friend! do not let the cakes burn; turn them often on the hearth.

Alfred. I shall observe your directions. 45

ALFRED alone.

Alfred. For myself, I could bear it: but England my bleeding country, for thee my heart is full of bitter anguish! — From the Humber to the Thames the rivers are stained with
5 blood; — My brave soldiers cut to pieces! — My poor people — some massacred, others driven from their warm homes, stripped, abused, insulted: — and I, whom heaven appointed their shepherd, unable to rescue my defenceless flock from the ravenous jaws of these devourers! — Gracious heavens! if I am not worthy
10 to save this land from the Danish sword, raise up some other hero to fight with more success than I have done, and let me spend my life in this obscure cottage, in these servile offices. I shall be content, if England is happy.

O! here comes my blunt host and hostess.

15

Enter GUBBA and GANDELIN.

Gandelin. Help me down with the pail, husband. This new milk, with the cakes, will make an excellent supper: but, mercy on us, how they are burnt! black as my shoe; they have not once been turned: you lazy fellow! —

20

Alfred. Indeed, dame, I am sorry for it, but my mind was full of sad thoughts.

Gubba. Come, wife, you must forgive him; perhaps he is in love. I remember when I was in love with thee —

Gandelin. You remember!

25

Gubba. Yes, dame, I do remember it, though it is many a long year since; my mother was making a kettle of —

Gandelin. Pr'ythee, hold thy tongue, and let us eat our suppers.

30

Alfred. How refreshing is this sweet new milk, and this wholesome bread!

Gubba. Eat heartily, friend. Where shall we lodge him, Gandelin!

Gandelin. We have but one bed, you know; but there is fresh straw in the barn.

35

Alfred (aside). If I shall not lodge like a king, at least I shall lodge like a soldier. Alas! how many of my poor soldiers are stretched on the bare ground!

Gandelin. What noise do I hear? it is the trampling of horses. Good husband, go and see what is the matter.

40

Alfred. Heaven forbid my misfortunes should bring destruction on this simple family. I had rather have perished in the wood.

GUBBA returns, followed by ELLA with his sword drawn.

Gandelin. Mercy defend us, a sword.

Gubba. The Danes! the Danes! O do not kill us!

Ella (kneeling). My Liege, my Lord, my Sovereign, have I found you! 5

Alfred (embracing him). My brave Ella!

Ella. I bring you good news, my Sovereign! Your troops that were shut up in Kinwith Castle made a desperate sally — the Danes were slaughtered. The fierce Hubbs lies gasping on the plain.

Alfred. Is it possible! Am I yet a king? 10

Ella. Their famous standard, the Danish raven, is taken; their troops are panic-struck; the English soldiers call aloud for Alfred. Here is a letter which will inform you of more particulars. (Gives him a letter).

Gubba (aside). What will become of us? Ah! dame, that 15 tongue of thine has undone us!

Gandelin. O, my poor dear husband! we shall all be hanged, that's certain. But who could have thought it was the King?

Gubba. Why, Gandelin, do you see, we might have gues- 20 sed he was born to be a King, or some such great man, because you know he was not fit for work like ours.

Alfred (coming forward). God be praised for these tidings! Hope is sprung up out of the depths of despair. O, my friend! shall I again shine in arms, — again fight at the head of my 25 brave Englishmen, — lead them on to victory! Our friends shall now lift their heads again.

Ella. Yes, you have many friends, we have long been obliged, like their master, to skulk in deserts and caves, and wander from cottage to cottage. When they hear you are alive, and in 30 arms again, they will leave their fastness, and flock to your standard.

Alfred. I am impatient to meet them: my people shall be revenged.

Gubba and *Gandelin* (throwing themselves at the feet of Alfred). O my lord — 35

Gandelin. We hope your majesty will put us to a merciful death. Indeed we did not know your majesty's grace.

Gubba. If your majesty could but pardon my wife's tongue; she means no harm, poor woman!

Alfred. Pardon you, good people! I not only pardon you 40 but thank you. You have afforded me protection in my distress; and if ever I am seated again on the throne of England, my first care shall be to reward your hospitality. I am now going to protect you. Come, my faithful Ella, to arms! to arms! My bosom

burns to face once more the haughty Dane; and here I vow to heaven, that I will never sheath the sword against these robbers, till either I lose my life in this just cause, or

5 Till dove-like Peace return to England's shore,
And war and slaughter vex the land no more.

4. THE COLONISTS.

Come, said Mr. Barlow to his boys. I have a new play for you. I will be the founder of a colony; and you shall be people of different trades and professions coming to offer yourselves to go
10 with me. What are you, A?

A. I am a farmer, Sir.

Mr. B. Very well! Farming is the chief thing we have to depend upon, so we cannot have too much of it. But you must be a working farmer, not a gentleman farmer. Labourers will be
15 scarce among us, and every man must put his own hand to the plough. There will be woods to clear, and marshes to drain, and a great deal of stubborn work to do.

A. I shall be ready to do my part, Sir.

Mr. B. Well then, I shall entertain you willingly, and as
20 many more of your profession as you can bring. You shall have land enough, and utensils; and you may fall to work as soon as you please. Now for the next.

B. I am a miller, Sir.

Mr. B. A very useful trade! The corn we grow must be
25 ground, or it will do us little good. But what will you do for a mill, my friend?

B. I suppose we must make one, Sir.

Mr. B. True; but then you must bring with you a millwright for the purpose. As for millstones, we will take them out
30 with us. Who is next?

C. I am a carpenter, Sir.

Mr. B. The most necessary man that could offer! We shall find you work enough, never fear. There will be houses to build, fences to make, and all kinds of wooden furniture to provide. But
35 our timber is all growing. You will have a deal of hard work to do in felling trees, and sawing planks, and shaping posts, and the like. You must be a field carpenter as well as a house carpenter.

C. I will, Sir.

Mr. B. Very well; then I engage you, but you had better
40 bring two or three able hands along with you.

D. I am a blacksmith, Sir.

Mr. B. An excellent companion for the carpenter! We cannot do without either of you; so you may bring your great bellows and anvil, and we will set up a forge for you as soon as we arrive. But, by the bye, whe shall want a mason for that purpose.

E. I am one, Sir.

5

Mr. B. That's well. Though we may live in log houses at first, we shall want brick or stone work for chimneys, and hearths, and ovens, so there will be employment for a mason. But if you can make bricks and burn lime too, you will be still more useful.

E. I will try what I can do, Sir.

10

Mr. B. No man can do more. I engage you. Who is next?

F. I am a shoemaker, Sir.

Mr. B. And shoes we cannot well do without. But can you make them, like Eumæus in the Odyssey, out of a raw hide? for I fear we shall get no leather.

15

F. But I can dress hides, too.

Mr. B. Can you? Then you are a clever fellow, and I will have you, though I give you double wages.

G. I am a tailor, Sir.

Mr. B. Well — Though it will be some time before we want 20 holiday suits, yet we must not go naked; so there will be work for the tailor. But you are not above mending and botching, I hope, for we must not mind patched clothes while we work in the woods.

G. I am not, Sir.

25

Mr. B. Then I engage you, too.

H. I am a weaver, Sir.

Mr. B. Weaving is a very useful art, but I question if we can find room for it in our colony for the present. We shall not grow either hemp or flax for some time to come, and it will be 30 cheaper for us to import our cloth than to make it. In a few years, however, we may be very glad of you.

J. I am a silversmith and jeweller, Sir.

Mr. B. Then, my friend, you cannot go to a worse place than a new colony to set up your trade in. You will break us, or we 35 shall starve you.

J. But I understand clock and watch-making, too.

Mr. B. That is somewhat more to our purpose, for we shall want to know how time goes. But I doubt we cannot give you sufficient encouragement for a long while to come. For the pre- 40 sent you had better stay where you are.

K. I am a barber and hair-desser, Sir.

Mr. B. Alas, what can we do with you? If you will shave our men's rough beards once a-week, and crop their hair once a quarter, and be content to help the carpenter, or follow the plough 45

the rest of your time, we shall reward you accordingly. But you will have no ladies and gentlemen to dress for a ball, I assure you. Your trade will not stand by itself with us, for a great while to come.

5 L. I am a doctor, Sir.

Mr. B. Then, Sir, you are very welcome. Health is the first of blessings, and if you can give us that you will be a valuable man indeed. But I hope you understand surgery as well as physic, for we are likely enough to get cuts, and bruises, and broken
10 bones, occasionally.

L. I have had experience in that branch too, Sir.

Mr. B. And if you understand the nature of plants, and their uses both in medicine and diet, it will be a great addition to your usefulness.

15 L. Botany has been a favourite study with me, Sir; and I have some knowledge of chemistry, and the other parts of natural history, too.

Mr. B. Then you will be a treasure to us, Sir, and I shall be happy to make it worth your while to go with us.

20 M. I, Sir, am a lawyer.

Mr. B. Sir, your most obedient servant. When we are rich enough to go to law we will let you know.

N. I am a schoolmaster, Sir.

Mr. B. That is a profession which I am sure I do not mean
25 to undervalue; and as soon as ever we have young folks in our colony, we shall be glad of your services. Though we are to be hard-working plain people, we do not intend to be ignorant, and we shall make it a point to have every one taught reading and writing, at least. In the mean time, till we have employment
30 enough for you in teaching, you may keep the accounts and records of the colony; and on Sunday you may read prayers to all that choose to attend upon you.

N. With all my heart, Sir.

Mr. B. Then I engage you. Who comes here with so bold an air?

35 O. I am a soldier; will you have me?

Mr. B. We are peaceable people, and I hope shall have no occasion to fight. We mean honestly to purchase our land from the natives, and to be just and fair in all our dealings with them. William Penn, the founder of Pennsylvania, followed that plan;
40 and when the Indians were at war with all the other European settlers, a person in a quaker's habit might pass through all their most ferocious tribes without the least injury. It is my intention, however, to make all my colonists soldiers, so far as to be able to defend themselves if attacked, and that being the case, we shall
45 have no need of soldiers by trade.

P. I am a gentleman, Sir; and I have a great desire to accompany you, because I hear game is very plentiful in that country.

Mr. B. A gentleman! And what good will you do to us, Sir?

P. O, Sir, that is not at all my intention. I only mean to amuse myself. 5

Mr. B. But do you mean, Sir, that we should pay for your amusement?

P. As to maintenance, I expect to be able to kill game enough for my own eating, with a little bread and garden stuff, which you will give me. Then I will be content with a house 10 somewhat better than the common ones; and your barber shall be my valet; so I shall give very little trouble.

Mr. B. And pray, Sir, what inducement can we have for doing all this for you?

P. Why, Sir, you will have the credit of having one gentle- 15 man at least in your colony.

Mr. B. Ha, ha, ha! A facetious gentleman truly! Well, Sir, when we are ambitious of such a distinction, we will send for you.

5. ON EMBLEMS.

Pray, papa, (said Cecilia) what is an emblem? I have met 20 with the word in my lesson to-day, and I do not quite understand it.

An emblem, my dear, (replied he) is a visible image of an invisible thing.

C. A visible image of — I can hardly comprehend — 25

P. Well, I will explain it more at length. There are certain notions that we form in our minds without the help of our eyes, or any of our senses. Thus, Virtue, Vice, Honour, Disgrace, Time, Death, and the like, are not sensible objects, but ideas of the understanding. 30

C. Yes — We cannot feel them or see them, but we can think about them.

P. True. Now it sometimes happens that we wish to represent one of these in a visible form; that is, to offer something to the sight that shall raise a similar notion in the minds of the 35 beholders. In order to do this, we must take some action or circumstance belonging to it, capable of being expressed by painting or sculpture; and this is called a type, or emblem.

C. But how can this be done?

P. I will tell you by an example. You know the Sessions- 40 house where trials are held. It would be easy to write over the

door, in order to distinguish it, "This is the Sessions-house"; but it is a more ingenious and elegant way of pointing it out, to place upon the building a figure representing the purpose for which it was erected, namely, to distribute justice. For this end, the notion
5 of justice is to be personified, that is, changed from an idea of the understanding into one of the sight. A human figure is therefore made, distinguished by tokens which bear a relation to the character of that virtue. Justice carefully weighs both sides of a cause; she is therefore represented as holding a pair of scales. It
10 is her office to punish crimes; she therefore bears a sword. This is then an emblematical figure, and the sword and —

C. I understand this very well. But why is she blindfolded?

P. To denote her impartiality — that she decides only from the merits of the case, and not from a view of the parties.

15 C. How can she weigh any thing, though, when her eyes are blinded?

P. Well objected. These are two inconsistent emblems; each proper in itself, but when used together, making a contradictory action. An artist of judgment will therefore drop one of them;
20 and accordingly the best modern figures of justice have the balance and sword, without the bandage over the eyes.

C. Is not there the same fault in making Cupid blindfolded, and yet putting a bow and arrow into his hands?

P. There is. It is a gross absurdity, and not countenanced
25 by the ancient descriptions of Cupid, who is represented as the surest of all archers.

C. I have a figure of Death in my fable-book. I suppose that is emblematical.

P. Certainly, or you could not know that it meant Death.
30 How is he represented?

C. He is nothing but bones, and he holds a scythe in one hand, and an hour-glass in the other.

P. Well — how do you interpret these emblems?

C. I suppose he is all bones, because nothing but bones are
35 left after a dead body has lain long in the grave.

P. True. This, however, is not so properly an emblem, as the real and visible effect of death. But the scythe?

C. Is not that because death mows down every thing?

P. It is. No instrument could so properly represent the
40 wide-wasting sway of death, which sweeps down the race of animals, like flowers falling under the hand of the mower. It is a simile used in the scriptures.

C. The hour-glass, I suppose, is to show people that their time is come.

45 P. Right. In the hour-glass that Death holds, all the sand

is run out from the upper to the lower part. Have you never observed upon a monument an old figure, with wings, and a scythe, and with his head bald, all but a single lock before?

C. O yes! — and I have been told it is Time.

P. Well — and what do you make of it? Why is he old? 5

C. O! because time has lasted a long while.

P. And why has he wings?

C. Because time is swift, and flies away.

P. What does his scythe mean?

C. I suppose that is, because he destroys and cuts down 10 every thing like death.

P. True. I think, however, a weapon rather slower in its operation, as a pick-axe, would have been more suitable to the gradual action of time. But what is his single lock of hair for?

C. I have been thinking, and cannot make it out. 15

P. I thought that would puzzle you. It relates to time as giving opportunity for doing any thing. It is to be seized as it presents itself, or it will escape, and cannot be recovered. Thus the proverb says, "Take time by the fore-lock." Well — now you understand what emblems are. 20

C. Yes, I think I do. I suppose the painted sugar-loaves over the grocer's shop, and the mortar over the apothecary's, are emblems too.

P. Not so properly. They are only the pictures of things which are themselves the objects of sight, as the real sugar-loaf 25 in the shop of the grocer, and the real mortar in that of the apothecary. However, an implement belonging to a particular rank or profession, is commonly used as an emblem to point out the man exercising that rank or profession. Thus a crown is considered as an emblem of the king; a sword or spear, of a soldier; an anchor, 30 of a sailor; and the like.

C. I remember Captain Heartwell, when he came to see us, had the figure of an anchor on all his buttons.

P. He had. That was the emblem or badge of his belonging to the navy. 35

C. But you told me that an emblem was a visible sign of an invisible thing; yet a sea-captain is not an invisible thing.

P. He is not invisible as a man, but his profession is invisible.

C. I do not well understand that. 40

P. Profession is a quality, belonging equally to a number of individuals, however different they may be in external form and appearance. It may be added or taken away without any visible change. Thus, if Captain Heartwell were to give up his commission, he would appear to you the same man as before. It is plain, 45

therefore, that what in that case he had lost, namely his profession, was a thing invisible. It is one of those ideas of the understanding which I before mentioned to you, as different from a sensible idea.

5 C. I comprehend it now.

P. I have got here a few emblematical pictures. Suppose you try whether you can find out their meaning.

C. O yes — I should like that very well.

P. Here is a man standing on the summit of a steep cliff,
10 and going to ascend a ladder which he has planted against a cloud.

C. Let me see! — that must be Ambition, I think.

P. How do you explain it?

C. He is got very high already, but he wants to be still higher: so he ventures up the ladder, though it is only supported
15 by a cloud, and hangs over a precipice.

P. Very right. Here is now another man, hoodwinked, who is crossing a raging torrent upon stepping-stones.

C. Then he will certainly fall in. I suppose he is one that runs into danger without considering where he is going.

20 P. Yes; and you may call him Fool-hardiness. Do you see this hand coming out of a black cloud, and putting an extinguisher upon a lamp?

C. I do. If that lamp be the lamp of life, the hand that extinguishes it must be Death.

25 P. Very just. Here is an old half-ruined building, supported by props; and the figure of Time is sawing through one of the props.

C. That must be old Age, surely.

P. It is. The next is a man leaning upon a breaking crutch.

30 C. I don't know what to make of that.

P. It is intended for Instability; however, it might also stand for False-confidence. Here is a man poring over a sun-dial with a candle in his hand.

C. I am at a loss for that, too.

35 P. Consider — a sun-dial is only made to tell the hour by the light of the sun.

C. Then this man must know nothing about it.

P. True; and his name is therefore Ignorance. Here is a walking-stick, the lower part of which is set in the water, and it
40 appears crooked. What does that denote?

C. Is the stick really crooked?

P. No; but it is the property of water to give that appearance.

C. Then it must signify Deception.

P. It does. I dare say you will at once know this fellow

who is running as fast as his legs will carry him, and looking back at his shadow.

C. He must be Fear or Terror, I fancy.

P. Yes; you may call him which you please. But who is this sower, that scatters seed in the ground? 5

C. Let me consider. I think there is a parable in the Bible about seed sown, and it there signifies something like Instruction.

P. True; but it may also represent Hope, for no one would sow without hoping to reap the fruit. What do you think of this candle held before a mirror, in which its figure is exactly reflected? 10

C. I do not know what it means.

P. It represents Truth; the essence of which consists in the fidelity with which objects are received and reflected back by our minds. The object is here a luminous one, to show the clearness and brightness of Truth. Here is next an upright column, the perfect straightness of which is shown by a plum-line hanging from its summit, and exactly parallel to the side of the column. 15

C. I suppose that must mean Uprightness.

P. Yes — or in other words, Rectitude. The strength and stability of the pillar also denote the security produced by this virtue. You see here a woman disentangling and reeling off a very perplexed skein of thread. 20

C. She must have a great deal of patience.

P. True. She is Patience herself. The brooding hen, sitting beside her, is another emblem of the same quality that aids the interpretation. Who do you think this pleasing female is, that looks with such kindness upon the plant she is watering? 25

C. That must be Charity, I believe.

P. It is; or you may call her Benignity, which is nearly the same thing. Here is a lady sitting demurely, with one finger on her lip, while she holds a bridle in her other hand. 30

C. The finger on the lip I suppose denotes Silence. The bridle must mean Confinement. I should almost fancy her to be a school-mistress.

P. Ha! ha! I hope, indeed, many school-mistresses are endowed with her spirit, for she is Prudence or Discretion. Well — we are now got to the end of our pictures, and upon the whole you have interpreted them very prettily. 35

6. AVERSION SUBDUED.

A DRAMA.

SCENE. *A Road in the Country.*ARBURY — BELFORD, *walking.*

5 *Belford.* Pray who is the present possessor of the Brookby estate?

Arbury. A man of the name of Goodwin.

B. Is he a good neighbour to you?

A. Far from it; and I wish he had settled a hundred miles
10 off rather than come here to spoil our neighbourhood.

B. I am sorry to hear that, but what is your objection to him?

A. O, there is nothing in which we agree. In the first place, he is quite of the other side in politics; and that, you know, is enough to prevent all intimacy.

15 B. I am not entirely of that opinion; but what else?

A. He is no sportsman, and refuses to join in our association for protecting the game. Neither does he choose to be a member of any of our clubs.

B. Has he been asked?

20 A. I don't know that he has directly, but he might easily propose himself if he liked it. But he is of a close unsociable temper, and, I believe, very niggardly.

B. How has he shown it?

A. His style of living is not equal to his fortune; and I
25 have heard of several instances of his attention to petty economy.

B. Perhaps he spends his money in charity.

A. Not he, I dare say. It was but last week that a poor fellow who had lost his all by a fire went to him with a subscription-paper, in which were the names of all the gentlemen in
30 the neighbourhood; and all the answer he got was that he would consider of it.

B. And did he consider?

A. I don't know, but I suppose it was only an excuse. Then his predecessor had a park well stocked with deer, and used to
35 make liberal presents of venison to all his neighbours. But this frugal gentleman has sold them all off, and got a flock of sheep instead.

B. I don't see much harm in that, now mutton is so dear.

A. To be sure, he has a right to do as he pleases with his
40 park, but that is not the way to be beloved, you know. As to myself, I have reason to think he bears me particular ill-will.

B. Then he is much in the wrong, for I believe you are as free from ill-will to others as any man living. But how has he shown it, pray?

A. In twenty instances. He had a horse upon sale the other day to which I took a liking, and bid money for it. As soon as 5 he found I was about it, he sent it off to a fair on the other side of the county. My wife, you know, is passionately fond of cultivating flowers. Riding lately by his grounds, she observed something new, and took a great longing for a root or cutting of it. My gardener mentioned her wish to his (contrary, I own, to my 10 inclination), and he told his master; but instead of obliging her, he charged the gardener on no account to touch the plant. A little while ago I turned off a man for saucy behaviour; but as he had lived many years with me, and was a very useful servant, I meant to take him again upon his submission, which I did not 15 doubt would soon happen. Instead of that he goes and offers himself to my civil neighbour, who, without deigning to apply to me, even for a character, entertains him immediately. In short, he has not the least of a gentleman about him, and I would give any thing to be well rid of him. 20

B. Nothing, to be sure, can be more unpleasant in the country than a bad neighbour, and I am concerned it is your lot to have one. But there is a man who seems as if he wanted to speak with you.

A countryman approaches.

25

A. Ah! it is the poor fellow that was burnt out. Well, Richard, how go you on — what has the subscription produced you?

Richard. Thank your honour, my losses are nearly all made up.

A. I am very glad of that; but when I saw the paper last, 30 it did not reach half-way.

R. It did not, Sir; but you may remember asking me what Mr. Goodwin had done for me, and I told you he took time to consider of it. Well, Sir — I found that the very next day he had been at our town, and had made very particular inquiry about 35 me and my losses among my neighbours. When I called upon him a few days after, he told me he was very glad to find that I bore such a good character, and that the gentlemen round had so kindly taken up my case; and he would prevent the necessity of my going any farther for relief. Upon which he gave me, God 40 bless him! a draught upon his banker for fifty pounds.

A. Fifty pounds!

R. Yes, Sir — it has made me quite my own man again; and I am now going to purchase a new cart and team of horses.

A. A noble gift, indeed! I could never have thought it. Well, Richard, I rejoice at your good fortune. I am sure you are much obliged to Mr. Goodwin.

R. Indeed I am, Sir, and to all my good friends. God bless
5 you! Sir. *(Goes on.)*

B. Niggardliness, at least, is not this man's foible.

A. No. — I was mistaken in that point. I wronged him, and I am sorry for it. But what a pity it is that men of real generosity should not be amiable in their manners, and as ready
10 to oblige in trifles as in matters of consequence.

B. True — 'tis a pity when that is really the case.

A. How much less an exertion it would have been, to have shown some civility about a horse or a flower-root!

B. A-propos of flowers, there is your gardener carrying a
15 large one in a pot.

Enter Gardener.

A. Now, James, what have you got there?

Gard. A flower, Sir, for Madam, from Mr. Goodwin's.

A. How did you come by it?

20 G. His gardener, Sir, sent me word to come for it. We should have had it before, but Mr. Goodwin thought it would not move safely.

A. I hope he has got more of them.

G. He has only a seedling plant or two, Sir; but hearing
25 that Madam took a liking to it, he was resolved to send it her, and a choice thing it is! I have a note for madam in my pocket.

A. Well, go on. *[Exit Gardener.]*

B. Methinks this does not look like deficiency in civility.

A. No — it is a very polite action — I can't deny it, and
30 I am obliged to him for it. Perhaps, indeed, he may feel he owes me a little amends.

B. Possibly. — It shows he can feel, however.

A. It does. Ha! there's Yorkshire Tom coming with a string of horses from the fair. I'll step up and speak to him. Now, Tom!
35 how have horses gone at Market-hill?

Tom. Dear enough, your honour!

A. How much more did you get for Mr. Goodwin's mare than I offered him?

T. Ah, Sir! that was not a thing for your riding, and that
40 Mr. Goodwin well knew. You never saw such a vicious toad. She had like to have killed the groom two or three times. So, I was ordered to offer her to the mail-coach people, and get what I could from them. I might have sold her better if Mr. Goodwin

would have let me, for she was as fine a creature to look at as needs be, and quite sound.

A. And was that the true reason, Tom, why the mare was not sold to me?

T. It was, indeed, Sir.

A. Then I am highly obliged to Mr. Goodwin. (*Tom rides on.*) This was handsome behaviour indeed!

B. Yes, I think it was somewhat more than politeness — it was real goodness of heart.

A. It was. I find I must alter my opinion of him, and I do it with pleasure. But, after all, his conduct with respect to my servant is somewhat unaccountable.

B. I see reason to think so well of him in the main, that I am inclined to hope he will be acquitted in this matter too.

A. There the fellow is: I wonder he has my old livery on yet.

Ned approaches, pulls off his hat.

N. Sir, I was coming to your honour.

A. What can you have to say to me now, Ned.

N. To ask pardon, Sir, for my misbehaviour, and beg you to take me again.

A. What — have you so soon parted with your new master?

N. Mr. Goodwin never was my master, Sir. He only kept me in his house till I could make it up with you again; for he said he was sure you were too honourable a gentleman to turn off an old servant without good reason, and he hoped you would admit my excuses after your anger was over.

A. Did he say all that!

N. Yes, Sir; and he advised me not to delay any longer to ask your pardon.

A. Well — go to my house, and I will talk with you on my return.

B. Now, my friend, what think you of this?

A. I think more than I can well express. It will be a lesson to me never to make hasty judgments again.

B. Why, indeed, to have concluded that such a man had nothing of the gentleman about him, must have been rather hasty.

A. I acknowledge it. But it is the misfortune of these reserved characters that they are so long in making themselves known; though when they are known, they often prove the most truly estimable. I am afraid, even now, that I must be content with esteeming him at a distance.

B. Why so?

A. You know I am of an open sociable disposition.

B. Perhaps he is so, too.

A. If he were, surely he should have been better acquainted before this time.

B. It may have been prejudice, rather than temper, that has
5 kept you asunder.

A. Possibly so. That vile spirit of party has such a sway in the country that men of the most liberal dispositions can hardly free themselves from its influence. It poisons all the kindness of society; — and yonder comes an instance of its pernicious
10 effects.

B. Who is he?

A. A poor schoolmaster with a large family in the next market-town, who has lost all his scholars by his activity on our side in the last election. I heartily wish it was in my power to
15 do something for him; for he is a very honest man, though perhaps rather too warm.

The schoolmaster comes up.

Now, Mr. Penman, how go things with you?

P. I thank you, Sir, they have gone poorly enough, but I
20 hope they are in the way to mend.

A. I am glad to hear it — but how?

P. Why, Sir, the free-school of Stoke is vacant, and I believe I am likely to get it.

A. Ay! — I wonder at that. I thought it was in the hands
25 of the other party.

P. It is, Sir; but Mr. Goodwin has been so kind as to give me a recommendation, and his interest is sufficient to carry it.

A. Mr. Goodwin! you surprise me.

P. I was much surprised too, Sir. He sent for me of his
30 own accord (for I should never have thought of asking him a favour), and told me he was sorry a man should be injured in his profession on account of party, and as I could not live comfortably where I was, he would try to settle me in a better place. So he mentioned the vacancy of Stoke, and offered me letters to
35 the trustees. I was never so affected in my life, Sir — I could hardly speak to return him thanks. He kept me to dinner, and treated me with the greatest respect. Indeed, I believe there is not a kinder man breathing than Mr. Goodwin.

A. You have the best reason in the world to say so, Mr.
40 Penman. What, did he converse familiarly with you?

P. Quite so, Sir. We talked a great deal about party-affairs in this neighbourhood, and he lamented much that differences of this kind should keep worthy men at a distance from each other. I took the liberty, Sir, of mentioning your name. He said

he had not the honour of being acquainted with you, but he had a sincere esteem for your character, and should be glad of any occasion to cultivate a friendship with you. For my part, I confess to my shame, I did not think there could have been such a man on that side.

5

A. Well — good morning!

P. Your most obedient, Sir.

(*He goes.*)

A. (*After some silence.*) Come, my friend, let us go.

B. Whither?

A. Can you doubt it? — to Mr. Goodwin's, to be sure! 10
After all I have heard, can I exist a moment without acknowledging the injustice I have done him, and begging his friendship?

B. I shall be happy, I am sure, to accompany you on that errand. But who is to introduce us?

A. O, what are form and ceremony in a case like this? 15
Come — come.

B. Most willingly.

[*Exeunt.*]

DRITTER ABSCHNITT.

Erzählungen.

1. BOTH SIDES OF A QUESTION.

In the days of knight-errantry and paganism, one of our old British princes set up a statue to the goddess of Victory, in a point where four roads met together. In her right hand she held
5 a spear, and her left hand rested upon a shield; the outside of this shield was of gold, and the inside of silver. On the former was inscribed, in the old British language, "To the goddess ever favourable;" and on the other, "For four victories obtained successively over the Picts and other inhabitants of the northern
10 islands."

It happened one day that two knights completely armed, one in black armour, the other in white, arrived from opposite parts of the country at this statue, just about the same time; and as neither of them had seen it before, they stopped to read the
15 inscription, and observe the excellence of its workmanship.

After contemplating it for some time, This golden shield, says the black knight — Golden shield! cried the white knight (who was as strictly observing the opposite side), why, if I have my eyes, it is silver. — I know nothing of your eyes, replied the
20 black knight; but if ever I saw a golden shield, in my life, this is one. — Yes, returned the white knight, smiling, it is very probable, indeed, that they should expose a shield of gold in so public a place as this! for my part, I wonder even a silver one is not too strong a temptation for the devotion of some people
25 who pass this way; and it appears, by the date, that this has been here above three years.

The black knight could not bear the smile with which this was delivered, and grew so warm in the dispute, that it soon ended in a challenge: they both therefore turned their horses, and

rode back so far as to have sufficient space for their career; then fixing their spears in their rests, they flew at each other with the greatest fury and impetuosity. Their shock was so rude, and the blow on each side so effectual, that they both fell to the ground, much wounded and bruised; and lay there for some time, as in 5 a trance.

A good Druid, who was travelling that way, found them in this condition. The Druids were the physicians of those times, as well as the priests. He had a sovereign balsam about him, which he had composed himself, for he was very skilful in all the plants 10 that grew in the fields or in the forests: he staunched their blood, applied his balsam to their wounds, and brought them, as it were, from death to life again. As soon as they were sufficiently recovered, he began to inquire into the occasion of their quarrel. Why, this man, cried the black knight, will have it that yonder shield 15 is silver. — And he will have it, replied the white knight, that it is gold. And then they told him all the particulars of the affair.

Ah! said the Druid, with a sigh, you are both of you, my brethren, in the right, and both of you in the wrong: had either of you given himself time to look at the opposite side of the 20 shield, as well as that which first presented itself to view, all this passion and bloodshed might have been avoided: however, there is a very good lesson to be learned from the evils that have befallen you on this occasion. Permit me, therefore, to entreat you by all our gods, and by this goddess of Victory in particular, ne- 25 ver to enter into any dispute for the future, till you have fairly considered both sides of the question.

(Beaumont.)

2. THE INDUSTRY OF DEMOSTHENES

Demosthenes was extremely affected by the honours which he saw paid to the orator Callistratus, still more by his supreme po- 30 wer of eloquence over the minds of men; and not being able to resist its charms, he gave himself up to it. Thenceforth he renounced all other studies and pleasures: and during the continuance of Callistratus at Athens he never quitted him, but made all the improvement he could from his precepts. 35

The first essay of his eloquence was against his guardians, whom he obliged to refund a part of his fortune. Encouraged by this success, he ventured to speak before the people, but with very ill success. He had a weak voice, a thick way of speaking, and a very short breath; notwithstanding which, his periods were so long, 40 that he was often obliged to stop in the midst of them to take breath. This occasioned his being hissed by the whole audience.

As he withdrew, hanging down his head, and in the utmost confusion, Satyrus, one of the most excellent actors of those times, who was his friend, met him; and having learnt from himself the cause of his being so much dejected, he assured him that the evil
5 was not without remedy, and that the case was not so desperate as he imagined. He desired him to repeat some of the verses of Sophocles or Euripides to him; which he accordingly did. Satyrus spoke them after him, and gave them such graces, by the tone, gesture, and spirit, with which he pronounced them, that Demost-
10 henes himself found them quite different from what they were in his own manner of speaking. He perceived plainly what he wanted, and applied himself to the acquiring of it.

His efforts to correct his natural defect of utterance, and to perfect himself in pronunciation, of which his friend had made him
15 understand the value, seem almost incredible, and prove that an industrious perseverance can surmount all things. His speech was so defective, that he could not pronounce some letters; among others, that with which the name of the art he studied begins; and he was so short-breathed, that he could not utter a whole
20 period without stopping. At length, he overcame these obstacles by putting small pebbles into his mouth, and pronouncing several verses in this manner without interruption; and by walking and going up steep and difficult places; so that at last no letter made him hesitate, and his breath held out through the longest periods.
25 He went also to the seaside; and while the waves were in the most violent agitation, he pronounced harangues, to accustom himself, by the confused noise of the waters, to the roar of the people, and the tumultuous cries of public assemblies.

Demosthenes took no less care of his action than his voice.
30 He had a large looking-glass in his house, which served to teach him gesture, and at which he used to declaim, before he spoke in public. To correct a fault, which he had contracted by an ill habit of shrugging up his shoulders, he practised standing upright in a kind of very narrow pulpit, or rostrum, over which hung a
35 halbert, in such a manner, that if in the heat of the action that motion escaped him, the point of the weapon might serve at once to admonish and correct him.

His application to study was no less surprising. To be the more removed from noise, and less subject to distraction, he cau-
40 sed a small room to be made for him under ground, in which he shut himself up sometimes for whole months, shaving on purpose half his head and face, that he might not be in a condition to go abroad. It was there, by the light of a small lamp, he composed the admirable Orations, which were said, by those who envied him,

to smell of the oil, — to imply that they were too elaborate. It is plain, replied he, yours did not cost you so much trouble.

He always rose very early in the morning, and used to say, that he was sorry when any workman was at his business before him. We may further judge of his extraordinary efforts to acquire an excellence of every kind, from the pains he took in copying Thucydides eight times with his own hand, in order to render the style of that great man familiar to him. (David Blair.)

3. ENVY AND EMULATION.

At one of the celebrated schools of painting in Italy, a young man named Guidotto produced a piece so excellent, that it gained the admiration of all the masters in the art. This performance was looked upon with very different eyes by two of his fellow-scholars.

Brunello, the elder of them, who had himself acquired some reputation in his studies, regarded all the honour Guidotto had acquired as so much taken from himself; and longed for nothing so much as to see him lose the credit he had gained. Afraid openly to decry the merit of a work which had gained the approbation of the best judges, he threw out secret insinuations that Guidotto had been assisted in it by one or other of his masters; and he affected to represent it as a sort of lucky hit, which the reputed author would probably never equal.

Not so Lorenzo. Though a very young proficient in the art, he comprehended in its full extent the excellence of Guidotto's performance, and became one of the sincerest of his admirers. Fired with the praises he daily heard bestowed on Guidotto, his fellow-pupil, he ardently longed to deserve the same; and placed him before his eyes as a model, which it was his highest ambition to equal. He entered with his whole soul into the career of improvement, was the first and last of all the scholars in the designing-room, and devoted to practice at home those hours, which other youths passed in amusement.

It was long before he could please himself with any of his attempts, and he was continually repeating to himself, Alas, how far distant is this from Guidotto's! At length, however, he had the satisfaction of becoming sensible of his progress; and having received considerable applause for one of his performances, he ventured to say to himself, — And why may not I too become a Guidotto?

Guidotto had now prepared for the anniversary of the day when prizes were awarded in the school, a piece which was to

excel all he had before executed. He had just finished it on the evening before the exhibition, and nothing remained but to heighten the colours by means of a transparent varnish. The malignant Brunello contrived artfully to convey into the phial containing this
 5 varnish, some drops of a caustic preparation, the effect of which would be entirely to destroy the beauty and splendour of the piece. Guidotto laid it on by candle-light, and then with great satisfaction hung up his picture in the public room against the morrow. Lorenzo, with vast application, had finished a piece, which he
 10 humbly hoped might appear not greatly inferior to some of Guidotto's earlier performances.

The important day arrived. The company assembled in the great room, where the light had just been fully admitted by drawing a curtain. All went up to Guidotto's picture: when behold,
 15 instead of the beauty which they had conceived, there was nothing but a dead surface of confused and blotched colours. The unfortunate youth burst into an agony of grief, and exclaimed that he was betrayed and undone. Lorenzo, little less affected than Guidotto himself, cried out — Gentlemen, this is not Guidotto's work:
 20 I saw it when only half finished, and it was then an exquisite performance.

Every one admired Lorenzo, and sympathised in the disgrace of Guidotto: but it was impossible to adjudge the price to his picture, in the state in which they beheld it. It was therefore
 25 awarded to Lorenzo, who immediately presented it to Guidotto, saying, Take what merit would have acquired you, had not the basest malice and envy defrauded you of it. If hereafter I may aspire to equal you, it shall be by means of fair competition, not by the aid of treachery.

30 Lorenzo's noble conduct excited the warmest encomiums among the judges, who at length determined that for this time there should be two equal prizes distributed; for, if Guidotto had deserved the prize of painting, Lorenzo was entitled to that of virtue.

(Mrs. Barbauld.)

35 4. EXAMPLES OF FILIAL AFFECTION.

Among the incredible number of persons who were proscribed under the second triumvirate of Rome, were the celebrated orator Cicero, and his brother Quintus. When the news of the proscription was brought to them, they endeavoured to make their escape
 40 to Brutus in Macedon. They travelled together some time, mutually condoling their bad fortune: but as their departure had been very precipitate, and they were not furnished with money and other

necessaries for their voyage, it was agreed that Cicero should make what haste he could to the sea-side to secure their passage, and Quintus return home to make more ample provision.

But, as in most houses there were as many informers as domestics, his return was immediately known, and the house of course 5 filled with soldiers and assassins. Quintus concealed himself so effectually, that the soldiers could not find him: enraged at their disappointment, they put his son to the torture, in order to make him discover the place of his father's concealment; but filial affection was proof in the young Roman against the most exquisite 10 torments. An involuntary sigh, and sometimes a deep groan, was all that could be extorted from the heroic youth. His agonies were increased, but with amazing fortitude he still persisted in his resolution of not betraying his father.

Quintus was not far off; and hearing the sighs and groans of 15 his son, he rushed from his place of concealment, threw himself before the assassins, begging them with a flood of tears to put him to death, and dismiss his innocent child. The inhuman monsters, without being in the least affected by the sufferings of the son, or tears of the father, answered that they both must die; the 20 father because he was proscribed, and the son because he had concealed his father. Then a new contest arose who should die first; but this the assassins soon decided, beheading both at the same instant.

The conduct of the young Appius during the same proscrip- 25 tion is worthy of being recorded. His aged father, Appius, seeing himself proscribed, did not think what remained of a languishing life worth preserving, and was willing to await the murderers quietly in his own house.

He could not, however, resist the pressing instances and zeal 30 of his son, who took him on his shoulders, and went through the city, unknown to some, and commanding the respect of others, by the beauty of so commendable an action. As soon as they got out of Rome, the son, sometimes assisting his father to walk, and sometimes carrying him when the fatigue was too great, conducted 35 him to the sea, and conveyed him safe into Sicily.

The people preserved the remembrance of this affectionate conduct, and on his return to Rome, after the triumvirs had put a stop to the proscription, all the tribes unanimously concurred in raising him to the ædileship. But the goods of his father having 40 been confiscated, he had not money to defray the expense of the shows belonging to that office; on which account, the artificers

charged nothing for their labour, and the people taxing themselves willingly, each according to his ability, not only enabled him to defray the expense of the usual sports, but to purchase an estate of twice the value of that which he had lost. (*David Blair.*)

5

5. ACCOUNT OF THE ADMIRABLE CRICHTON.

Virtue, says Virgil, is better accepted when it comes in a pleasing form. The person of Crichton was eminently beautiful; but his beauty was consistent with such activity and strength, that in fencing he would spring at one bound upon his antagonist; and he used the sword in either hand with such force and dexterity, that scarce any one had courage to engage him.

Having studied at St. Andrew's, in Scotland, he went to Paris in his twenty-first year, and affixed on the gate of the college of Navarre a kind of challenge to the learned of that university, to dispute with them on a certain day; offering to his opponents the choice of ten languages, and of all the faculties and sciences. On the day appointed, three thousand auditors assembled, when four doctors of the church and fifty ministers appeared against him; and one of his antagonists confesses that the doctors were defeated; that he gave proofs of knowledge beyond the reach of man; and that a hundred years passed without food or sleep would not be sufficient for the attainment of his learning. After a disputation of nine hours, he was presented by the president and professors with a diamond and a purse of gold, and dismissed with repeated acclamations.

From Paris he went to Rome, where he made the same challenge, and had, in the presence of the pope and cardinals, the same success. He then visited Padua, where he engaged in another public disputation, beginning his performance with an extempore poem in praise of the city and the assembly present, and concluding with an oration equally unpremeditated in commendation of ignorance.

The acquisitions of learning, however stupendous, were not gained by the omission of any accomplishment in which it becomes a gentleman to excel. He practised, in great perfection, the arts of drawing and painting; he was an eminent performer in both vocal and instrumental music; he danced with uncommon gracefulness; and on the day after his disputation at Paris, exhibited his skill in horsemanship before the court of France, where, at a public match of tilting, he bore away the ring upon his lance fifteen times together. He excelled likewise in domestic games of less dignity and reputation; and in the interval between his challenge

and disputation at Paris, he spent so much of his time at cards, dice, and tennis, that a lampoon was fixed upon the gate of the Sorbonne, directing those who would see this monster of erudition, to look for him at the tavern.

So extensive was his acquaintance with life and manners, that 5 in an Italian comedy composed by himself, and exhibited before the court of Mantua, he is said to have personated fifteen different characters. His memory was so retentive, that, hearing an oration of an hour, he would repeat it exactly, and in the recital follow the speaker through all the variety of tone and gesticulation. 10

Nor was his skill in arms less than in learning, or his courage inferior to his skill. There was a prize-fighter at Mantua, who had defeated the most celebrated masters in many parts of Europe; and in Mantua had killed three who had appeared against him. Crichton, looking on his sanguinary success with indignation, offered to stake 15 fifteen hundred pistoles, and mount the stage against him. The duke of Mantua with some reluctance consented; and on the day fixed the combatants appeared. The prize-fighter advanced with great violence and fierceness, while Crichton contented himself calmly to ward his passes, and suffered him to waste his vigour 20 by his own fury. Crichton then pressed upon him with such force and agility, that he thrust him thrice through the body, and saw him expire. He then divided the price he had won among the widows whose husbands had been killed.

The duke of Mantua having received such proofs of his va- 25 rious merit, made him tutor to his son Vincentio di Gonzaga, a prince of loose manners and a turbulent disposition. But his honour was of short duration; for as he was one night, in the time of carnival, rambling about the streets with his guitar in his hand, he was attacked by six men masked, and opposed them with 30 such vigour and address, that he dispersed them and disarmed their leader, who, throwing off his mask, discovered himself to be the prince his pupil. Crichton, falling on his knees, presented his own sword to the prince, who seized it, and instigated, as some say, by jealousy, according to others, only by drunken fury, thrust him 35 through the heart.

The court of Mantua testified their esteem for the memory of Crichton by a public mourning, and the palaces of Italy were adorned with pictures, representing him on horseback with a lance in one hand, and a book in the other. (*Hawkesworth.*) 40

6. SAYINGS OF EMINENT MEN.

Agesilaus, king of Sparta, being asked what things he thought most proper for boys to learn, answered, Those things which they ought to practise when they come to be men. A wiser than
5 Agesilaus has inculcated the same sentiment: Train up a child, said Solomon, in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it.

An Italian philosopher expressed in his motto, that time was his estate; an estate indeed which will produce nothing without
10 cultivation, but which will always abundantly repay the labours of industry, and satisfy the most extensive desires, if no part of it be suffered to lie waste by negligence, to be overrun with noxious plants, or laid out for show rather than use.

When Aristotle was asked what a man could gain by telling a falsehood, he replied, Never to be believed when he speaks
15 the truth.

Sully, the great statesman and minister to Henry IV, king of France, always retained at his table, in his most prosperous days, the same frugality to which he had been accustomed in early life.
20 He was frequently reproached by the courtiers for this simplicity; but he used to reply to them in the words of an ancient philosopher: If the guests be men of sense, there is sufficient for them; if they be not, I can very well dispense with their company.

Titus, the Roman emperor, recollecting at supper that he had
25 not done any act of public utility during the day, said to those who were with him, My friends, I have lost a day.

Antoninus Pius, the Roman emperor, was an amiable man and a good prince. When some of his courtiers attempted to influence him with a passion for military glory, he answered, that
30 he more desired the preservation of one subject than the destruction of a thousand enemies.

Men are too often ingenious in making themselves miserable, by aggravating to their own fancy, beyond bounds, all the evils which they endure. They compare themselves with none but those
35 whom they imagine to be more happy; and complain that upon them alone has fallen the whole load of human sorrows. I will restore thy daughter again to life, said an eastern sage to a prince, who grieved immoderately for the loss of a beloved child, provided thou art able to engrave on her tomb the names of three persons
40 who have never mourned. The prince made inquiry after such persons; but found the inquiry vain, and was silent.

(David Blair.)

7. THE GOLDEN MEAN.

When the plains of India were burnt up by a long drought, Hamed and Raschid, two neighbouring shepherds, faint with thirst, stood at the common boundary of the grounds, with their flocks and herds panting round them, and in extremity of distress prayed 5 for water. On a sudden the air was becalmed, the birds ceased to chirp, and the flocks to bleat. They turned their eyes every way, and saw a being of mighty stature advancing through the valley, whom they knew, on his nearer approach, to be the genius of distribution. In one hand he held the sheaves of plenty, and 10 in the other the sabre of destruction.

The shepherds stood trembling, and would have retired before him: but he called to them with a voice gentle as the breeze that plays in the evening among the spices of Sabæa; Flee not from your benefactor, children of the dust! I am come to offer you 15 gifts which only your own folly can make vain. You here pray for water, and water I will bestow; let me know with how much you will be satisfied: speak not rashly; consider, that of whatever can be enjoyed by the body, excess is no less dangerous than scarcity. When you remember the pain of thirst, do not forget 20 the danger of suffocation. Now, Hamet, tell me your request.

O being, kind and beneficent, says Hamet, let thine eye pardon my confusion. I entreat a little brook, which in summer shall never be dry, and in winter shall never overflow.

It is granted, replied the genius; and immediately he opened 25 the ground with his sabre, when a fountain bubbling up under their feet, scattered its rills over the meadows; the flowers renewed their fragrance, the trees spread a greener foliage, and the flocks and herds quenched their thirst.

Then turning to Raschid, the genius invited him likewise to 30 offer his petition. I request, says Raschid, that thou wilt turn the Ganges through my grounds, with all his waters, and all their inhabitants.

Hamet was struck with the greatness of his neighbour's sentiments, and secretly repined in his heart, that he had not made 35 the same petition before him: when the genius spoke: Rash man, be not insatiable! Remember, to thee that is nothing which thou canst not use: and how are thy wants greater than the wants of Hamet?

Raschid repeated his desire, and pleased himself with the 40 mean appearance that Hamet would make in the presence of the proprietor of the Ganges. The genius then retired towards the river, and the two shepherds stood waiting the event.

As Raschid was looking with contempt upon his neighbour, on a sudden was heard the roar of torrents, and they found, by the mighty stream, that the mounds of the Ganges were broken. The flood rolled forward into the lands of Raschid, his plantations were
 5 torn up, his flocks overwhelmed, he was swept away before it, and a crocodile devoured him. (Dr. Johnson.)

8. DIFFERENCE AND AGREEMENT,

OR

SUNDAY MORNING.

10 It was sunday morning. All the bells were ringing for church, and the streets were filled with people moving in all directions.

Here, numbers of well-dressed persons, and a long train of charity children, were thronging in at the wide doors of a large handsome church. There, a smaller number, almost equally gay
 15 in dress, were entering an elegant meeting-house. Up one alley, a Roman Catholic congregation was turning into their retired chapel, every one crossing himself with a finger dipped in holy-water as he went in. The opposite side of the street was covered with a train of Quakers, distinguished by their plain and neat attire, and
 20 sedate aspect, who walked without ceremony into a room as plain as themselves, and took their seats, the men on one side and the women on the other, in silence. A spacious building was filled with an overflowing crowd of Methodists, most of them meanly habited, but decent and serious in demeanour; while a small so-
 25 ciety of Baptists in the neighbourhood quietly occupied their humble place of assembly.

Presently the different services began. The churches resounded with the solemn organ, and with the indistinct murmurs of a large body of people following the minister in responsive prayers. From
 30 the meetings were heard the slow psalm, and the single voice of the leader of their devotions. The Roman Catholic chapel was enlivened by strains of music, the tinkling of a small bell, and a perpetual change of service and ceremonial. A profound silence and an unvarying look and posture announced the self-recollection
 35 and mental devotion of the Quakers.

Mr. Ambrose led his son Edwin round all these different assemblies as a spectator. Edwin viewed every thing with great attention, and was often impatient to enquire of his father the meaning of what he saw; but Mr. Ambrose would not suffer him
 40 to disturb any of the congregations even by a whisper. When they had gone through the whole, Edwin found a great number

of questions to put to his father, who explained every thing to him in the best manner he could. At length says Edwin,

But why cannot all these people agree to go to the same place, and worship God the same way?

And why should they agree? replied his father. Do not you see that people differ in a hundred other things? Do they all dress alike, and eat and drink alike, and keep the same hours, and use the same diversions?

Ay — but those are things in which they have a right to do as they please.

And they have a right, too, to worship God as they please. It is their own business, and concerns none but themselves.

But has not God ordered particular ways of worshipping him?

He has directed the mind and spirit with which he is to be worshipped, but not the particular form and manner. That is left for every one to choose, according as it suits his temper and opinions. All these people like their own way best, and why should they leave it for the choice of another? Religion is one of the things in which mankind were made to differ.

The several congregations now began to be dismissed, and the street was again overspread with persons of all the different sects, going promiscuously to their respective homes. It chanced that a poor man fell down in the street in a fit of apoplexy, and lay for dead. His wife and children stood round him crying and lamenting in the bitterest distress. The beholders immediately flocked round, and with looks and expressions of the warmest compassion, gave their help. A Churchman raised the man from the ground by lifting him under the arms, while a Dissenter held his head and wiped his face with his handkerchief. A Roman Catholic lady took out her smelling bottle, and assiduously applied it to his nose. A Methodist ran for a doctor. A Quaker supported and comforted the woman; and a Baptist took care of the children.

Edwin and his father were among the spectators. Here (said Mr. Ambrose) is a thing in which mankind were made to agree.

(Mrs. Barbauld.)

9. GENEROUS REVENGE.

At the period when the Republic of Genoa was divided between the factions of the nobles and the people, Uberto, a man of low origin, but of an elevated mind and superior talents, and enriched by commerce, having raised himself to be the head of the popular party, maintained for a considerable time a democratical form of government.

The nobles, at length, uniting all their efforts, succeeded in

subverting this state of things, and regained their former supremacy. They used their victory with considerable rigour; and in particular, having imprisoned Uberto, proceeded against him as a traitor, and thought they displayed sufficient lenity in passing a
5 sentence upon him of perpetual banishment, and the confiscation of all his property. Adorno, who was then possessed of the first magistracy, a man haughty in temper, and proud of ancient nobility, though otherwise not void of generous sentiments, in pronouncing this sentence on Uberto, aggravated its severity by the
10 insolent terms in which he conveyed it. "You," said he — "you, the son of a base mechanic, who have dared to trample upon the nobles of Genoa — you, by their clemency, are only doomed to shrink again into the nothing whence you sprung."

Uberto received his condemnation with respectful submission
15 to the court; yet stung by the manner in which it was expressed, he could not forbear saying to Adorno, "that perhaps he might hereafter find cause to repent the language he had used to a man capable of sentiments as elevated as his own." He then made his obeisance and retired; and, after taking leave of his friends,
20 embarked in a vessel bound for Naples, and quitted his native country without a tear.

He collected some debts due to him in the Neapolitan dominions, and with the wreck of his fortune went to settle on one of the islands in the Archipelago belonging to the state of Venice. Here
25 his industry and capacity in mercantile pursuits raised him in a course of years to greater wealth than he had possessed in his most prosperous days at Genoa; and his reputation for honour and generosity equalled his fortune.

Among other places which he frequently visited as a merchant, was the city of Tunis, at that time in friendship with
30 the Venetians, though hostile to most of the other Italian states, and especially to Genoa. As Uberto was on a visit to one of the first men of that place at his country house, he saw a young christian slave at work in irons, whose appearance excited his
35 attention. The youth seemed oppressed with labour to which his delicate frame had not been accustomed, and while he leaned at intervals upon the instrument with which he was working, a sigh burst from his full heart, and a tear stole down his cheek. Uberto eyed him with tender compassion, and addressed him in Italian.
40 The youth eagerly caught the sounds of his native tongue, and replying to his inquiries, informed him he was a Genoese. "And what is your name, young man?" said Uberto. "You need not be afraid of confessing to me your birth and condition." "Alas!" he answered, "I fear my captors already suspect enough to demand a
45 large ransom. My father is indeed one of the first men in Genoa.

His name is Adorno, and I am his only son." "Adorno!" Uberto checked himself from uttering more aloud, but to himself he cried, "Thank Heaven! then I shall be nobly revenged."

He took leave of the youth, and immediately went to inquire after the corsair captain who claimed a right to young Adorno, 5 and having found him, demanded the price of his ransom. He learned that he was considered as a capture of value, and that less than two thousand crowns would not be accepted. Uberto paid the sum; and causing his servant to follow him with a horse and a complete suit of handsome apparel, he returned to the youth, 10 who was working as before, and told him he was free. With his own hand he took off his fetters, and helped him to change his dress, and mount on horseback. The youth was tempted to think it all a dream, and the flutter of emotion almost deprived him of the power of returning thanks to his generous benefactor. He was 15 soon, however, convinced of the reality of his good fortune, by sharing the lodging and table of Uberto.

After a stay of some days at Tunis to dispatch the remainder of business, Uberto departed homewards, accompanied by young Adorno, who by his pleasing manners had highly ingratiated him- 20 self with him. Uberto kept him some time at his house, treating him with all the respect and affection he could have shown for the son of his dearest friend. At length, having a safe opportunity of sending him to Genoa, he gave him a faithful servant for a conductor, fitted him out with every convenience, slipped a purse 25 of gold into one hand, and a letter into another, and thus addressed him.

"My dear youth, I could with much pleasure detain you longer in my humble mansion, but I feel your impatience to revisit your friends, and I am sensible that it would be cruelty to deprive 30 them longer than necessary of the joy they will receive in recovering you. Deign to accept this provision for your voyage, and deliver this letter to your father. He probably may recollect somewhat of me, though you are too young to do so. Farewell! I shall not soon forget you, and I hope you will not forget me." 35 Adorno poured out the effusions of a grateful and affectionate heart, and they parted with mutual tears and embraces.

The young man had a prosperous voyage home; and the transport with which he was again beheld by his almost heart- 40 broken parents may more easily be conceived than described. After learning that he had been a captive in Tunis (for it was supposed that the ship in which he had sailed had foundered at sea), "And to whom," said old Adorno, "am I indebted for the inestimable benefit of restoring you to my arms?" "This letter," 45 said his son, "will inform you." He opened it, and read as follows.

"That son of a vile mechanic, who told you that one day you might repent the scorn with which you treated him, has the satisfaction of seeing his prediction accomplished. For know, proud noble! that the deliverer of your only son from slavery is
 5 The banished Uberto."

Adorno dropped the letter, and covered his face with his hands, while his son was displaying in the warmest language of gratitude the virtues of Uberto, and the truly paternal kindness he had experienced from him. As the debt could not be cancelled,
 10 Adorno resolved if possible to repay it. He made such powerful intercession with the other nobles, that the sentence pronounced on Uberto was reversed, and full permission given him to return to Genoa. In apprizing him of this event, Adorno expressed his sense of the obligations he lay under to him, acknowledged the genuine
 15 nobleness of his character, and requested his friendship. Uberto returned to his country, and closed his days in peace, with the universal esteem of his fellow citizens. (Dr. Aikin.)

10. THE TWO BROTHERS.

About the time that many people went over to South America, with the hopes of finding gold and silver, there was a Spaniard, whose name was Pizarro, who had a great inclination to try his fortune like the rest. But as he had an elder brother, for whom he had a very great affection, he went to him, told him his design, and solicited him very much to go along with him, promising him
 25 that he should have an equal share of all the riches they found. The brother, whose name was Alonzo, was a man of a contented temper and a good understanding; he did not therefore much approve of the project, and endeavoured to dissuade Pizarro from it, by setting before him the danger to which he exposed himself, and
 30 the uncertainty of his succeeding. But finding all that he said was vain, he agreed to go with him, but told him at the same time, that he wanted no part of the riches which he might find, and would ask no other favour than to have his baggage and a few servants taken on board the vessel with him. Pizarro then
 35 sold all that he had, bought a vessel, and embarked with several other adventurers, who had all great expectations, like himself, of soon becoming rich. As to Alonzo, he took nothing with him but a few ploughs, harrows, and other tools, and some corn, together with a large quantity of potatoes, and some seeds of different vege-
 40 tables. Pizarro thought this a very odd preparation for the voyage; but as he did not think proper to expostulate with his brother, he said nothing. After sailing some time with prosperous winds, they

put into the last port where they were to stop, before they came to the country where they were to search for gold. Here Pizarro bought a great number more of pickaxes, shovels, and various other tools for digging, melting, and refining the gold he expected to find, besides hiring an additional quantity of labourers to assist 5 him in the work. Alonzo, on the contrary, bought only a few sheep and four stout oxen, with their harness, and food enough to subsist them till they should arrive at land. As it happened, they met with a favourable voyage, and all landed in perfect health in America.

Alonzo then told his brother, that, as he had only come to 10 accompany and serve him, he would stay near the shore, with his servants and cattle, while he went to search for gold, and when he had acquired as much as he desired, should be always ready to embark for Spain with him. Pizarro accordingly set out, not without feeling so great a contempt for his brother, that he could 15 not help expressing it to his companions. I always thought, said he, that my brother had been a man of sense; he bore that character in Spain, but I find people were strangely mistaken in him. Here he is going to divert himself with his sheep and his oxen, as if he was living quietly upon his farm at home, and had 20 nothing else to do than to raise cucumbers and melons. But we know better what to do with our time; so come along, my lads, and if we have but good luck, we shall soon be enriched for the rest of our lives. All that were present applauded Pizarro's speech, and declared themselves ready to follow him wherever he went; 25 only one old Spaniard shook his head as he went, and told him he doubted whether he would find his brother so great a fool as he thought.

They then travelled on several days march into the country, sometimes obliged to cross rivers, at others to pass mountains and forests where they could find no paths; sometimes scorched 30 by the violent heat of the sun, and then wetted to the skin by violent showers of rain. These difficulties, however, did not discourage them so much as to hinder them from trying in several places for gold, which they were at length lucky enough to find in a considerable quantity. This success animated them very much, 35 and they continued working upon that spot, till all their provisions were consumed; they gathered daily large quantities of ore, but then they suffered very much from hunger. Still, however, they persevered in their labours, and sustained themselves with such roots and berries as they could find. At last even this resource 40 failed them; and, after several of their company had died from want and hardship, the rest were just able to crawl back to the place where they had left Alonzo, carrying with them the gold, to acquire which they had suffered so many miseries.

But while they had been employed in this manner, Alonzo, 45

who foresaw what would happen, had been industriously toiling to a very different purpose. His skill in husbandry had easily enabled him to find a spot of considerable extent and very fertile soil, which he ploughed up with the oxen he had brought with him, and the assistance of his servants. He then sowed the different seeds he had brought, and planted the potatoes, which prospered beyond what he could have expected, and yielded him a most abundant harvest. His sheep he had turned out in a very fine meadow near the sea, and every one of them had brought him a couple of lambs. Besides that, he and his servants, at leisure times, employed themselves in fishing; and the fish they had caught were all dried and salted, with salt they had found upon the sea-shore; so that by the time of Pizarro's return they had laid up a very considerable quantity of provision. When Pizarro returned, his brother received him with the greatest cordiality, and asked him what success he had had? Pizarro told him that they had found an immense quantity of gold, but that several of his companions had perished, and that the rest were almost starved from the want of provisions: he then requested his brother would immediately give him something to eat, as he assured him he had tasted no food the last two days, excepting the roots and bark of trees. Alonzo then very coolly answered, that he should remember, that when they set out they had made an agreement, that neither should interfere with the other; that he had never desired to have any share of the gold which Pizarro might acquire, and therefore he wondered that Pizarro should expect to be supplied with the provisions that he had procured with so much care and labour. But, added he, if you choose to exchange some of the gold you have found, for provisions, I shall perhaps be able to accommodate you.

Pizarro thought this behaviour very unkind in his brother; but as he and his companions were almost starved, they were obliged to comply with his demands, which were so exorbitant, that in a very short time they parted with all the gold they had brought with them, merely to purchase food. Alonzo then proposed to his brother to embark for Spain in the vessel which had brought them thither, as the winds and weather seemed to be most favourable; but Pizarro, with an angry look, told him, that since he had deprived him of every thing he had gained, and treated him in so unfriendly a manner, he should go without him; for as to himself, he would rather perish upon that desert shore, than embark with so inhuman a brother. But Alonzo, instead of resenting these reproaches, embraced his brother with the greatest tenderness, and spoke to him in the following manner: Could you then believe, my dearest Pizarro, that I really meant to deprive you of the fruits of all your labours, which you have acquired with so much toil and danger? Rather

may all the gold in the universe perish, than I should be capable of such behaviour to my dearest brother! But I saw the rash, impetuous desire you had of riches, and wished to correct this fault in you, and serve you at the same time. You despised my prudence and industry, and imagined that nothing could be wanting to him 5 that had once acquired wealth. But you have now learned, that, without that foresight and industry, all the gold you have brought with you would not have prevented you from perishing miserably. You are now I hope wiser; and therefore take back your riches, which I hope you have now learned to make a proper use of. 10 Pizarro was equally filled with gratitude and astonishment at this generosity of his brother, and he acknowledged from experience that industry was better than gold. They then embarked for Spain, where they all safely arrived: during the voyage Pizarro often solicited his brother to accept of half his riches, which Alonzo 15 constantly refused, telling him that he that could raise food enough to maintain himself was in no want of gold. (Thomas Day.)

11. AN EARLY RISER.

Few ever lived to a great age, and fewer still ever became distinguished, who were not in the habit of early rising. You rise 20 late, and of course get about your business at a late hour, and every thing goes wrong all day. Franklin says, "that he who rises late, may trot all day, and not have overtaken his business at night." Dean Swift says, "that he never knew any man come to greatness and eminence who lay in bed of a morning." 25

I believe that, with other degeneracies of our days, history will prove that late rising is a prominent one. In the fourteenth century, the shops in Paris were universally open at four in the morning; now, not till long after seven. Then, the king of France dined out at eight o'clock in the morning and retired to his 30 chamber at the same hour in the evening. In the time of Henry VIII., seven in the morning was the fashionable breakfast hour — ten the dinner hour. In the time of Elizabeth, the nobility, fashionables, and students, dined at eleven o'clock, and supped between five and six in the afternoon. 35

Buffon gives us the history of his writings in a few words. "In my youth, I was very fond of sleep: it robbed me of a great deal of my time; but my poor Joseph (his servant) was of great service in enabling me to overcome it. I promised to give Joseph a crown every time that he would make me get up at six. Next 40 morning, he did not fail to wake me and to torment me; but he only received abuse. The next day after, he did the same, with

no better success; and I was obliged to confess, at noon, that I had lost my time. I told him that he did not know how to manage his business; he ought to think of my promise, and not mind my threats. The day following, he employed force; I begged for indulgence — I bid him begone — I stormed — but Joseph persisted. I was therefore obliged to comply; and he was rewarded every day for the abuse which he suffered at the moment when I awoke, by thanks, accompanied with a crown, which he received about an hour after. Yes, I am indebted to poor Joseph for ten or a dozen of the volumes of my works."

Frederick II. of Prussia, even after age and infirmities had increased upon him, gave strict orders never to be allowed to sleep later than four in the morning. Peter the Great, whether at work in the docks at London as a ship-carpenter, or at the anvil as a blacksmith, or on the throne of Russia, always rose before daylight. "I am," says he, "for making my life as long as I can, and therefore sleep as little as possible." Doddridge makes the following striking and sensible remarks on this subject: — "I will here record the observation, which I have found of great use to myself, and to which, I may say, that the production of this work (Commentary on the New Testament,) and most of my other writings, is owing, viz. that the difference between rising at five and at seven o'clock in the morning, for the space of forty years, supposing a man to go to bed at the same hour at night, is nearly equivalent to the addition of ten years to a man's life."

In order to rise early, I would earnestly recommend an early hour for retiring. There are many other reasons for this. Neither your eyes nor your health are so likely to be destroyed. Nature seems to have so fitted things, that we ought to rest in the early part of the night. Dr. Dwight used to tell his students "that one hour of sleep before midnight is worth more than two hours after that time." Let it be a rule with you, and scrupulously adhere to, that your light shall be extinguished by ten o'clock in the evening. You may then rise at five, and have seven hours to rest, which is about what nature requires.

But how shall you form the habit of getting up so early? Suppose you go to bed, to-night, at ten: you have been accustomed to sit up later: for an hour you cannot sleep; and when the clock strikes five, you will be in a fine sleep. I reply, that, if you ever hope to do any thing in this world, the habit must be formed, and the sooner it is done the better. If any money could purchase the habit, no price would be too great. When the writer commenced the practice in earnest, he procured an old clock, at the expense of about two dollars. (This may be placed wherever you please.) He then formed a little machine which went by weight and string,

through the axle of which were four arms of wire, at the ends of which were as many brass buttons. As the weight went down, these revolving buttons struck against a small house-bell. This set up such a tremendous ringing, that there was no more sleep. All this was connected with the wooden clock, in the distant room, by means 5 of wires. He has had the honour to instruct others of his profession into the mystery, and has had the pleasure of hearing the tingling of other bells, which other wooden clocks set a ringing.

Some use a small alarm-clock to call them up, and to which they soon acquire a strong attachment, which would be stronger still, 10 could it be made to strike up a light and build a fire. By this, or some such process, you must be regularly waked at an early hour. The students in Yale and Amherst Colleges, have generally the alarm-clock. After you are once awaked, be sure to use the first consciousness in getting upon the floor. If you allow yourself 15 to parley a single moment, sleep, like an armed man, will probably seize upon you, and your resolution is gone, your hopes are dashed, and your habits destroyed. Need you be reminded here, that the young man who is in the habit of early rising, will and must be in the habit of retiring early, and, of course, will put himself out 20 of the way of many temptations and dangers which come under the veil of midnight. Not a few feel that the rules of academies, or colleges, which call them up early, are rather a hardship. They transgress them when they dare. Finding the stolen waters sweet, they do all in their power during vacations, and at other times, to 25 prevent themselves from forming the habit of early rising. They ought not to feel or do so. The business of college, and the business of life, alike require early rising; and you are your own enemy if you cherish the feeling that this is a burden. It ought to be a matter of gratitude that such regulations prevail in our seminaries. 30 One of the most celebrated writers of England was lately asked how it was that he wrote so much, and yet from ten in the forenoon was at leisure through the day. "Because I begin to write at three o'clock in the morning," was the reply. Most confidently do I believe, that he who from his youth is in the habit of rising early, 35 will be much more likely to live to old age, more likely to be a distinguished and useful man, and more likely to pass a life that is peaceful and pleasant. I dwell upon this point, because a love for the bed is too frequently a besetting sin of students, and a sin which soon acquires the strength of a cable. 40

(*The Student's Manual.*)

12. AGAINST CRUELTY TO ANIMALS.

I was sitting in my study a few nights ago, when, after long rumination, I determined to go to bed. I soon fell asleep, and imagined myself still in my study, and that I suddenly heard a small
5 shrill voice pronounce these words: "Take your pen: I will dictate." I immediately prepared to write, and the voice dictated the following narrative.

I was the eldest son of a country gentleman, who possessed a large estate; and, when I was about nineteen years of age, I fell
10 with my horse as I was hunting. My neck was dislocated with the fall, and I died immediately: but I found myself the next moment, with inexpressible grief and astonishment, existing under the shape of a mongrel puppy, in the stable of an inn, that was kept by a man who had been my father's butler.

15 I was indeed greatly caressed; but my master, in order, as he said, to increase my beauty as well as my strength, soon disencumbered me of my ears and tail. Besides the pain I suffered in the operation, I experienced the disadvantages of this mutilation in a thousand instances: this, however, was but small part of the
20 calamity which in this state I was appointed to suffer. My master had a son about four years old, who was still a greater favourite than myself, and his passions having been always indulged as soon as they appeared, he was encouraged to gratify his resentment against any thing, whether animate or inanimate, that had offended
25 him, by beating me; and, when he did any mischief, the father, or the mother, or the maid, was sure to chastise me in his stead.

This treatment from persons whom I had been accustomed to regard with contempt, and command with insolence, was not long to be borne; early one morning, therefore, I departed.

30 I continued my journey till the afternoon without stopping: about four o'clock I passed through a village, and perceiving a heap of shavings, that were sheltered from the wet by the thatch of a house which some carpenters were repairing, I crept, as I thought, unnoticed into a corner, and laid myself down upon them.
35 But a man who was planing a board, observing that I was a strange dog, and of a mongrel breed, resolved to make himself and his companions merry at my expense. For this purpose, having made a hole about two inches diameter in a piece of deal, he suddenly caught me up, and putting the remainder of my tail through
40 this diabolical engine, he made it fast by driving in a wedge with a heavy mallet, which, crushing the bone, put me to inexpressible torment.

The moment he put me down, the wretches who had been

spectators of this trick, burst into immoderate laughter at the awkward motions by which I expressed my misery, and my ridiculous attempt to run away from that which I could not help carrying with me. They hooted after me till I was out of their sight: however, fear, pain, and confusion, still urging me forward with involuntary speed, I ran with such force between two pales that were not far enough asunder to admit my clog, that I left it, with the remainder of my tail, behind me.

I then found myself in a farm-yard; and fearing that I should be worried by the mastiff, which I saw at a distance, I continued my flight: but some peasants who were at work in a neighbouring barn, perceiving that I ran without being pursued, that my eyes were inflamed, and that my mouth was covered with foam, imagined that I was mad, and knocked out my brains with a flail. Soon after I had quitted this maimed and persecuted carcase, I found myself under the wings of a bullfinch, with three others that were just hatched. I now rejoiced in the hope of soaring beyond the reach of human barbarity, and becoming, like my mother, a denizen of the sky; but before I was perfectly fledged, my mother was surprised in her nest by a wicked school-boy, who grasped her so hard to prevent her escape, that she soon after died. He then took the nest with all that it contained, which he deposited in a basket; where I presently lost my three companions in misfortune, by change of food and unskilful management. I survived, and soon after I could feed myself, I was taken by my tyrant's mother, when she went to pay her rent, as a present to her landlord's daughter, a young lady who was extremely beautiful, and in the eighteenth year of her age.

My captivity now began to lose its terrors; I no longer dreaded the gripe of a rude urchin, whose fondness was scarcely less dangerous than his resentment. The confinement of a cage became habitual, and I imagined I could suffer no injury under the patronage of smiles and graces.

Such was my situation, when a young lady from London made a visit to my mistress, and greatly caressed me. To show my sensibility of her favours I hopped upon her finger, and began to sing; as soon as my song was ended, she turned to my mistress, and told her that the dear creature might by made absolutely the sweetest bird in the world, by *only* putting out its eyes, and confining it in a less cage. To this horrid proposal my mistress agreed, upon being again assured that my song would be very greatly improved; and the operation was performed the next day with a hot knitting-needle. I did not long suffer the mournful solitude of perpetual darkness, for a cat came one night into the room, dragged me through the wires of my cage, and devoured me.

I was not displeased to find myself once more delivered from blindness and captivity, and still able to sport upon the breeze in the form of a cockchafer. But I had scarcely entered my new scene of existence, when a gentleman, in whose garden I was feasting on the leaves of a cherrytree, caught me, and turning to his son, a boy who had just been put into his first breeches, said, Here, Tommy, here is a bird for you. The thoughtless boy received me with a grin of horrid delight; and, as he had been taught, immediately empaled me alive upon a corking-pin, to which a piece of thread was fastened, and I was doomed to make sport for my young master by fluttering about in the agonies of death. When I was quite exhausted, and could no longer use my wings, he was bid to tread upon me, for I was now good for nothing; — a command with which he mercifully complied, and in a moment crushed me to atoms with his foot.

From a cockchafer I transmigrated into an earthworm, and comforted myself by hoping now to spend my life in peace, by escaping the notice of the most cruel of all creatures — man.

But I did not long enjoy this consolation. I was one morning disturbed by an unusual noise, and perceived the ground about me to shake. I immediately worked my way upward to discover the cause; and the moment I appeared above the surface, I was eagerly snatched up by a man who had stuck a dung-fork in the ground, and moved it backwards and forwards to produce the effect which now happened. I was put into a broken pan with many other associates in misfortune, and soon after disposed of to one of those inhuman monsters who delight in the treacherous and ignoble business of angling.

This inconsiderate trifler carried us next morning to the brink of a river; when I presently saw him take out one of my companions, and, whistling a tune, he passed a barbed hook through the whole length of his body, entering at the head, and bringing it out at the tail! The wretched animal writhed itself about on the bloody hook in torture which cannot be conceived by man, or felt by any creature that is not vital in every part. In this condition he was suspended in the water as a bait for fish, till he was swallowed by an eel, together with the hook on which he was hung! While I was beholding this dreadful spectacle, I made many reflections on the great inequality between the pleasure of catching the prey, and the anguish inflicted on the bait. But these reflections were presently after lost by my suffering death in the same agonies of which I had been a spectator.

There is not room to relate all that I have since suffered from the thoughtless barbarity of mankind, in the shapes of a cock, a lobster, an eel, and a pig. Let it suffice to say, that I suffered

the same kind of death with those who are broken upon the wheel; I was roasted alive before a slow fire; I was skinned, and afterwards thrown, while yet alive, into a fryingpan; and I was scourged to death with small cords, to gratify the wanton appetite of luxury, or contribute to the merriment of the unthinking rabble. 5

Thus far I had written as amanuensis to an invisible dictator, when, my dream still continuing, I felt something tickle my wrist; and, turning my eyes from the paper to see what it was, I discovered a flea, which I immediately caught, and killed it by putting it into the candle! At the same instant the flea vanished, a young 10 lady of exquisite beauty stood before me: Thoughtless wretch, said she, hast thou too changed the state of my existence, and exposed me to still greater calamities than any I have yet suffered? As a flea I was thy monitor: and as a flea I might have escaped thy cruelty, if I had not intended thy instruction. Publish, however, 15 what I have communicated: if any man shall be reclaimed from a criminal inattention to the felicity of inferior beings, and restrained from inflicting pain by considering the effect of his actions, I have not suffered in vain.

While I listened to this address, my heart throbbed, and the 20 effort I made to reply awoke me. (Hawkesworth.)

13. LAW.

There were two farmers: farmer A. and farmer B. Farmer A. was possessed of a bull: Farmer B. was possessed of a ferry-boat. Now, the owner of the ferry-boat, made his boat fast to a post on shore, 25 with a piece of hay twisted rope-fashion, or, as we say, a hay-band. After he had made his boat fast to a post on shore, as it was very natural for a hungry man to do, he went up town to dinner. Farmer A.'s bull, as it was very natural for a hungry bull to do, came down town to look for a dinner, and, observing, discovering, 30 seeing and spying out some turnips in the bottom of the ferry-boat, the bull scrambled into the ferry-boat; he ate up the turnips, and, to make an end of his meal, fell to work upon the hay-band: the boat, being eaten from its moorings, floated down the river, with the bull in it: it struck against a rock, beat a hole in the bottom of the boat, 35 and tossed the bull overboard; whereupon the owner of the bull brought his action against the ferry-boat for running away with the bull: the owner of the boat brought his action against the bull, for running away with the boat; and thus notice of trial was given — Bullum versus Boatum, Boatum versus Bullum. 40

Now the counsel for the bull began with saying: 'My lord, and

you gentlemen of the jury, we are counsel in this cause for the bull. We are indicted for running away with the boat. Now, my lord, we have heard of running horses, but never of running bulls before. Now, my lord, the bull could no more run away with the boat, than a man
 5 in a coach may be said to run away with the horses; therefore, my lord, how can we punish what is not punishable? how can we eat what is not eatable? or how can we drink what is not drinkable? Or, as the law says, how can we think on what is not thinkable? Therefore, my lord, as we are counsel in this cause for the bull,
 10 if the jury should bring the bull in guilty, the jury would be guilty of a bull.'

The counsel for the boat observed, that the bull should be nonsuited; because, in his declaration he had not specified what colour he was of, for thus wisely and thus learnedly spoke the
 15 counsel! — 'My lord, if the bull was of no colour, he must be of some colour, and if he was not of any colour, what colour could be the bull of?'

I overruled this motion myself, by observing, the bull was a white bull, and that white is no colour: besides, as I told my
 20 brethren, they should not trouble their heads to talk of colour in the law, for the law can colour any thing. This cause being afterwards left to a reference, upon the award, both bull and boat were acquitted; it being proved, that the tide of the river carried them both away; upon which I gave it as my opinion, that,
 25 as the tide of the river carried both bull and boat away, both bull and boat had a good action against the water-bailiff.

My opinion being taken, an action was issued, and upon the travers, this point of law arose: How, wherefore, and whether, why, when and what, whatsoever, whereas, and whereby, as the
 30 boat was not a *compos mentis* evidence, how could an oath be administered? That point was soon settled, by Boatum's attorney declaring, that, for his client, he would swear any thing.

The water-bailiff's charter was then read, taken of the original record, in true law Latin, which set forth in their declaration, that
 35 they were carried away either by the tide of flood, or the tide of ebb. But now comes the nicety of the law. Bullum and Boatum mentioned both ebb and flood, to avoid quibbling, but it being proved, that they were carried away neither by the tide of flood, nor by the tide of ebb, but exactly upon the top of high water,
 40 they were nonsuited; but such was the lenity of the court, upon their paying all costs, they were allowed to begin again.

(Stevens.)

14. THE ADVENTURE OF A MASON.

There was once upon a time a poor mason, or brick-layer, in Granada, who kept all the saint's days and Saint Monday into the bargain; and yet, with all his devotion, he grew poorer and poorer, and could scarcely earn bread for his numerous family. One night he 5 was roused from his first sleep by a knocking at his door. He opened it and beheld before him a tall, meagre, cadaverous-looking priest.

"Hark ye, honest friend!" said the stranger; "I have observed that you are a good Christian, and one to be trusted; will you undertake a job this very night?" 10

"With all my heart, Señor Padre, on condition that I am paid accordingly."

"That you shall be; but you must suffer yourself to be blindfolded."

To this the mason made no objection; so, being hoodwinked, he 15 was led by the priest through various rough lanes and winding passages, until they stopped before the portal of a house. The priest then applied a key, turned a creaking lock, and opened what sounded like a ponderous door. They entered, the door was closed and bolted, and the mason was conducted through an echoing corridor, 20 and a spacious hall, to an interior part of the building. Here the bandage was removed from his eyes, and he found himself in a court dimly lighted by a single lamp. In the centre was the dry basin of an old Moorish fountain, under which the priest requested him to form a small vault, bricks and mortar being at hand for 25 the purpose. He accordingly worked all night, but without finishing the job. Just before day-break, the priest put a piece of gold into his hand, and having again blindfolded him, conducted him back to his dwelling.

"Are you willing," said he, "to return and complete your 30 work?"

"Señor Padre, provided I am so well paid."

"Well, then, to-morrow at midnight I will call again."

He did so, and the vault was completed.

"Now," said the priest, "you must help me to bring forth the 35 bodies that are to be buried in this vault."

The poor mason's hair rose on his head at these words: he followed the priest, with trembling steps, into a retired chamber of the mansion, expecting to behold some ghastly spectacle of death, but was relieved on perceiving three or four portly jars 40 standing in one corner. They were evidently full of money, and it was with great labour that he and the priest carried them forth and consigned them to their tomb. The vault was then closed,

the pavement replaced, and all traces of the work obliterated. The mason was again hoodwinked and led forth by a route different from that by which he had come. After they had wandered for a long time through a perplexed maze of lanes and alleys, they halted.

5 The priest then put two pieces of gold into his hand: "Wait here," said he, "until you hear the cathedral bell toll for matins. If you presume to uncover your eyes before that time, evil will befall you." So saying, he departed. The mason waited faithfully, amusing himself by weighing the gold pieces in his hand, and clinking them
10 against each other. The moment the cathedral bell rang its matin peal, he uncovered his eyes, and found himself on the banks of the Xenil, from whence he made the best of his way home, and revelled with his family for a whole fortnight on the profits of his two nights' work; after which he was as poor as ever.

15 He continued to work a little, and pray a good deal, and keep Saints'-days and holidays from year to year, while his family grew up as gaunt and ragged as a crew of gipsies. As he was seated one evening at the door of his hovel, he was accosted by a rich old curmudgeon, who was noted for owning many houses, and
20 being a griping landlord. The man of money eyed him for a moment from beneath a pair of anxious shagged eyebrows.

"I am told, friend, that you are very poor."

"There is no denying the fact, Señor — it speaks for itself."

"I presume then, that you will be glad of a job, and will
25 work cheap."

"As cheap, my master, as any mason in Granada."

"That's what I want. I have an old house fallen into decay, that costs me more money than it is worth to keep it in repair, for nobody will live in it; so I must contrive to patch it up and
30 keep it together at as small expense as possible."

The mason was accordingly conducted to a large deserted house that seemed going to ruin. Passing through several empty halls and chambers, he entered an inner court, where his eye was caught by an old Moorish fountain. He paused for a moment, for a dream-
35 ing recollection of the place came over him.

"Pray," said he, "who occupied this house formerly?"

"A pest upon him!" cried the landlord, "it was an old miserly priest, who cared for nobody but himself. He was said to be immensely rich, and, having no relations, it was thought he would leave
40 all his treasures to the Church. He died suddenly, and the priests and friars thronged to take possession of his wealth; but nothing could they find but a few ducats in a leathern purse. The worst luck has fallen on me, for, since his death, the old fellow continues to occupy my house without paying rent, and there's no taking the law of a dead man. The people pretend to hear the clinking gold

all night in the chamber where the old priest slept, as if he were counting over his money, and sometimes a groaning and moaning about the court. Whether true or false, these stories have brought a bad name on my house, and not a tenant will remain in it."

"Enough," said the mason sturdily: "let me live in your house 5 rent-free until some better tenant present himself, and I will engage to put it in repair, and to quiet the troubled spirit that disturbs it. I am a good Christian and a poor man, and am not to be daunted by a ghost, even though he should come in the shape of a big bag of money!" 10

The offer of the honest mason was gladly accepted; he moved with his family into the house, and fulfilled all his engagements. By little and little he restored it to its former state; the clinking of gold was no more heard at night in the chamber of the defunct priest, but began to be heard by day in the pocket of the living 15 mason. In a word, he increased rapidly in wealth, to the admiration of all his neighbours, and became one of the richest men in Granada: he gave large sums to the Church, by way, no doubt, of satisfying his conscience, and never revealed the secret of the vault until on his death-bed, to his son and heir. 20

(Washington Irving.)

15. THE PEREGRINATIONS OF THE SIEUR GODOLPHE, THE SHELL-GATHERER.

CHAPTER I.

I was the youngest son of the Count Joffroi, and had two elder 25 brothers. We lived in that old castle which stands upon the banks of the Meuse, near to Huy. Our table was every day graced with the game and the fish which the Count, my father and my eldest brother killed; and with the vegetables that grew in the hanging garden. The revenue of my father only sufficed to pay taxes, and 30 the feed of his horse, and the wages of old Joseph, and for powder and shot. My two eldest brothers entered into foreign service, and were killed in the wars; and when I had reached my twenty-fourth year, the Count, my father, died, leaving me heir to his possessions, and burthened with his debts. I felt no inclination to vegetate as 35 he had done; but determined to turn what I had into money, and go and seek my fortune. When my father's debts were paid, and the price of all that I had sold was collected, I counted a hundred and twenty Louis d'ors into my purse, — tied a string round it, shook hands with old Joseph, and with all my fortune in my pocket, 40 saving my father's diamond ring, which I had upon my finger,

I closed the little gate of the hanging garden behind me, and turning the corner of the rock upon which the castle was built, lost sight of the house of my fathers. It was a fine buoyant sensation, that which I experienced in thinking that the world was
5 all before me. I had never before been ten leagues from home; I had a hundred and twenty pieces of gold in my purse; and I felt as if the world, and all its wealth, and all it could yield of pleasure, were at my disposal.

Nothing occurred to disturb those feelings during several weeks,
10 — at the end of which time I found myself in Vienna, with my purse somewhat lighter, and not any nearer to Fortune than when I set out in quest of her.

Vienna was no place for an inexperienced youth, with a purse full of gold, and panting after the enjoyments in which life at that
15 season of years is supposed to be prolific. During the forenoon and evening I seldom left myself much leisure for thought, — but in the morning, reflections, gloomy enough, would break in upon me; and I used then to revolve, with much seriousness, upon my prospects; and my mind was unable to suggest anything that might
20 reasonably light up the future.

One evening, when I had returned to my lodgings earlier than usual, I began to reason with myself, thus. “I have been here, in Vienna, no less than four months, and have never taken one step towards providing against the future; what am I to do when
25 my purse is empty?” — and, with some anxiety, I drew it from my pocket, and emptied its contents upon the table: the table was immediately strewn with copper in place of gold. At first, I doubted the evidence of my senses. I rubbed my eyes, and then handled the pieces; sure enough they were copper — all copper.
30 The last time I had used my purse, was the night before, when, at a coffee-house in the Place San Joseph, I drank a bottle of Rhenish with a stranger. I recollected that I fell asleep, with my purse on the table, and my hand loosely over it, — that when I awoke it was late, — the stranger was gone, — and my heavy
35 purse still under my hand.

I remained for some time in a stupor; I expected, indeed, to have found my purse lighter, — but to find myself pennyless! I started up, and rushed out of the house, to go to the Café where I had last been. It was now about three in the morning, it was
40 in the beginning of July, and the dawn had begun. I went at a quick pace towards the Place San Joseph; and just in entering the square, a man, muffled up, but of whom I distinguished enough to convince me it was the stranger I suspected, hurried past me. I stopped, and spoke; he instantly paused, and turned round.
45 “Young man,” said he, “you seem flurried.” — “I may well be so,”

I replied; and I hastily related to him the circumstances under which he had met me. "Whom, then, do you suspect?" said he, fixing upon me a penetrating look. The manner of the stranger increased my suspicions of him; now, I thought, was my opportunity; and it was probable, if not certain, that if I should lose sight of 5 him, now, it would be for ever. "I suspect you," I replied, and attempted to seize him by the collar. Quick as lightning he drew a short poniard from under his cloak, and would have buried it in my bosom, had I not raised my arm in time to receive the blow upon it, where it inflicted a slight wound. I was a powerful 10 young man, fully my adversary's equal; and after a desperate struggle, in which I felt that I was struggling for life, I wrested the weapon from him, — we both fell at the same instant; and the poniard, which I held in my hand, entered the stranger's side, and was buried in it to the hilt. 15

"Young man," said he, feebly, "your suspicions were just: I took your gold, and I would have taken your life had I been able; but it has happened otherwise. You will find your own in my purse, which is fixed to a girdle under my cloak; there is more in it than yours, but — he spoke no more, a convulsive shudder passed 20 over him, and life was extinct. The cloak had been torn in the struggle, and the purse was exposed to my eyes. I instantly tore it off.

No sooner did I find myself in possession of the purse, and standing beside the dead body of the stranger, than the peril of 25 my situation came with its full force to my mind. No one in Vienna knew me; here was a man murdered, the bloody poniard (which he had himself drawn from his side) lying on the ground, and myself standing by, with a purse of gold in my hand; circumstances seemed so strongly against me, that it was madness to 30 remain a moment, for the morning had so broke that the whole affair might have been seen; and yet, to fly, would be to proclaim myself the criminal. In either case I felt that crime would fix itself upon me, and that I must pay the penalty.

While thus wavering as to how I should act, to escape the 35 danger which seemed inevitable, and almost determined to throw down the purse and its contents by the side of the stranger, and hurry away, I saw the door of the coffee-house, whither I had been going, open, and the master came out and walked towards me. I waited for him, and as he came up, instantly began to relate 40 my story. "This," said he, interrupting me before I had quite concluded, "is very well composed in so short a time, but I witnessed the whole affair; never was there an honest gentleman than he who lies there dead, — I have lost a good customer in him. I saw you meet him, I saw you attempt to seize him, and 45

fight with him; and now I see him murdered, and you standing with the purse which I know to be his, in your hand: who do you suppose will credit your story? you will be sent to the galleys, or to the scaffold, that's certain."

5 I felt that the man spoke with but too much reason, and that his story, and the circumstances together, must condemn me. "But," said he, "harkee! no one has seen this business but me, if my word will bring you to the gallows, it can save you from it too; divide the gold with me; I will swear he attacked, and would
10 have robbed you, and will bring you off." I felt the extraordinary and dreadful alternative to which I was reduced. This man's evidence would convict me; I must either run the almost certain risk of suffering as a criminal, or acknowledge that I had robbed and murdered, and share my gold with a villain, to purchase his silence.
15 The struggle was but momentary; I would not proclaim myself a villain, even to one man, although none other on earth suspected me. "No," said I, "do your worst; I will rather lose my own, than lie myself to infamy." I threw down the purse, and hurried off, leaving my accuser in precisely as critical a situation, as that
20 in which I stood before he came up to me.

CHAPTER II.

This reflection did not occur to me at the time: I had no idea, that in thus acting upon my own feelings of honour, I was leaving the other to the very fate which I dreaded; but so it turned out.
25 Many years afterwards, when I returned through Vienna, feeling an inclination to renew the sensations which I had before experienced (for there is at times, a strange pleasure in renewing the recollections of critical scenes), one evening, I went in disguise to the Café, in the Place San Joseph; and upon making inquiries respecting Frederic
30 Hörder, — the former host, — I learned, that about twelve years ago, he had been tried, and executed, on account of an atrocious murder which he had committed for the sake of plunder, upon a gentleman who had been in the habit of frequenting his house. This intelligence, at first, strangely agitated me. The man had
35 suffered unjustly; but when I reflected upon his character, and still more, when I considered, that the fate of this man would assuredly have been mine, I could not regret that Hörder (who was at all events more guilty than I was) had met punishment in my stead.
40 But to return, — I hurried from the spot, and went at a rapid pace, without any other object, than to get far from the scene in which I had been unintentionally so prominent an actor.

There was a strange discrepancy between my feelings, and the aspect of every thing around me. The sun had risen, and gilded

with his morning beams the tops of the spires and pinnacles of the palace, which lifted themselves into the calm morning air. All was hushed, — the city was yet buried in deep sleep: but my own mind, although, thank God! strong in innocence, was fearfully agitated by doubt and danger. 5

After a rapid walk, I found myself approaching one of the gates of the city. It was not yet open; I loitered about, troubled with the most uneasy sensations, until I could be permitted to pass. Fortunately, but a few minutes elapsed, before five chimed on the clock of the great cathedral. This was the signal for 10 opening the gates. I passed out, and no one questioned me. I walked as rapidly as I could, consistently with the danger of exciting suspicion, across the open space which lies between the city and the suburb, and soon found myself upon the banks of the river, and close to a pier, upon which two men were employed in detaching a cable 15 which moored a boat to the shore; and from the bustle on deck, and the appearance of several passengers, it seemed on the point of dropping down the river. I stepped into it, and the next moment we were in the middle of the stream, and rapidly leaving the city behind us. 20

I had not been many minutes in the boat, when the master came up to me to receive his fare, asking the distance which I intended to go. I was equally unable to comply with the demand, as unprepared to answer the question. I had not one copeck in my possession; and as to telling whither I was going I did not even 25 know the boat's destination. After a moment's pause I said that I had no convenient coin; but putting into his hands a handsome gold watch, which I had purchased when I came to Vienna, I told him to keep it till he was satisfied; but perceiving my appearance and furniture to belong to a person of some consideration, he 30 refused the pledge, observing that I could pay the fare at Presburg, Raab, or Buda, as I liked best, or at whatever place I should leave the boat.

In a short time we left all traces of the metropolis behind, and were gliding noiselessly, but swiftly, from the recent scene of 35 blood and peril.

It is a surprising effect, that which is produced upon unquiet feelings, by the serenity of nature. Where remorse does not mingle with these, the beauty and calmness of the external world, can cheat us of our misfortunes, and almost reconcile us to our fate, 40 however dark it may be. It was not three hours since I had stood beside the dying stranger, with almost no hope of escape from the gibbet; and now I was going I knew not whither; without money, without object, without a friend — but I was young, I was in health, and all nature looked so joyful, that I felt 45

as if I had been upon an excursion of pleasure, with my purse full of gold.

I soon discovered, from the conversation of those around, that the boat was bound for Belgrade, and I spoke as if that were also my destination. I will not detail the particulars of the voyage; suffice it to say, that on the afternoon of the fifth day we came in sight of Buda, — the hill and castle illuminated by the setting sun, which had already left the city to the shades of evening: here I determined to dispose of my diamond ring. I told the master of the boat, I should sleep on shore, and as I was considerably in his debt, I insisted upon leaving my watch in his hands: my ring was therefore my only resource; I was loath to part with it, but there was no room for hesitation.

CHAPTER III.

Every one who has been in Buda, must recollect the long narrow street that runs up from the river into the heart of the town. I had not proceeded very far up this street, when I descried, through a window, a person engaged in working jewels. It so happened, that my evil genius had conducted me to the shop of one of the most unprincipled villains in all Hungary; he had gained enormous riches by his evil practices and extortions, — and by means of his wealth, had acquired great influence in the city where he lived. I pulled my ring off my finger, and putting it into his hand, demanded the value of it. He looked first at the ring and then at me, and alternately for several moments, at one and at the other. He saw by my appearance, and knew by my dialect, that I was not of his city; and probably guessed, that I had arrived by the boat, which regularly stops at Buda on those days, and about that hour. After examining the ring attentively for several minutes, he snapped it in two with an instrument by which he had held it, and let the pieces drop into a box full of other jewels. “How now?” cried I, and I attempted to seize him; but he jerked himself out of my grasp, and out of his shop, the door of which closed behind him with a spring lock. I immediately heard him call out loudly, several times, “thieves, thieves!” and in a few moments, he re-entered, accompanied by half a dozen others, who laid hold on me, and without listening to a word, hurried me off to prison.

At an early hour the next morning I was brought to the hall of justice, where the jeweller appeared in the character of my accuser. “This man,” said he, “came into my shop late yesterday evening, where, as is my custom, I was working, after all the other merchants had shut their doors, — and, under pretence of

asking me to value a worthless bauble, he attempted to snatch from me a diamond ring, which I held in my forceps and was examining with a magnifying-glass, and which broke in the struggle. Here is the ring which he asked me to value; and there are the pieces of the ring which he attempted to take from me; his own 5 ring is not worth six ducats, while this other is worth not less than two hundred."

It was in vain that I protested my innocence, and declared the villany of my accuser; it was in vain that I told my story, and requested that the captain of the boat in which I sailed should be 10 sent for, to corroborate my detail. "That," said my accuser, "is an impossible demand, since the boat has sailed six hours ago; and besides (added he), is it likely that a man, with not one kreutzer in his pocket, should be possessed of jewels of such value?" In short, this reasoning prevailed, and I was on the point 15 of being condemned to the galleys, when a thought struck me. "Hold," said I to the judge, "I have yet something to say, that will prove my accuser a liar, and myself an injured man. You have, in your own hands, the pieces of the broken ring which he says is his; bid my accuser tell of how many diamonds his ring is 20 composed; if the ring be indeed his, he cannot fail to know this, since he has, in your hearing, put a value upon the ring. "My accuser hesitated; but at last ventured to say, that the chief value of the ring lay in the large diamond in the centre, and that of the others he had taken little note. "Then," said I' addressing 25 the judge, "I know more of a ring, which according to his account, I have seen but for a moment, than he himself knows of his own ring — the ring is composed of nine diamonds; and in place of the centre jewel being the most valuable, there is a flaw in it. Now," continued I, "ask my accuser, if there be any writing in the 30 inside of his ring." Upon this question being put, my accuser answered that there was writing; but that, as writing did not alter the value of a ring, he had never taken the trouble to decipher it. "Then," said I, "if my accuser be in the right, and the ring his, I must have been able in one moment, and that, a moment of 35 struggle, to perceive what he has never discovered even through a magnifying-glass — in the inside is rudely scratched the word *Godolph*." The roguery of my accuser was now so plain, that even his wealth and influence were insufficient to turn altogether the scale; though they hindered the execution of deserved punishment. 40 "I decree," said the judge, "that this stranger be paid by his accuser double the value which he has himself set upon the ring;" — and before leaving the court, I put into my pocket four hundred ducats.

[There is here a gap of seventeen leaves in the journal of the 45

Sieur Godolph. These must have contained the history of his peregrinations, from the time when this adventure ended, as we have seen above, until the Sieur is on the eve of sailing for India.]

CHAPTER IV.

5 I shall assuredly, said I to myself, find a vessel at this port bound for India, whither I may go and traffic with my gold. I walked on until I reached the quay, which is very long and forms a crescent, and here I determined to abide until I should find a ship bound for India. My inquiries were soon successful;
10 and, in less than a week, the port of Marseilles was lessening behind me.

Fair winds continued to attend us through the Mediterranean sea, and the South Atlantic ocean; and without any disaster we doubled the African Cape. Our vessel being bound for Surat,
15 which is the great emporium of the most precious productions of Hindoostan, the most direct course into the gulf of Persia lay through the channel of Mozambique, between the island of Madagascar and the coast of Africa. Light airs accompanied our progress until we reached the gulf of Sofala, where we proposed to
20 traffic a little with the natives on the African coast; and on the 11^h of August we cast anchor in the channel, about two miles from shore.

It was the close of one of those fainting days which occur between the tropics: the sun was getting low in the horizon, and
25 I was reclining upon deck, watching it slowly sink; suddenly I heard from below the cry of "Fire!" and, at the same instant, a crowd of sailors, with horror-stricken faces, scrambled up the hatchway and rushed to the stern to lower the boat. I sprang to my feet, and followed them instinctively; but saw that the numbers
30 were far too great for the frail vessel to which they were about to commit themselves; and that to embark in it would only be to exchange one death for another, — not so horrible, perhaps, but no less sure. The mounting flames were already rising from the hold, and a moment's delay might be fatal; for the seas being
35 infested with pirates, a large quantity of gunpowder was in the ship. There was a small boat floating, attached to the vessel by a rope; but it was so small that the crew thought it unworthy of consideration. I decided my part in a moment, leaped into the sea, gained the little boat, unloosed the cable, and abandoned my-
40 self alone to the wide ocean.

Awful now was the scene: the sun had gone down, and there being little or no twilight between the tropics, I was soon in darkness, save the glare from the burning vessel. I saw, by the red flaring

light, many hanging on its sides: these, the melting pitch soon forced to quit their hold, and I saw them drop, one by one, into the ocean; I saw a multitude fill the boat which I had abandoned — and I saw it instantly sink with its living burthen, beneath the still waters. I heard at times from the burning vessel, the 5 wild cry of terror and despair, mingle with the crackling of the flames; and I waited in silence for the explosion, which would leave me solitary, with night and the ocean around me. At last it came; the burst of light; the deep heavy boom, that went like a swell 10 along the water and the air; the large masses of light, mingled with darker bodies, flinging themselves up into the heavens, and then falling into the sea with a hissing noise, and disappearing, until every spark was extinguished; until all was hushed beneath the great waters; and pitchy darkness, and the silence of the grave, 15 sat upon the bosom of the hungry deep.

Here, memory fails me; my desolate state was for a while forgotten in sleep. I recollect only, that the high land, near to which the ship had anchored, and which, by the imperfect starlight of the southern hemisphere I could just discern, gradually disappeared. I had no instrument wherewith to assist my course, and lying 20 down in the bottom of the little boat, I commended myself to Him, who had rescued me from an awful death, and who could yet preserve me; — and sleep came upon me.

CHAPTER THE LAST.

I was awakened by a sudden concussion; — it was broad 25 day; I raised myself up, and looked around; I was near the mouth of a river, and at but a short distance from shore. The rivers of Africa carry down much alluvial soil, forming sandbanks on each side, and it was upon one of these that my little vessel had drifted by the tide. I thanked God for my deliverance; and with little difficulty, 30 gained the shore. It was a sandy shelving coast, and the tide had nearly retired. I sat down at a little distance from the margin, upon a dry sand hillock, and gazed around me. Before me was the swelling ocean, of the greenish hue which it usually wears in these regions, and glittering like a mirror; and below the shelving 35 bank, the little impotent waves were running races on the almost level sand; but from these my eye was speedily attracted by the beautiful and varied hues which sparkled upon the sand-bank, beneath the almost perpendicular rays of a tropical sun. This appearance, I found, proceeded from innumerable marine productions upon which 40 the yet recent wave had left a polish; and which, both in beauty and variety, exceeded all conceptions I had before formed of the

wonders which are hidden in the ocean. From this instant, the bent of my future life was determined, — this instant coloured the fortunes of my future years. I had seen, when in Vienna, a collection of shells and other marine productions, which was highly
 5 valued; but here, the labour of one hour would eclipse it. Here, Providence had cast my lot; and here, a new, and seemingly untrodden field lay before me. It is impossible that any state can be imagined more utterly desolate than mine at this moment was; but in what I saw around me, I fancied, I discovered the sources
 10 of future wealth, — and like the flowers that spring up in the regions of eternal snow, Hope, even in this moment, found entrance into my soul.

It would be little interesting, to detail the monotonous lapse of the years which I spent upon this shore. I could speak indeed
 15 of the native villages which lie along the coast, and of the simple inhabitants who supplied me with the necessaries of life. I could tell of that new world, which nature unfolds in this tropical region; or retrace the changes that time, as it wore away, wrought upon my feelings: but I refrain from all this.

20 There is no pursuit that will not, under certain circumstances, become a passion. To some, it may seem unaccountable, that days, months — nay, years, should be spent in wandering, — a solitary, along the sea-coast, seeking for the productions which the waves had cast upon it; but I can say of a truth, that even without
 25 any hope of reward beyond the indulgence of my passion, I could have spent my days contentedly, — even happily, thus employed. I longed for day, that light might enable me to renew my pursuit; I prolonged it, until the objects of my search were undistinguishable, — time, far from diminishing, served but to increase my ardour. I often
 30 would survey my accumulated treasures with a delight, not less than that with which I now gaze upon the gold which they have purchased: and, even after my labours had earned me independence, did I not, like another Sinbad, leave my domestic home, and become a wanderer again by the ocean tide, among the remotest islands
 35 that stud the deep? But years have at last stolen upon me: and domestic quiet, though it cannot wean me from my longings, reconciles me to that repose which enfeebled nature demands. But even now, could vigour again re-animate for a season those limbs which have so often obeyed the impulses of my mind, I should again be
 40 Godolph the Shell-Gatherer. Often in my sleep does imagination recall former scenes, or create new images out of the past. Often do I sit upon the shelving rock, and watch the distant ocean-swell approaching, or the little wave fretting beneath me; often am I hurrying at break of day, over the dry sand hillocks, to the sea

beach, — or spreading in some sea-worn cavity, the fruit of my day's labour, as the unclouded sun dips into the distant waters.

I have been a man of many climes: my race is nearly run.

(*Henry David Inglis.*)

16. FORESTER.

5

Forester was the son of an English gentleman, who had paid some attention to his education, but who had some singularities of opinion, which probably influenced him in his conduct towards his children.

Young Forester was frank, brave, and generous: but he had 10 been taught to dislike politeness so much that the common forms of society appeared to him either odious or ridiculous; his sincerity was seldom restrained by any attention to the feelings of others. His love of independence was carried to such an extreme, that he was inclined to prefer the life of Robinson Crusoe in his desert 15 island to that of any individual in cultivated society. His attention had been early fixed upon the follies and vices of the higher classes of people; and his contempt for selfish indolence was so strongly associated with the name of gentleman that he was disposed to choose his friends and companions from amongst his inferiors: the 20 inequality between the rich and the poor shocked him, his temper was enthusiastic as well as benevolent, and he ardently wished to be a man, and to be at liberty to act for himself, that he might reform society, or at least his own neighbourhood. When he was about nineteen years old, his father died, and young Forester was 25 sent to Edinburgh, to Dr. Campbell, the gentleman whom his father had appointed his guardian. In the choice of his mode of travelling, his disposition appeared. The stagecoach and a carrier set out nearly at the same time from Penrith. Forester proud of bringing his principles immediately into action, put himself under 30 the protection of the carrier, and congratulated himself upon his freedom from prejudice. He arrived at Edinburgh in all the glory of independence, and he desired the carrier to set him down at Dr. Campbell's door.

"The doctor's not at home," said the footman who opened 35 the door.

"He is at home," exclaimed Forester with indignation; "I see him at the window."

"My master is just going to dinner, and can't see any body now," said the footman; "but if you will call again at six o'clock, 40 may be, he may see you, my good lad."

"My name is Forester --- let mein," said Forester, pushing forwards.

"Forester! --- Mr. Forester!" said the footman; "the young gentleman that was expected in the coach to-day?"

Without deigning to give the footman any explanation, Forester
5 took his own portmanteau from the carrier; and Dr. Campbell came
down stairs just when the footman was officiously struggling with
the young gentleman for his burden. Dr. Campbell received his
pupil very kindly; but Forester would not be prevailed upon to
rub his shoes sufficiently upon the mat at the bottom of the stairs,
10 or to change his disordered dress before he made his appearance
in the drawing-room. He entered with dirty shoes, a threadbare
coat, and hair that looked as if it never had been combed; and
he was much surprised by the effect which his singular appearance
produced upon the risible muscles of some of the company.

15 "I have done nothing to be ashamed of," said he to himself;
but, notwithstanding all his efforts to be and to appear at ease,
he was constrained and abashed. A young laird, Mr. Archibald
Mackenzie, seemed to enjoy his confusion with malignant, half-
suppressed merriment in which Dr. Campbell's son was too good-
20 natured, and too well-bred, to participate. Henry Campbell was
three or four years older than Forester, and though he looked like
a gentleman, Forester could not help being pleased with the manner
in which he drew him into conversation. The secret magic of
politeness relieved him insensibly from the torment of false shame.

25 "It is a pity this lad was bred up a gentleman," said Forester
to himself, "for he seems to have some sense and goodness."

Dinner was announced, and Forester was provoked at being
interrupted in an argument concerning carts and coaches, which
he had begun with Henry Campbell. Not that Forester was averse
30 to eating, for he was at this instant ravenously hungry; but eating
in company he always found equally repugnant to his habits and
his principles. A table covered with a clean table-cloth; dishes
in nice order; plates, knives, and forks, laid at regular distances,
appeared to our young Diogenes absurd superfluities and he was
35 ready to exclaim, "How many things I do not want!" Sitting down
to dinner, eating, drinking, and behaving like other people, ap-
peared to him difficult and disagreeable ceremonies. He did not
perceive that custom had rendered all these things perfectly easy
to every one else in company; and as soon as he had devoured
40 his food his own way, he moralized in silence upon the good sense
of Sancho Panza, who preferred eating an egg behind the door
to feasting in public; and he recollected his favourite traveller
Levaillant's enthusiastic account of his charming hottentot dinners,
and of the disgust that he afterwards felt, on the comparison of
45 European etiquette and African simplicity.

"Thank God, the ceremony of dinner is over!" said Forester to Henry Campbell, as soon as they rose from table.

All those things, which seemed mere matter of course in society, appeared to Forester strange ceremonies. In the evening, there were cards for those who liked cards, and there was conversation for those who liked conversation. Forester liked neither; he preferred playing with a cat; and he sat all night apart from the company in a corner of a sofa. He took it for granted, that the conversation could not be worth his attention, because he heard lady Catherine Mackenzie's voice amongst others; he had conceived a dislike, or rather a contempt for this lady, because she showed much of the pride of birth and rank in her manners. Henry Campbell did not think it necessary to punish himself for her ladyship's faults, by withdrawing from entertaining conversation: he knew that his father had the art of managing the frivolous subjects started in general company, so as to make them lead to amusement and instruction; and this Forester would probably have discovered this evening, had he not followed his own thoughts, instead of listening to the observations of others. Lady Catherine, it is true, began with a silly history of her hereditary antipathy for pickled cucumbers; and she was rather tiresome in tracing the genealogy of this antipathy through several generations of her ancestry; but Dr. Campbell said, "that he had heard, from an ingenious gentleman of her ladyship's family, that her ladyship's grandfather, and several of his friends, nearly lost their lives by pickled cucumbers;" and thence the doctor took occasion to relate several curious circumstances concerning the effects of different poisons.

Dr. Campbell, who plainly saw both the defects and the excellent qualities of his young ward hoped that by playful raillery, and by well-timed reasoning, he might mix a sufficient portion of good sense with Forester's enthusiasm; might induce him gradually to sympathize in the pleasures of cultivated society, and might convince him that virtue is not confined to any particular class of men; that education, in the enlarged sense of the word, creates the difference between individuals more than riches or poverty. Dr. Campbell foresaw that Forester would form a friendship with his son, and that this attachment would cure him of his prejudices against *gentlemen*, and would prevent him from indulging his taste for vulgar company. Henry Campbell had more useful energy; though less apparent enthusiasm than his new companion: he was always employed; he was really independent, because he had learned how to support himself either by the labours of his head or of his hands; but his independence did not render him unsociable; he was always ready to sympathize with the pleasures of his friends,

and therefore he was beloved: following his father's example, he did all the good in his power to those who were in distress; but he did not imagine, that he could reform every abuse in society or that he could instantly new-model the universe. Forester became, 5 in a few days, fond of conversing or rather of holding long arguments with Henry: but his dislike to the young laird, Archibald Mackenzie, hourly increased. Archibald and his mother, lady Catherine Mackenzie, were relations of Mrs. Campbell, and they were now upon a visit at her house. Lady Catherine, a shrewd 10 woman, fond of precedence, and fully sensible of the importance that wealth can bestow, had sedulously inculcated into the mind of her son all the maxims of wordly wisdom, which she had collected in her intercourse with society; she had inspired him with family pride, but at the same time had taught him to pay 15 obsequious court to his superiors in rank or fortune: the art of rising in the world, she knew, did not entirely depend upon virtue or ability; she was consequently more solicitous about her son's manners than his morals, and was more anxious that he should apply to the severe studies of a profession. Archibald was nearly 20 what might be expected from his education, alternately supple to his superiors, and insolent to his inferiors; to insinuate himself into the favour of young men of rank and fortune, he affected to admire extravagance; but his secret maxims of parsimony operated even in the midst of dissipation. Manners and pride usually go 25 together. It is not to be supposed, that young Forester had such quick penetration, that he could discover the whole of the artful Archibald's character in the course of a few day's acquaintance, but he disliked him for good reasons, because he was a laird, because he had laughed at his first entrée; and because he was 30 learning to dance.

(*Maria Edgeworth.*)

17. THE VALLEY OF DIAMONDS.

All the world knows that the island of Ceylon is celebrated for precious stones; indeed, there are writers who believe that Mount Ophir of the scripture is Adam's Peak of Ceylon. Be this 35 as it may, our ever-enterprising and active-minded admiral, Sir Samuel Hood, determined to bring this reputation to the proof; and, one day at dinner at the governor's table, actually announced his intention of having a hunt for the sapphires, rubies, tourmalines, chrysoberyls, corundums, and so on, for which the island 40 has been long celebrated. His excellency, with the suavity of a courteous host, smiled, and wished the admiral success. Her

excellency, the governor's lady, smiled too at this vain fancy of the admiral's, and exacted a promise of a ring set with the stones which the proposed expedition was to yield. Even the well-bred aides-de-camp and the knowing secretaries exchanged quizzical glances at the admiral's expense. The company at large scarcely 5 knew, as yet, whether to treat so queer a proposal as a joke or as a serious affair. Sir Samuel, however, was not a man to be quizzed out of his purposes; and he therefore begged to have a party of workmen sent to him next morning to accompany him to a river not far off, along the banks of which, he had somewhere 10 heard it reported, most of the finest stones in Ceylon had been found. He begged also that each of the men might be furnished with a basket, a request which naturally produced a second titter; for it was made in such a tone as led us to fancy the worthy admiral expected to collect the rubies and garnets in as great pro- 15 fusion as his far-famed predecessor, Sinbad the sailor, found them in the Valley of Diamonds.

His precise plan he kept to himself till he reached the river, the alluvial strip of ground bordering which was formed chiefly of fine gravel mixed with sand, leaves, and mud. He then desired the men 20 to fill their baskets, and to carry the whole mass, just as they picked it up, to one of the ship's boats, which he had directed to meet him at the landing-place. This cargo of dirt and rubbish, on its reaching the ship, was put into a large sack, and carefully stowed away, as the admiral's poulterer reported, and the whole ship's company 25 believed, for the benefit of the inhabitants of the hencoops — an idea not unnaturally conceived, for it is precisely with such gravel that fowls, as every one knows, are supplied at sea, as regularly as with food.

Not a word more was said on the subject at Government-house, 30 nor on board the ship, till a couple of days after we had left Columbo, when the admiral ordered the bag of gravel into his cabin, along with a great tub of water and half-a-dozen wash-deck buckets. The whole stuff collected on shore was now thoroughly cleaned, and when only the gravel remained, it was divided into a number 35 of small portions, and laid on plates and dishes on the table of the fore-cabin. As soon as all was arranged, the admiral, who superintended the operation, called out —

"Send for all the young gentlemen in the ship, and let every one take a plateful of gravel before him, to catch what jewels he can." 40

Before the party had time to assemble, the delighted admiral had himself discovered in his own dish three or four small garnets, one ruby, and several small crystals of corundum. By the aid of his young friends, to the astonishment of every one, a collection was soon made, which afterwards not only furnished the promised ring 45

to the governor's lady, but made half-a-dozen others of equal beauty and perfect purity of materials. These precious stones were certainly not of the largest dimensions; but for all that, the admiral, as he was wont in everything he attempted, completely established
 5 his point. (Captain Basil Hall.)

18. ACHATES DIGBY.

CHAPTER I.

It is not every man who is born to a good fortune that may be truly termed fortunate. A man's happiness consists, not only
 10 in the contentment of his own mind, but in the possession of friends whom he has the power to draw around him.

It has been my felicity to acquire one stanch, tried and unswerving friend; one who through life has never forsaken me. Yes, from my boyhood I may boast of having won the esteem of
 15 the amiable and every way accomplished Achates Digby.

Although possessed of good property in my own right, and the prospect of a handsome addition on the death of my maternal uncle and aunt, that confidence and self-esteem, which I have seen exhibited in others upon less ostensible pretensions, never
 20 formed a portion of my character. I was naturally of a shy temperament, and yearned for the support of others. Achates was the very prop I required, for all that I wanted, he possessed in an eminent degree. The gifts of fortune were not his, but his natural endowments were more than equivalent.

I shall never forget the first morning of my introduction to the scholastic establishment of Mr. B. at Clapham. My luggage was sent by the carrier, and I arrived per post in charge of a large plum-cake provided by my affectionate aunt. The morning school was just over, and all the boys were in the play-ground, whoo-
 30 ping, halloing, and gambolling about with a boisterousness that shook my nerves. I seemed like one just landed on an island of savages. I sat down at the foot of an old elm-tree, and taking out a large clasp-knife (we used to call it a "hack" at school), I was about to console my agitation with a slice of the cake, when, in
 35 a moment, the whole school surrounded me, laughing, giggling, and making remarks upon the "new boy". Without ceremony they clamoured for my cake, and I really began to fear that they would devour me into the bargain. I would willingly have purchased peace by the sacrifice of the whole of it, but I was wholly
 40 ignorant of any rule in "fractions" or "division" by which I could apportion the object of their desire so as to satisfy the cravings

of all; there was scarcely a plum a-piece, the applicants were so numerous.

At this uncomfortable juncture — I shall never forget the moment — a youth, two years my senior, stepped gallantly forward, and relieved me from my embarrassment. He drove away 5 the swarm of human "bluebottles" that buzzed about me, and approached me in the most friendly manner.

"Really," said he, "the conduct of these boys is most indecent." If the "dominie" was to learn the boisterous manner in which they have assailed you, there's not one of them but would get "horsed" 10 for his impudence. But we must not tell tales. They served me exactly in the same way when I first came among them, but I soon taught them a lesson which they have never forgotten. I picked out the biggest among them, and having thrashed him soundly, the rest of them took the hint." 15

"But I am not fond of fighting," I replied, "and am afraid I shall suffer."

"Not while Achates Digby is by," said the heroic and generous youth. "I'll take care that they shall not impose upon you."

I thanked him with tears in my eyes for the offer of his 20 protection.

There was a manliness both in his speech and in his manner that struck me even at that early period. I felt my heart glow with the most grateful sentiments for his disinterested offer, and his good-natured interference at once won my esteem. Seating 25 himself beside me, he offered to take charge of my cake, the object of his schoolfellow's indecorous cupidity, which I immediately consigned to his care. He then advised me to keep "myself to myself," or they would strip me with no more remorse than a band of brigands; and cutting a large slice as he spoke, he generously 30 presented it to me without evincing the least desire to touch it himself. But I was too much overcome by my harassed feelings to taste it, and Achates kindly ate it for me, and said that, with my permission, he would lock up the remainder in his own box; which proposition I gladly complied with, although, notwithstanding 35 his caution, those graceless boys found means to abstract it as he afterwards informed me, and indeed offered to challenge the whole school for the misdemeanor, if I desired it, but I preferred a little peace to the whole cake; and Achates declared that I was too generous, and was just that kind, forgiving disposition that the 40 world delights to impose upon; at the same time he praised me for my forbearance, and thought, after all, my calm judgment was superior to his neck-or-nothing courage, especially as we had no trace of the real delinquent.

This is, however, a digression. I will relate, as far as my 45

memory will serve the conversation which passed between us on the first introduction. I felt delighted with him, and he appeared to experience a similar attachment to me and mine!

"We heard of your coming," said he, "and the arrival of a new boy is always a subject of discussion among the fellows. Your name is Master Tibbs, I think?"

"It is," I replied; "but don't call me *Master* Tibbs any more — I hope we shall be cronies."

"Nothing will be more gratifying to me," said Achates, "than to be numbered among your friends. Let it be agreed, then, that henceforth I call you Tibbs, and you call me Digby."

"With all my heart," I cried, "that is, if you think your father and mother will not object to the familiarity?"

What delicacy!

"I have neither father nor mother, Digby."

"Indeed," he said, and appeared lost for a few moments in deep reflection, as if overcome with an inward feeling of sympathy for my orphan state.

"I am very — very sorry," he continued; "it was generally reported here that you had both, and that your father kept a carriage, and was a man of considerable property."

"He was, but my uncle is now my guardian, and he is so kind to me; indeed, my parents died when I was so young, that I never felt their loss."

"You are fortunate," said he, "really; — and — is your uncle liberal? Some of the boys here have lots of pocketmoney."

"I think there are few better off than I am, Digby," I replied, rather proud, I must confess, of being able to appear in this respect of some importance in the eyes of my new-found friend.

I thought he seemed gratified with this disclosure of my circumstances. In fact he was one of those generous souls who sympathize in, without envying, the prosperity of others. We passed the time in the most delightful and confiding conversation (for I told him everything) until the bell summoned us from the play-ground to dinner.

CHAPTER II.

What a change had an hour made in my situation! — a change which gave a complexion to the rest of my life.

He was a great favourite with all the masters, being a lad of considerable ability and readiness; as for the boys, I think they rather feared than loved him, for he controlled them completely.

For my own part, I felt quite secure and happy in his protection. He placed the greatest confidence in me, and I soon

discovered that he had a very small allowance of pocket-money; mine, however, was ample, and we entered into a partnership, using the same purse in common. I was not what is termed a "bright" boy, and should have endured much drudgery, had it not been for the friendly assistance of Achates. He invariably "looked 5 over" all my "sums" and exercises, and I esteemed him too much not to attend to his suggestions. He assisted me also in the composition of my letters to my dear uncle and aunt; and his name, coupled with the kindness I had received from his hands, was repeated in every epistle. The consequence was an invitation to 10 spend the holidays with me, which, at my earnest intercession, he accepted. My uncle and aunt were delighted with my new friend; and by his amiable manners he so ingratiated himself, that he became like one of the family. Indeed, he acknowledged that he found himself quite "at home." I thought that he felt impressed 15 by the superior manner in which we lived, for he candidly avowed that his father had sustained great losses, and was not, by any means, "well to do" in the world. In fact, he never went home in the holidays, an account of the travelling expenses.

Although two years older, he was not a bigger boy than my- 20 self, which he proved by putting on one of my suits (for I always possessed an extensive wardrobe), and it really looked as if it had been made for him; indeed so he said; and I laughed so heartily at seeing "myself beside myself," as it were, that he, who always took a pleasure in pleasing, frequently gratified me by wearing 25 my clothes.

His father's finances did not allow him to be very lavish in the equipment of his son; and therefore, whenever we were invited to a party at one of the boy's relatives in the neighbourhood, he invariably borrowed a dress, which led many people to mistake us 30 for brothers.

These were my early days, when I had only sipped sparingly at the fountain of wisdom. That friendship, however, which had begun so young, "grew with our growth," and upon quitting the school for the benefit of private masters, I petitioned my indulgent 35 relatives to allow me the companionship of my devoted friend, and my prayer was granted; although I must do my dear Achates the justice to state, that it was to the eloquent appeals which *he penned for me*, that I was mainly indebted for the pleasure of his society. I was too secure of his disinterested friendship to 40 be jealous; and I well knew that the unremitting attentions he paid my uncle and aunt, were solely induced by his unalterable esteem for me.

Although I had little or no desire for the more boisterous exercises of youth, being naturally of a quiet and retired dis- 45

position, I accidentally discovered that Achates was fond of riding; for, as we were one day rambling together, on the high-road, a horseman galloped past us on a beautiful long-tailed Arabian.

“What a noble creature!” exclaimed Achates; “how proudly he
5 arches his glossy neck; and how beautifully he bounds along, as if his slender legs disdained the contact of the earth!”

The enthusiastic language of Achates invariably quickened the somewhat sluggish strain of my thoughts; this poetical burst of his excited my attention, and compelled me to observe, with
10 curiosity, what he admired so much. The horse was the theme of our conversation during the rest of our walk; and he really so inspired me with his feelings on the subject, that I, who had never crossed even a rocking-horse, felt desirous of “reining in a barb,” as he beautifully expressed it.

“By-the-bye, Tibbs,” said he, “I wonder you haven’t a horse; I’m sure your fortune is ample enough to keep even two without any apprehensions of being deemed extravagant. All the “faculty,” you know, are great advocates for the exercise as a promoter of health, and I am positive you would find it a very palatable
20 medicine at any rate.”

“My dear Digby,” said I, laughing, “I really don’t believe I could manage a donkey. Did *you* ever try?”

“What?”

“To manage a donkey,” continued I, laughing.

“Ay, that I have,” replied he, joining heartily in the laugh; “and succeeded too!”

We conversed a great deal more on the same topic; for where my health was concerned I always found him deeply interested. I had, however, another crotchet in my head, of which I was
30 certain he had no idea; and after deliberating on the best manner of carrying my project into effect, and surprising my kind Achates, I sought my uncle and spoke to him on the subject of the horse, in which he immediately acquiesced; and having gained this point, I argued that the *cost* and not the *keep* of a horse was a consi-
35 deration, and that as I could not ride alone I would purchase a pony for Achates out of my first quarter, if my uncle would give it stableroom; and added many cogent arguments which, in canvassing over the affair with my clever friend, he had inadvertently “thrown out,” and by which I profited. The horses were purchased,
40 and I had to thank Achates for a new pleasure.

I shall pass over the melancholy loss of my uncle and aunt, merely mentioning the kind attentions and solace which I received from my kind-hearted, sympathizing friend, to whom both my relatives had bequeathed a slight *memento* of their esteem. The
45 bulk of their property and estates, however, devolved upon me by

right. Achates and I had now the world before us, and with such a friend I had little to apprehend in the voyage of life.

A few months afterwards Achates, who kindly undertook the office of steward and general manager of my affairs — for I had a mortal aversion to business — had several conferences with 5 Mr. Mullins, a very respectable tenant with a large family and a small income, respecting a lease of the premises which he held upon my estate. And I must do Achates the honour to state, that he was very popular among all my tenantry; for at his suggestion I reduced the rents of all, and granted new leases upon the most 10 favourable terms. This is another trait in his amiable character, which speaks volumes; and it was gratifying to me to witness the fruits of his generosity which daily poured in from all quarters in the shape of substantial presents, which he was reluctantly compelled to accept, for fear, as he said, he should offend the feelings of the 15 donors. There never was such a man under the sun as Achates Digby. But I am carried away by the intensity of my feelings.

Soon after his visits to the house of my tenant, I had the pleasure of leading to the altar the lovely and accomplished daughter 20 of Mr. Mullins.

Being now what in wordly phrase is termed "settled", Achates delicately intimated a wish to leave me to the enjoyment of domestic comfort, but at the same time placed his own position in such a melancholy light, that he actually brought tears into my eyes. Indeed, I had enjoyed his society and friendship so long, that I could not 25 dispense with him. My amiable consort, too, joined with me in soliciting his stay. He acceded, and the partial clouds which, in the anticipation of such a loss, had obscured my happiness, passed away, and I again enjoyed a perfect and enviable serenity. In fine, I may deem myself one of the luckiest of men. I possess an ample 30 fortune, one of the loveliest women in the county for a partner, obedient children, and, above all, a most attached friend. (*Alfred Crowquill.*)

19. THE WAY I MADE MY FORTUNE.

Three of us were sitting in a small room, and complaining of the hardships of our destiny. 35

"Without money one can do nothing," said George; "were I to hit upon a speculation that would have done honour to a Rothschild; coming from a pauper like myself, no one would think it worth attending to."

"I," said Albert, "have actually finished a work which would 40 establish my reputation as an author, if I could only find a book-seller to buy it."

"I have petitioned my employer for an increase of salary," I exclaimed, anxious to contribute to the chorus of lamentation; "and he told me that for forty louis a year he could get more clerks than he wanted."

5 "It would not so much matter," said George, thoughtfully, "if, besides being poor, we did not seem poor. Could one of us only be thought rich —"

"What is the use of the shadow without the substance?" I asked.

10 "Of every use," said Albert. "I agree with George — the shadow sometimes makes the substance. The next best thing to capital is credit."

"Especially," returned George, "the credit of having a good fortune. Have none of us a rich uncle in India?"

15 "A cousin of mine went to Jamaica or Martinique, I forget which," I said, innocently, "and he never came back."

"Capital! that is all one requires," exclaimed George; "we will conjure up this cousin of yours—or could we not kill him? Yes; James Méran, of Martinique, deceased, leaving a sugar plantation,
20 a hundred negroes, and a fortune of hundred thousand louis, to his well beloved cousin, Louis Méran."

We laughed at the joke, and I thought no more of it; but George and Albert — slightly excited by the fumes of a bowl of punch which I had sent for to do honour to the testator—lost no
25 time in concocting and afterwards publishing a full account, in the local newspaper, of the fortune that had been left me.

The next day, sundry friends dropped in to compliment me. Of course, I endeavoured to undeceive them, but they would not take a denial. In vain I assured them it was a hoax; it was of
30 no use. Several people remembered my cousin James very well, and had seen him at Nantes before he embarked in 1789. Among others came my tailor, to whom I owed a small sum which it was not quite convenient for me to pay at that moment. No doubt the rumour of my cousin's decease had sharpened his memory. I wished
35 my two friends at a place that shall be nameless.

"Good morning, Mr. Mayer; I suppose you are come for those fifty francs?"

"I hope, sir, you don't think I came for such a trifle as that. No, sir; I came to take your orders for a suit of mourning."

40 "A suit of mourning?"

"Yes, sir; cousin's mourning. Dark bronze frock, for morning wear, black trousers and waistcoat."

"At the present moment, Mr. Mayer —"

"I hope, sir, I have done nothing to forfeit your patronage?"

45 "But, I repeat, I have received no money at all."

"I hope, sir, you won't mention such a thing; there is no sort of hurry," exclaimed the tailor; who busily employed himself in taking my measure with slips of paper.

After all, my wardrobe did want some additions, and I said nothing more. 5

"My dear sir," said the next visitor, "I have a very great favour to request of you. Buy my house. You are very rich; you must be on the look-out for safe and lucrative investments. Sixty thousand francs are nothing for you—a mere fraction of your income. With me the case is different. I thought Mr. Felix had 10 made up his mind to purchase the premises, and now I hear he has changed his intention. What is to become of me? I have heavy demands to meet, and I don't know where the money is to come from."

"I, buy your house? Why, it would be madness to think of 15 such a thing."

"Madness? no such thing; you could not find a better investment anywhere. In two years, with trifling repairs, it will be worth double its present value; you will never see such a good opportunity again. Say 'done,' and I'm off." 20

And he was off, without leaving me time to put in a word.

Two hours after, in walked Mr. Felix, evidently not in the best of tempers.

"Really, sir," he began, "you have taken me quite by surprise. That house is indispensable to me; I reckoned on it as if 25 it were mine, and only offered fifty thousand francs because the owner is embarrassed, and I felt sure that he would be obliged to take them. With you, sir, the case is different; so I come to ask if you will let me have it for seventy-five thousand francs."

Fifteen thousand francs, dropping all at once into the lap of 30 a poor fellow who had to work hard to gain eight hundred francs in a year! I could hardly believe my ears.

"I cannot give you an answer just now, sir," I said; "but if you will take the trouble to call again at five, I'll see what I can do." 35

At a quarter to five Mr. Felix made his appearance. I spoke to him with candour:—

"I should tell you, sir, that I had no thoughts of buying the house, till the owner prevailed on me to do so. You say you want the house; any other will suit me equally as well, so I ac- 40 cede to your terms."

"You shall have a draft on Paris for the amount in a fortnight," replied Mr. Felix, who bowed and withdrew, apparently enchanted with my way of doing business.

A draft upon Paris! The circumstance appeared so unusual 45

to me that I thought I ought to send it to Paris to get it cashed. I wrote accordingly to Messrs. Flanges and Bergeret, the only firm I knew there. I was in the habit of receiving through them the interest of a small sum, that had been left me by an uncle.
 5 I informed them, that, having funds at my disposal, I wished for information as to the best mode of investing them. The signification of the word "funds" varies very much according to the name and position in life of the speaker. The rumour of my legacy had reached Paris; so that when I spoke of "funds," it was evident
 10 I meant a considerable sum. This was proved by the following letter:

"Sir,—We are in receipt of your esteemed favour of the 17th current, which reached us just after the conclusion of the last loan negotiated by the Cortes, in which our firm has an interest. Desirous that our friends should have an opportunity of participating
 15 in an investment which we consider profitable, we have taken the liberty of placing twenty thousand piastres to your credit. Should that amount appear too considerable, the rise of those securities admits of your selling out at a premium.

20 "We remain, Sir,

"Yours to command,

"FLANGES AND CO."

To this was added a postscript written by the head of the firm:

"We have heard with pleasure of the recent good-fortune that
 25 has fallen to the lot of our old friend and correspondent, and beg to offer him our services, as occasion may require."

Twenty thousand piastres! I let the letter fall in sheer amazement. What would have been my astonishment, if, more conversant with terms of commerce and more attentive to the enclosed
 30 account current, I had seen that what I took for the principal, was only the yearly interest? I lost no time in writing to my correspondents to inform them that the sum was much too large.—
 "I have received no money," I said, "from Martinique, and it would be impossible for me to meet my engagements."

35 An answer came by return of post.

"We learn, with regret, that you have misgivings with regard to the Spanish loan. According to your orders, we have sold out half the stock assigned to you, which brings you in already a neat profit of eighty thousand francs. With regard to your property at
 40 Martinique, we are too well acquainted with the delays which bequests at such a distance must necessarily involve, to think for a moment that you can be immediately put in possession of your

inheritance; but your simple signature will suffice to procure you all the money you may require in the meantime. We take the liberty of reminding you of the advantage of making timely investments; lest, when the legal arrangements are ended, you should find difficulty in getting good interest for so large a capital. With the hope that you may entertain a better opinion of German securities than you do of Spanish, we hand you a prospectus for establishing a bank at Grönnigen. You will please to observe, Sir, that no deposit is required, and that, as calls are only made at long intervals, it will be easy for you to sell your shares, should you change your mind, without your having occasion to make any payment. We have placed fifty to your credit, and have the honour to remain," &c.

Eighty thousand francs! The amount was a perfect mystery to me; no doubt the clerk had made some mistake in the figures. My position was becoming embarrassing. Congratulations poured in from all quarters; especially when I made my appearance in black from head to foot. The *Journal de Goubmouges* thought it right to publish a biographical sketch of my cousin, and the editor wrote to me asking for further particulars. Ladies connected with all sorts of societies, begged that my name might be added to their list of subscribers, and the money that I had to pay for postages was something alarming. To escape from his avalanche of inquiries, I hastily departed for Paris. Directly I got there, I called on my bankers, by whom I was received as heirs to a large property generally are.

"Sorry that you have such a poor opinion of the Spanish stock," said Monsieur Bergeret; "there has been a great rise; however, we only sold out half your parcel."

"Would you have the goodness to let me know what the present value of the remainder might be?" I replied.

"Certainly, sir; ten thousand piastres stock at seventy (the piastre being at five francs, thirty-five centimes) the sum already paid being—If you sell out to-day you will, with the proceeds of last sale, have from two hundred and ten thousand to two hundred and twenty thousand francs."

"Very well. You said something about a German bank, I think?"

"Yes; the Government made some difficulty about granting a charter; but it is all settled now, and the promised shares have risen considerably."

"Can I sell out?"

"Certainly; you have fifty, at four hundred and fifty florins profit: that will bring you in about sixty thousand francs."

"Without any calls to pay?"

"None whatever."

"That seems strange; but you are no doubt informed. I should like to find a secure investment for those sums; would you have
5 the goodness to tell me what would be the best?"

"You cannot have anything better than our own five per cents. I know of nothing more secure; at the present price of that stock, you get six per cent. for your money. I can easily understand that you should be worried by such trifling details as these: you
10 will soon have more considerable sums to look after."

"Then, if I invest the combined produce of the German and Spanish stocks in the five per cents., what should I get a year?"

"Let me see. Three hundred thousand francs—funds at eighty—eighteen—twenty—yes, twenty thousand francs a year."

15 "Ah! twenty thousand francs a year! And when can the investment be made?"

"To-morrow morning; that is, if you will allow our firm to conduct the transaction."

20 "Certainly; in whom could my confidence be better placed?"
The banker made a polite bow.

"And now," I continued, "I should feel obliged if you would have the goodness to advance me a few louis, as I am rather short of cash."

25 "My dear sir, all the cash I possess is at your service. How much do you want—two hundred?—four hundred?"

"Thank you, fifty will be quite sufficient."

"May I hope," added the banker, when I rose to take leave, "that our firm may be favoured with the continuance of your patronage?"

30 "Certainly," I replied.

There are few moments of my life on which I look back with more satisfaction than on those occupied in my interview with M. Bergeret. I doubt if I should have believed in the twenty thousand francs a-year, if it had not been for the fifty napoleons.

35 In the meantime, my two friends were shocked at the success of their story, and were not a little alarmed at my sudden journey to Paris; which was attributed by others to legal business. George and Albert then began to fear that I really believed in the authenticity of the invention they had concocted.

40 Three days after my return, they came to see me with long faces. "My dear Louis," said George, "you know your cousin is not dead?"

"I cannot be sure of that," I replied, "for I am by no means convinced of his existence."

45 "Well; but you know that this inheritance is only a hoax?"

"To tell you the truth, I think we are the only people who are of that opinion."

"We have been very wrong to originate such a foolish invention; for which we are sincerely sorry."

"On the contrary, I am much obliged to you." 5

"But it is our duty to contradict it, and to confess how foolish we have been."

Truth cannot remain long concealed; people began to wonder that no news came from Martinique; the wise and prudent shook their heads ominously when my name was mentioned. 10

"The most ludicrous feature in the case is," said one, "that he has ended by believing in the truth of his own invention. For my part, I must say that I was always rather sceptical about that inheritance."

"And I also," said M. Felix, "though it has cost me fifteen thousand francs." 15

On seeing a dozen letters on my table one morning, I guessed that the bubble had burst. Their contents were much alike; for instance —

"Mr. Mayer's respects to Mr. Méran, and having heavy payments to meet, will feel obliged by a cheque for the amount of the enclosed." 20

My replies disarmed all doubts of my perfect solvency.

"Mr. Méran thanks Mr. Mayer for having *at last* sent in his account, and encloses a cheque for the amount."

My cool and unconcerned demeanour kept curiosity alive for 25 a few days longer.

"What a lucky fellow!" said one.

"Luck has nothing to do with it," rejoined another; "he has played his cards well, and has won."

Once or twice, I confess, I felt compunction of conscience; 30 but a moment's reflection convinced me that my own exertions had no share in my good fortune, and that I owed it all to a universal public worship of the Golden Calf, and to the truth of Albert's axiom, "the next best thing to capital is credit."

(Household Words.) 35

20. THE ONE BLACK SPOT.

CHAPTER I.

On the evening of a cold, bleak March day, in an early year of this century, a woman, scantily clad, led a boy about eight years old along the high-road towards the old city of Exeter. They crept 40 close to the hedgeside to shelter themselves from the clouds of dust which the sudden gusts of east wind blew in their faces.

They had walked many miles, and the boy limped painfully. He often looked up anxiously into his mother's face, and asked if they had much farther to go? She scarcely appeared to notice his inquiries; her fixed eyes and sunken cheek gave evidence that
5 sorrow absorbed all her thoughts. When he spoke, she drew him closer to her side, but made no reply; until, at length, the child, wondering at her silence, began to sob. She stopped and looked at her child, for a moment, her eyes filled with tears. They had gained the top of a hill, from which was visible in the distance
10 the dark massive towers of the cathedral and the church spires of the city; she pointed them out, and said, "We shall soon be there, Ned." Then, sitting down on a tree that was felled by the roadside, she took "Ned" on her lap, and, bending over him, wept aloud.

15 "Are you very tired, mother?" said the boy, trying to comfort her. "'Tis a long way — but don't cry — we shall see father when we come there."

"Yes—you will see your father once more."

She checked herself; and, striving to dry her tears, sat looking
20 wistfully towards the place of their destination.

The tramp of horses, coming up the hill they had just ascended, drew the boy's attention to that direction. In a moment he had sprung from his mother, and was shouting, with child-like delight, at the appearance of a gay cavalcade which approached.
25 About thirty men on horseback, in crimson liveries, surrounded two carriages, one of which contained two of His Majesty's Judges, accompanied by the High-Sheriff of the county; who, with his javelin men, was conducting them to the city, in which the Lent Assizes were about to be held.

30 The woman knelt until the carriages and the gaudy javelin men had turned the corner at the foot of a hill, and were no longer visible; with her hands clasped together, she had prayed God to temper with mercy the heart of the Judge, before whom her unfortunate husband, now in gaol, would have to stand his trial.
35 Then, taking the boy again by the hand—unable to explain to him what he had seen—she pursued her way with him, silently, along the dusty road.

As they drew nearer to the city, they overtook various groups of stragglers; who had deemed it their duty, in spite of the inclement
40 weather, to wander some miles out of the city to catch an early glimpse of "My Lord Judge," and the gay Sheriffs' officers. Troops, also, of itinerant ballad-singers, rope-dancers, mountebanks, and caravans of wild beasts, still followed the Judges, as they had done throughout the circuit. "Walk more slowly, Ned," said the mother,
45 checking the boy's desire to follow the "shows." "I am very tired;

let us rest a little here." They lingered until the crowd was far ahead of them—and were left alone on the road.

Late in the evening, as the last stragglers were returning home, the wayfarers found themselves in the suburbs of the city, and the forlorn woman looked round anxiously for a lodging. She feared 5 the noisy people in the streets; and, turning timidly towards an old citizen who stood by his garden-gate chatting to his housekeeper, and watching the passers-by — there was a kindness in his look which gave her confidence — so, with a homely courtesy, she ventured to inquire of him where she might find a decent 10 resting-place.

"Have you never been here before?" he asked.

"Never but once, sir, when I was a child, many years ago."

"What part of the country do you come from?"

"Uffculme?"

15

"Uffculme? How did you get here?"

"We have walked."

"You don't say that you have trudged all the way with that youngster?"

The housekeeper drowned the reply by loudly announcing to 20 the old gentleman that his supper was waiting; "We have no lodgings, my good woman," she said, turning away from the gate.

"Stop, Martha, stop," said the citizen; "can't we direct them somewhere? you see they are strangers. I wonder where they could get a lodging?"

25

"I am sure I don't know," replied Martha, peevishly; "your supper will be cold—come in!"

"We've had no supper," said the boy.

"Poor little fellow!" said the old gentleman; "then I am sure you shall not go without. Martha, the bread and cheese!" And, 30 opening the garden gate, he made the travellers enter and sit down in the summer-house, whilst he went to fetch them a draught of cider.

In spite of Martha's grumbling, he managed to get a substantial repast; but it grieved him that the woman, though she 35 thanked him very gratefully and humbly, appeared unable to eat.

"Your boy eats heartily," said he, "but I am afraid you don't enjoy it."

With a choking utterance she thanked him, but could not eat.

The good old man was striving, as well as he could, to explain to them their way to a part of the city, where they might find a lodging, when the garden-gate opened, and a young man gave to the host a hearty greeting.

At the sound of his voice, the cup the woman held in her hand fell to the ground. This drew the youth's attention to her; he 45

looked earnestly at her for a moment, and, with an exclamation of surprise, said, "Why, this is Susan Harvey!"

The woman hid her face in her hands, and moaned.

"Do you know her, then, Alfred?" said the uncle.

5 "She nursed me when I was a little sickly boy," replied the youth; she lived many years in my father's house."

"Then I am sure you will take her to some lodging to-night, for she is quite a stranger here. There is Martha calling to me again; she is not in the best temper to-night, so I had better go
10 in, and I leave them to your care."

"Oh! tell me, Mr. Gray, have you seen him?" cried the woman eagerly.

"I have been with him to-day, Susan," said Gray; kindly taking her hand; "do not be cast down; all that can be done for Martin,
15 shall be done. Let me take you where you can rest to-night, and to-morrow you can be with him."

The weary little boy had fallen asleep on the seat; the mother strove to arouse him, but Alfred Gray prevented her, by taking the little fellow in his arms. He carried him by her side through
20 the streets; she could utter no words of gratitude, but her tears flowed fast, and told how the young man's sympathy had fallen like balm upon her wounded heart. "God has taken pity on me," she said, when they parted.

CHAPTER II.

25 With a quick step Alfred regained his uncle's cottage; he had a difficult task to accomplish. Martin Harvey, now awaiting his trial for poaching, and for being concerned in an affray with Sir George Roberts' gamekeepers, had once been his father's apprentice. Young Gray had been endeavouring to procure for him all the
30 legal help which the laws then allowed; but his own means were limited, and, when he met Susan and her boy in the garden, he had come to visit his uncle to ask his assistance. He had now returned on the same errand. He pleaded earnestly, and with caution, but was repulsed. It was in vain he urged the poverty of agri-
35 cultural labourers at that season, and the temptation which an abundance of game afforded to half-starved men and their wretched families.

"Nonsense, Alfred!" said old Mr. Gray. "I would not grudge you the money if you did not want it for a bad purpose. You must
40 not excuse men who go out with guns and fire at their fellow-creatures in the dark."

"Martin did not fire, uncle — that is what I want to prove, and save him, if I can, from transportation. He has a wife and child."

"Wife and child," repeated the old man thoughtfully. "You did not tell me he had a wife and child; that poor woman came from Uffculme."

"Providence must have guided her," said the younger Gray. "It was indeed Harvey's wife and son whom you so lately relieved." 5

"You shall have the money. I have all through life prayed that my heart may not be hardened; and I find, old as I am, that, every day I have fresh lessons to learn."

The next morning, while Alfred held anxious consultation with the lawyers, the wife and husband met within the prison walls. 10 They sat together in silence, for neither could speak a word of hope. The boy never forgot that long and dreary day, during which he watched, with wondering thoughts, the sad faces of his ruined parents.

The Crown Court at the Castle was next morning crowded to 15 overflowing. Among the struggling crowd that vainly sought to gain admission, was Martin Harvey's wife. She was rudely repulsed by the door-keepers, who "wondered what women wanted in such places." She still strove to keep her ground, and watched with piteous looks the doors of the court. She braved the heat and 20 pressure for some time; but a sickly faintness at length came over her. She was endeavouring to retreat into the open air, when she felt some one touch her shoulder, and turning, saw Alfred Gray making his way toward her. After a moments pause in the cool air, he led her round to a side door, through which there was a 25 private entrance into the court. He whispered a word to an officer, who admitted them, and pointed to a seat behind the dock, where they were screened from observation, and where the woman could see her husband standing between his two fellow-prisoners.

The prisoners were listening anxiously to the evidence which 30 the principal game-keeper was offering against them. The first, a man about sixty, excited greater interest than the others. He earnestly attended to what was going on, but gave no sign of fear, as to the result. Brushing back his grey locks, he gazed round the court, with something like a smile. This man's life had been 35 a strange one. Early in his career he had been ejected from a farm which he had held under the father of the present prosecutor, Sir George Roberts; he soon after lost what little property had been left him, and, in despair, enlisted—was sent abroad with his regiment—and for many years shared in the toils and achieve- 40 ments of our East Indian warfare. Returning home on a small pension, he fixed his abode in his native village, and sought to indulge his old enmity against the family that had injured him, by every kind of annoyance in his power. The present baronet, a narrow-minded tyrannical man, afforded by his unpopularity good 45

opportunity to old Ralph Somers to induce others to join him in his schemes of mischief and revenge. "The game," which was plentiful on the estate, and the preservation of which was Sir George's chief delight, formed the principal object of attack; the poverty of the labourers tempted them to follow the old soldier, who managed affairs so warily, that for nine years he had been an object of the utmost terror and hatred to Sir George and his keepers, whilst all their efforts to detect and capture him had, until now, been fruitless.

10 Martin Harvey, who stood by his side with his shattered arm in a sling, bore marks of acute mental suffering and remorse; but his countenance was stamped with its original, open, manly expression—a face often to be seen among a group of English farm labourers, expressive of a warm heart, full of both courage and
15 kindness.

The evidence was soon given. The gamekeepers, on the night of the 24th of February, were apprised that poachers were in the plantations. Taking with them a stronger force than usual, all well armed, they discovered the objects of their search, in a lane leading out into the fields, and shouted to them to surrender. They
20 distinctly saw their figures flying before them, and when they approached them, one of the fugitives turned round and fired, wounding one of the keeper's legs with a quantity of small shot. The keeper immediately fired in return, and brought down a poacher; old Ralph's
25 voice was heard shouting to them to desist, and upon coming up they found him standing by the side of Martin Harvey, who had fallen severely wounded. Three guns lay by them, one of which had been discharged, but no one could swear who had fired it; search was made all night for the other man, but without success.

30 When the prisoners were called on for their defence, they looked at one another for a moment as if neither wished to speak first. Ralph, however, began. He had little to say. Casting a look of defiance at Sir George and his lady, who sat in a side gallery above the court, he freely confessed that hatred to the
35 man who had injured him in his youth, and who had treated him with harshness on his return from abroad, had been the motive of his encouraging and aiding in these midnight depredations; he expressed sorrow for having occasioned trouble to his neighbour Harvey. — "What I can say will be of little use to me here," said
40 Martin Harvey, in a hollow voice: "I am ruined beyond redress; but I was a very poor man when I first joined, with others, in snaring game; I often wanted bread, and saw my wife and child pinched for food also. The rich people say game belongs to them; but — well — all I can say more is, that I take God to witness I
45 never lifted a murderous gun against my fellow man; he who did

it has escaped; and I have suffered this broken limb—but that I don't mind—I have worse than that to bear—I have broken my wife's heart, and my child will be left an orphan."

His voice failed. There was an uneasy movement among the audience; and a lady, who had been leaning over the rails of the side gallery listening with deep attention, fainted, and was carried out of court. The prisoner's pale wife, who had bowed her head behind him in silent endurance, heard a whisper among the bystanders that it was Lady Roberts, and a hope entered her mind that the lady's tender heart might feel for them. 10

"Have you any witnesses to call?" asked the Judge.

Martin looked round with a vacant gaze; the attorney whispered to him, and beckoned to Alfred Gray.

Alfred went into the witness-box, and told of the honesty, sobriety, and good conduct of Martin Harvey, during all the years he was in his father's house—"He was there before I was born," said the young man, "and only left when I was obliged to leave also, sixteen years after. A better man never broke bread—he was beloved by every body who knew him. Till now, his character was never tainted. It's the *one black spot*." 20

The Judge commenced summing up; it was evident to all who had paid attention to the evidence, that the conviction of two of the prisoners was certain. Alfred Gray knew this, and strove to induce the wife to leave with him before the fatal close of proceedings; but she shook her head and would not go. "I shall have strength to bear it," she said. 25

He sat down by her side, and heard the fearful verdict of "guilty" pronounced against her husband and Ralph Somers; and then the dreaded doom of transportation for life awarded to them. As they turned to leave the dock, Martin looked down upon the crushed and broken-hearted being whom he had sworn to protect and cherish through life, and in spite of every effort to repress it, a cry of agony burst from his lips; it was answered by a fainter sound, and Alfred Gray lifted the helpless, lifeless woman from the ground, and carried her into the open air. 35

CHAPTER III.

Months passed; and on the day when the convict ship, with its freight of heavy hearts, began its silent course over the great waters, the widowed wife took her fatherless child by the hand, and again traversed the weary road which led them to their desolated home. 40

The kindness of the Grays had supplied a few immediate necessities. Some one had told her of women having, by the aid of friends, managed to meet their husbands once more in those

distant parts of the earth; and this knowledge, once in her agitated mind, raised a hope which inspired her to pursue her daily task without fainting, and to watch an opportunity of making an attempt which she had meditated, even during that dreadful day of Martin's
5 trial. She resolved to seek admission into Sir George Roberts' mansion, and appeal to the pity of his wife. It was told in the village that Lady Roberts had implored her husband to interpose in behalf of the men; that his angry and passionate refusal had caused a breach between them; that they had lived unhappily ever
10 since; that he had strictly forbidden any one to mention the subject, or to convey to Lady Roberts any remarks that were made in the neighbourhood.

Susan Harvey trembled when she entered the mansion, and timidly asked leave to speak to Lady Roberts.

15 The servant she addressed had known her husband, and pitied her distress; and, fearing lest Sir George might pass, he led her into his pantry, watching an opportunity to let the lady know of her being there.

After a time, Lady Robert's maid came, and beckoned her to
20 follow up-stairs. In a few moments the soft voice of the lady of the mansion was cheering her with kind words, and encouraging her to disclose her wishes.

Before she had concluded, a step was heard without, at which the lady started and turned pale. Before there was time for retreat
25 Sir George hastily entered the apartment.

"Who have you here, Lady Roberts?"

"One who has a request to make, I believe," said the lady, mildly.
"I wish a few moments with her."

"Have the goodness to walk out of this house," said the baronet
30 to Susan. "Lady Roberts, I know this woman, and I will not allow you to harbour such people here."

Although the convict's wife never again ventured into that house, her wants, and those of her child, were, during three years, ministered to by the secret agency of the Good Heart that lived
35 so sadly there; and when, at the expiration of that period, Lady Roberts died, a trusty messenger brought to the cottage a little legacy; sufficient, if ever news came of Martin, to enable the wife and child, from whom he was separated, to make their way across the earth, and to meet him again.

40 But, during those weary years no tidings of his fate had reached either his wife or Alfred Gray—to whom he had promised to write when he reached his destination. Another year dragged its slow course over the home of affliction, and poor Susan's hopes grew fainter day by day. Her sinking frame gave evidence of the
45 sickness that cometh from the heart.

One summer evening, however, in the next year, Alfred Gray entered his uncle's garden with a letter, and was soon seated in the summer-house reading it aloud to his uncle and Martha. Tears stood in the old man's eyes, as some touching detail of suffering or privation was related. And, indeed, the letter told of little beside. 5 It was from Martin. Soon after his arrival in the settlement, Martin had written to Alfred, but the letter had never reached England—not an unusual occurrence in those times. After waiting long, and getting no reply, he was driven by harsh treatment, and the degradation attending the life he led, to attempt, with old Ralph, an 10 escape from the settlement. In simple language, he recorded the dreary life they led in the woods; how, after a time, old Ralph sickened and died; and how, in a desolate place, where the footsteps of man had, perhaps, never trod before, Martin Harvey had dug a grave, and buried his old companion. After that, unable to 15 endure the terrible solitude, he had sought his way back to his former master, and had been treated more harshly than before. Fever and disease had wasted his frame, until he had prayed that he might die and be at rest; but God had been merciful to him, and had inclined the heart of one for whom he laboured, who 20 listened with compassion to his story, took him under his roof, and restored him to health. And now, Martin had obtained a ticket of leave, and served this kind master for wages, which he was carefully hoarding to send to Alfred Gray, as soon as he should hear from him that those he loved were still preserved, and would 25 come and embrace him once more in that distant land.

"They shall go at once, Alfred," said old Mr. Gray, the moment the last sentence was read; "they shall not wait; we will provide the means,—hey, Martha?"

He did not now fear to appeal to his companion. Martha had 30 grown kinder of late, and she confessed she had learned of her cousin what gives most comfort to those who are drawing near their journey's end. "I can help them a little," she said.

"We will all help a little," Alfred replied. "I shall be off at break of day to-morrow, on neighbour Collin's pony, and shall give 35 him no rest until he sets me down at Uffculme."

Accordingly, early next morning, Alfred Gray was riding briskly along through the pleasant green lanes which led toward his native village. It was the middle of June, bright, warm, sunny weather; and the young man's spirits were unusually gay, everything around 40 him tending to heighten the delight which the good news he carried had inspired him with. The pony stepped out bravely, and was only checked when Alfred came in sight of the dear old home of his childhood, and heard the well-known chimes calling the villagers to their morning service, for it was Sunday. Then 45

for a few moments the young man proceeded more slowly, and his countenance wore a more saddened look, as the blessed recollections of early loves and affections, with which the scene was associated in his mind, claimed their power over all other thoughts.
5 The voice of an old friend from an apple orchard hard by, recalled him from his reveries.

He shook hands through the hedge. "I will come and see you in the evening, Fred. I must hasten on now. She will go to church this morning, and I must go with her."

10 "Who?" asked the other.

Alfred pointed to the cottage where Susan Harvey dwelt. "I bring her good news—I have a letter. Martin is living and well."

The friend shook his head.

Alfred dismounted, and walked towards Susan Harvey's cottage. The door was closed, and when he looked through the
15 window he could see no one inside. He lifted the latch softly, and entered. There was no one there; but his entrance had been heard, and a moment after, a fine stout lad came out of the inner chamber, took Alfred's proffered hand, and in answer to his inquiries,
20 burst into tears.

"She says she cannot live long, sir; but she told me last night, that before she died, you would come and tell us news of father. She has been saying all the past week that we should hear from him soon."

25 Whilst the boy spoke, Alfred heard a weak voice, calling his name from the inner room.

"Go in," he said, "and tell her I am here."

The boy did so, and then beckoned him to enter.

Susan's submissive features were but little changed, from the
30 time when her husband was taken from her; but the weak and wasted form that strove to raise itself in vain, as Alfred approached the bed-side, too plainly revealed that the struggle was drawing to a close—that the time of rest was at hand.

"Thank God, you are come," she said; "you have heard from
35 him? Tell me quickly, for my time is short."

"I come to tell you good news, Susan. You may yet be restored to him."

"I shall not see Martin in this world again, Mr. Gray; but I shall close my eyes in peace. If you know where he is, and can
40 tell me that my boy shall go, and be with him, and tell him how, through these long weary years, we loved him, and thought of him, and prayed for him—" Here she broke off, and beckoned the boy to her. She held his hands within her own, whilst Alfred Gray read from the letter all that would comfort her.

45 When he had done, she said, "God will bless you: you have

been very good to us in our misery. Now, will you promise me one thing more? Will you send my boy to his father, when I am gone?"

The promise was made, and the boy knelt long by her bedside, listening to the words of love and consolation which, with her latest breath, she uttered for the sake of him who, she hoped, 5 would hear them again from his child's lips.

Nearly forty years have passed since they laid her among the graves of the humble villagers of Uffculme. Few remain now who remember her story or her name; but, on the other side of the world, amid scenery all unlike to that in which she dwelt, there 10 stands a cheerful settler's home, and under the shadow of tall acacia trees which surround the little garden in which some few English flowers are blooming, there are sitting, in the cool of the summer evening, a group, whose faces are all of the Anglo-Saxon mould. A happy-looking couple, in the prime of life, are there, with children 15 playing around them; and one little gentle girl, they call Susan, is sitting on the knee of an aged white-haired man, looking lovingly into his face, and wondering why his eye so watches the setting sun every night, as it sinks behind the blue waters in the distance. Two tall handsome lads, with guns on their shoulders, enter the 20 garden and hasten to show the old man the fruits of their day's exploits.

"We have been lucky to-day, grandfather," says the younger; "but Alfred says these birds are not like the birds in Old England."

"You should hear the sailors talk about the game in England, Martin," replies the brother. "Grandfather has told us all about 25 England, except the 'birds.' He thinks we should run away if he were to describe them."

The old man looks steadily at the boys for a moment, and his eyes fill with tears. "It is a glorious land," he says, with a faltering voice; "it is our country; but, Alfred, Martin, you will 30 never leave this happy home to go there. Birds, there, are the rich man's property, and you would not dare carry those guns of yours over English ground. If ever you go there, your father will tell you where there is a churchyard,—and among the graves of the poor, there is one—" 35

He stopped, for Edward Harvey came to the place where his father sat, and took his trembling hand within his own; the boys obeyed their mother's signal, and followed her into the house; two men remained sitting together, until the silent stars came out.

Then, the aged man, leaning on his son's arm, rejoined the 40 family at the supper-table; and the peace of God rested on the solitary home. Edward Harvey had faithfully kept within his heart, the memory of his mother's dying commands.

Martin, his father, had nobly effaced the *one Black Spot*.

(Household Words.) 45

21. LOST IN LONDON.

CHAPTER I.

The following are extracts from the manuscript of a German gentleman of education, who fled from hopeless poverty, occasioned by political persecution at home, to endure poverty, with hope of better days, in London. He landed at Blackwall on a cold morning, in December, 1846, with a small spare body, a nearly empty purse, and a carpet-bag. His hope was that he might earn bread by translating German works, and he had a fancy that he would begin with Hegel; he was prepared also to labour in original composition as an English writer.

In the waiting-room at the Custom House he was abashed by a party of neat gentlemen and ladies. Their clothes were clean, he says, and mine had not felt a brush since I got into the railway train at Cologne. Their hair was very short, wiry, and prim, while mine was long and dishevelled. Their cravats were as stiff as they were high, and I had the assurance to wear my shirt-collar turned down. There was something exceedingly painful to me in the sneering curiosity with which I was surveyed. I left the room.

I had scarcely gone out on the quay, when a dirty man, with large whiskers, came shuffling up, and addressed me in German. He asked whether I had come with the boat from Rotterdam? and on my saying, "No," he wished to be informed what hotel I had fixed upon. I knew of the touters for the low inns, who lie in ambush about the London wharfs to entice strangers, and particularly foreigners, into their lairs. But what had I to fear? I was no prey for thieves. My falling in with a touter was somewhat fortunate. A home was at once recommended to me, of which my whiskered countryman, with the dirty face, informed me he was the proprietor. He called it "fatherland in the midst of London."

After a short palaver, we agreed to his proposal, that I should pay him for my board and lodging at the rate of half-a-crown per diem. This, he said, was the usual sum; but I found afterwards that I paid a shilling more than he was in the habit of receiving. I was, however, well pleased with my bargain. As for him, he seemed in such conceit with his new customer, that he would not leave me for a single moment alone, for fear I should make my escape or lose my way.

I was very cold, and felt feverishly impatient to change my dress, wash my face, and brush my hair. I looked, consequently, with great eagerness towards the "fatherland in the heart of London." Besides I had not yet breakfasted; and when Mr. Wernstuk (such was the whiskered man's name) proposed to go to a public-house on the wharf, I readily accompanied him, and was forthwith

led into a large room, where an enormous fire was drying the smock-frocks of above a hundred coalheavers, draymen, and porters, who sat on black benches, drinking ale, and eating cheese. They all smoked clay pipes, and seemed greatly to enjoy their bad tobacco. My landlord dragged me to a table at the further end of 5 the room, where he told me to sit down by the side of a pale woman, whose dress and long braids, escaping from under a skull-cap embroidered with beads, plainly bespoke her as one of my fair countrywomen. While the landlord, who appeared an *habitué* of the place, bustled off to get some refreshment at the bar, I entered 10 into a conversation with the poor woman, who seemed quite bewildered by the surrounding uproar. She said she and her husband had but that morning arrived from Rotterdam, and that they had been at once secured and carried off by Mr. Wernstuk. The last-named person returning with a dish of cold beef, and sundry 15 pots and glasses, put the beef before me, and bade me take especial care of the blunt knife and iron fork which he placed into my hands—for he had become bail for them at the bar. While I was engaged in conquering the toughness of the meat, I understood that knives and forks being continually stolen by the haunters of 20 this place, every guest was bound to go to the bar and return those articles when done with.

The noise and the smell of the room were too powerful; and declaring my intention to set out by myself on a voyage of discovery for Mr. Wernstuk's hotel, I returned the knife and fork to 25 that gentleman, who so loudly predicted I was sure of falling into the jaws of other sharks, and who seemed half-agonised at the idea of a certain rival house in Leman Street, which he told me was worse than a murderer's den. But neither his curses nor his prayers could prevail with me. I merely stayed to inquire for the situation 30 and number of his house in Wellclose Square, took my carpet-bag, and a few moments afterwards I alighted at the Fenchurch Street Station of the Blackwall Railway.

The men whom I saw in Rosemary Lane, as I passed through it on my way to Wellclose Square, seemed to be almost all Jews, 35 anxious to sell me coats, or buy my carpet-bag; and the women, many of whom peered out from little windows that were almost on a level with the pavement, were gross in their language, and licentious in their manners. Some of them were assembled in small knots in the street, so that I found difficulty in passing along. But 40 soon I found an object of a more formidable nature in my way in the shape of a woman, whose size and evident strength of limb, joined to a certain swaggering deportment, bespoke her a heroine of rows. This woman, who had watched my progress up the street, separated from some of her companions, and placed herself in my 45

way. There was something in her manner which made me sure she would speak to me, and be angry at any answer I might give; but, for all that, I could not avoid her. I might have crossed the road, but that would have betrayed the fear which I confess I felt; and I therefore walked boldly up to her, and in a polite tone addressing her as "Madam," asked her for the direct way to Wellclose Square.

My stratagem succeeded. The woman was not accustomed to politeness; she seemed half confused, and immediately began to describe the route I was to take. There was evidently some better feeling in her, which made her feel flattered at being mistaken for what she was not, but perhaps had been. She accompanied me almost to the end of the lane. In the course of my progress through his neighbourhood, I remarked that all the inhabitants looked squalid. The very air seemed full of pestilential matter; I felt cold shudders, and my breath came short. I thought of the "città dolente" of Dante. Wellclose Square appeared very quiet; no human being met my eye, when I first entered it; no face appeared at the windows. It was indeed the quiet of a churchyard.

20

CHAPTER II.

My knock at the door of Mr. Wernstuk's house, to which I had been directed, was speedily answered by a rakish-looking young man, in shirt-sleeves, with a scarlet Calpac on his head. Evidently astonished at the appearance of a guest whose deportment differed from what he was accustomed to see in this place, he seemed unable to comprehend my request for accomodation. It was not until I showed him the card which the landlord had given me, that he opened the door and led me into the parlour. The room was dirty, cold, and damp. A low fire burned in a desolate-looking grate; the hearth was full of cinders, and the leavings of a late and disorderly breakfast stood upon the table. Music, wearing apparel, and sundry stone-bottles, strewed the floor. A powerful, square-built fellow, in a Flushing jacket with brass buttons, forced an unmelodious twang from the three remaining strings of an old guitar.

There was no one else in the room; but on the violent shouts of the man in the Calpac, a negligently-dressed woman ascended from some place below. Her features were haggard, and bore an expression of habitual ill-humour; such as bad health, fatigue, and hopelessness stamp on the face. The sharp cough which accompanied the first words she spoke, told her history at once. She was fast sinking under the attacks of consumption.

Surveying me with an air in which kindness struggled with vexation, she said, after a few explanatory remarks from my intro-

ducer, "Did my husband indeed send you here, mein Herr?" And when I said, "Yes;" she continued, "I think Wernstuk is mad. He brags about his house, and his hotel, and his accommodation; whereas you may now see with your own eyes whether a place like this is fit for such as you. Wernstuk is mad!" 5

"Not so mad as you think, my good woman," said I. "At least not in the present case. What his accommodation is, I know not; but his prices suit me excellently. Therefore, let the door be shut, and stir the fire, for it is very cold."

"Ja, ja, mein Herr!" said the man in the Flushing coat with 10 a broad Westphalian accent; and he betook himself eagerly to obey my commands, while his companion—whom the landlady called Tillmans—placed a chair close to the fender, and asked me to sit down on it. "Since you insist on remaining here," added he, "we will at least do all we can to make you comfortable." 15

But I asked to be forthwith shown to a room where I might wash and dress. The man in the Flushing coat looked astonished, and the pale features of the landlady bore an expression of blank dismay. She hesitated for some moments, and then explained to me, that there was no room in the house but this, in which a fire 20 was kept, and that to wash and undress in any other room would give me my death of cold. We were interrupted by a violent knocking at the street-door, which being opened, admitted the landlord, the pale woman, and half-a-dozen men, who were evidently the worse for liquor, and who would have been the better for some 25 water and soap. Their entrance was the signal for a scene of confusion, which lasted until the appearance of the landlord; who, with a huge dish full of hot potatoes, gave the signal for dinner.

A dozen eager hands were at once in motion to assist him. The table, which still bore the traces of the last meals, was covered 30 with a coarse cloth; Louis, the waiter, emptied a basket of tin spoons, knives, and iron forks, on the table; and while the man in the Flushing jacket, armed with a large knife, prepared to act as carver, by stripping himself of his upper garment and tucking up the sleeves of his shirt, the company arranged themselves round the 35 table, and made an unceremonious attack on the provisions, which consisted of cold beef, boiled mutton, sausages, and the hot potatoes. The appetite with which the company eat was truly edifying, and the pauses of the meal were duly filled with laughter, disputing, and swearing. Each guest seemed eager to impress all others with 40 his great proficiency in London life.

Coffee was brought in after dinner, and then the men, scarcely any of whom had as yet found employment in their respective trades, produced large pipes, and fell with great vehemence to smoking

and disputing; while the landlady and the pale woman, with the embroidered skullcap, sat down in a further corner of the room.

Presently, a man in rusty black entered with a boisterous air, which was evidently assumed for the purpose of conciliating the good-will of the landlord, who at once welcomed the new-comer.

"You are just in the nick of time, Mr. Speelman," said he. "There is foreign money in the house."

"Great demand for sovereigns, eh?" said Mr. Speelman. "Well and good. I have brought gold and silver, and give as much for a dollar, or florin, as any man in the trade."

"Gentlemen and ladies!" cried the landlord. "You hear what Mr. Speelman says. He is ready to change whatever coins you may have in your pockets; for you must know your Prussian, or Bavarian, or Badenish money could not buy you a penny roll in a shop." Some of the guests broke out in exclamations of surprise, and hastened to the table. Mr. Speelman produced a large leather bag full of English money, and did, what he called, "a little business," with every one. The man in the Calpac and the wearer of the Flushing coat, alone, had no money to change. The money-changer was just about to go, when he saw the latter, who looked at him with a grave face.

"Ah, Braun!" said he, "I have not yet found anything for you. Bad time for farriers now. Winter — no horses in town. — Schmidt, I say, what are you doing here? Why are you not at your work in Whitechapel?"

"Because some one has knocked a nail into my cask, and I've run that nail into my foot."

"Some one has knocked a nail into your cask!" said I. "What do you mean?"

"Why," said he, turning to me, while the money-changer left the room, "I am a carpenter by trade; but finding no work, I engaged myself with a fellow in Whitechapel to "cure" skins. I have done it now a fortnight, but some one who wished for my place disabled me by knocking a nail into my cask."

I could not make out his meaning.

"I had to get up at three in the morning," he explained; "I undressed, and then went into a cask with hare-skins, which I had to stamp upon all day long. If I continued that work till seven or eight in the evening, I could earn about a shilling a day; just enough to keep me alive."

"And were you tricked out of so miserable an employment?"

"Certainly. There are dozens who wait for one of the workmen to fall ill; and, if they have to wait long, they make him fall ill by secretly disabling him. Every one has his place so long as

he can keep it. They are all Germans who work there, and many of them are clever in their trades; but they cannot find other employment."

This afforded me food for reflection. What a market is London to bring one's labour to!

5

CHAPTER III.

A sudden stillness in the room interrupted the train of my thoughts. I looked up and found that almost all the guests were gone to see something of the town. Mrs. Wernstuk sat on a wooden chair close to me, and coughed violently. "That is a bad 10 cough, which you have," said I; "have you long suffered from it?" "No; not very long," said the poor woman; "it has come on gradually, and is very bad just now. I had the typhus fever in spring; it was my first illness, and it was dreadful. I was out of my mind, Lord knows how long, and when my senses came back, 15 I could not walk from sheer weakness. The doctor sent me to Gravesend, where I remained three weeks. I wish I could go there again. I was very happy at Gravesend." "Are you less happy here?" said I. "I am very miserable. You see the house is dirty. I cannot clean it. The scrubbing and washing it is my death. 20 I find difficulty in mounting the stairs. I have always a mind to lie down and sleep. My husband abuses me; he says it is my laziness. But it is the disease; I feel it. Here," she pressed her hand on her breast, "is a spot which burns like fire. It makes me cough." 25

I knew the poor woman spoke the truth, and that death was at her heart. She sat there for a long time, coughing, and telling me of her father's farm between Düren and Stolberg; of the rich green meadows and the wild forests; of the Corpus Christi processions, when she and her maiden-friends crowned the rustic altar 30 with flowers; and of the merry Kirmesses on the Rhine, where she had danced. She said she had been so fond of dancing, and that she had often danced all through the short, starry summer nights, and walked home after sunrise, when the dew was on the deep grass, and the birds were in the air. 35

But I had to attend to my own affairs. I had no friends in England. There was one man, however, to whom a mutual friend had consigned my fate and fortunes. He was at Brighton. To Brighton I consequently resolved to go, after I had first informed him of my arrival in London. I called for writing materials, indited 40 a letter and hastened to bed, before the wilder part of the inmates of the house returned from their experiment on London life. The bedroom to which I was shown, though at the top of the house,

was wet and cold as a cellar. The plaster of the unpapered walls was, in many places, broken; and the floor looked as if it had but just been washed. Fancying this to be the case, I was angry at this unseasonable attempt at cleanliness; but, when I awoke
5 next morning, I found that this was the usual condition of the floor. It was always wet. The beds in the room were arranged ship-fashion—one standing upon the other; so that the room, which was very small, might be made to contain three persons, or, if necessity required it, six.

10 I chose the topmost bed, for I thought there I was safest if the “fittings” should break; and I kept my clothes on, for I found on examination, that the straw over which the sheets lay, and the sheets themselves, and the blankets, were very damp. I thought my bed would give me rheumatism, and with this thought I fell
15 asleep. When I awoke in the morning I was chilled and sick. I found that I had shared the room with an Italian Swiss, who was about to go to Buenos Ayres.

Descending to the common room, I found all busy at breakfast. A Dutchman, with the complexion of a bad tallow candle,
20 treated the company to potted salmon, schiedam, strong cigars, and other delicacies. The wild young men, who, the evening before, had gone to see the town, were elated with the night’s adventures. They spoke highly of a certain house of public resort in “Dog Street.” Mr. Wernstuk, the landlord, was noisier, and his whiskers
25 were, if possible, more shaggy than the day before. His wife still complained of her illness. She said her cough had been very “trying” during the night.

After breakfast, I set off for Brighton, where I had an interview with Mr. Vitriol, the author, to whom I had been recommended.
30 I had been assured I could confide in Mr. Vitriol, and I gave plain and candid answers to the searching cross-questions about my prospects with which he assailed me. I told him my plans and intentions; nor did I conceal from him that it was of vital importance to me to be at once employed. He drew his eyebrows up,
35 and the corners of his mouth down, and said it would not do. He exclaimed at the crowds of Englishmen who wanted literary engagements, and mentioned the number of applications he had received within the last month. “I believe it,” said I. “But those people had not the good fortune to be particularly recommended
40 to Mr. Vitriol.” He smiled, but grimly, and plied me with new questions. He made me confess that I was almost penniless, and that my sole resource, at present, was my pen. He condemned me for having come to England, spicing his condemnation with a little blasphemy. I was resolved to suffer all, rather than offend
45 him; for he seemed desirous of taking offence; so I merely replied

that I had told him of my misfortunes, and that I had come to England because poverty in a foreign country seemed preferable to poverty at home, where people knew me. I entreated him to look at some of my productions. He had no time. Besides, it was useless. A foreigner could never write English. I asked him to try me but once; but he said again it would not do. I might still have spoken. I might have said many things; but there was something in Mr. Vitriol's manner which crushed me. I felt my spirit broken.

I was obliged to accept the bed which Mr. Vitriol offered me in his house. That night was dreadful. Mr. Vitriol said in the morning he would think about my case, and asked me meanwhile to stay in his house. I had no choice, and accepted. Mrs. Vitriol, his wife, seemed afraid of me; not because I am a very formidable person, but because I was poor. To relieve her of my presence, and myself of the awkwardness of continually repeating my name to her, which she could not remember, I walked about Brighton all day, and felt miserable when I saw people meet and shake hands. It made me feel my loneliness. Next morning Mr. Vitriol sent me to London. I was but too happy to go. Indeed, I would have gone the day before, had I not feared to give him an occasion to be offended. He said my circumstances were such, that I must be at once employed. He would give me a letter of introduction to a friend of his, whose literary career he had fostered. That friend should take cheap lodgings for me, and I should write to give him my address. He would then send me letters of recommendation to publishers and authors; in fact, he said all he could say to send me off easy. I understood afterwards that his wife had persuaded him to give me some hope, lest despair should drive me to commit suicide in his house; a circumstance which would have unpleasantly disturbed their domestic arrangements.

CHAPTER IV.

It was about seven in the evening when I knocked at the door of the house in Soho, where Mr. Pebble, the man to whom Mr. Vitriol had addressed me, lived. I had promised Mr. Vitriol to deliver the letter that very night; for it contained some information which it was important Mr. Pebble should have at once, and Mr. Pebble should assist me in finding cheap lodgings, because I was "hard up." There is at times something soothing in a cant phrase; it takes the sting of a humiliating position by making it familiar. The woman who answered my knock told me Mr. Pebble was out, but she expected him back every minute. On my inquiry where I might wait for him, she directed me to a coffee-shop in St. Martin's Court; and I sallied out in search of it, carrying my carpet-

bag with me. I had by this time grown heartily tired of my carpet-bag. It was not heavy; but it had become torn during the journey, so that it was awkward to carry, and it exposed me to the attacks of all the boys about the streets, who continually offered
5 to carry it for me. After some trouble, I found St. Martin's Court and the coffee-house, where I dined on a cup of coffee and some dry toast.

When I called on Mr. Pebble next morning, he said that lodgings, such as I wished, might be found in one of the smaller
10 streets between Oxford Street and Tottenham Court Road, and he accordingly accompanied me to that quarter of the town. There were many bills in the windows, but we had to see a great many rooms before we found one which would suit me. I knew lodgings in London were not cheap; but I had no idea that such exorbitant
15 prices could be asked for rooms like those which I saw. We found at last two rooms on the top of a house in Percy Street, at a comparatively moderate rent; and Mr. Pebble urged me to take them. I did so, with a heavy heart, for all the money in my pocket would scarcely suffice to pay the first week's rent. I said
20 I would come to the house that very afternoon, and was about to go for my carpet-bag, when Mr. Pebble told me that it would *look very bad* if I carried my luggage myself. He said I must send a porter with it; it would only be a shilling—only a shilling! He looked like a man who would run away from me, or knock me
25 down, if he had really known of how much importance a shilling was to me.

An hour after sunset I went to Percy Street, and went up the dark stairs to my rooms. The bedroom, which I first entered, struck me as cold and damp, but in the grate of the sitting-room
30 burned a cheerful fire, which lighted the whole apartment. It may appear strange that in my straitened circumstances I should have indulged myself with *two* rooms. I can only say that these two rooms together were smaller and cheaper than any one room which I had seen. The bedroom, which communicated with the
35 landing on the top of the stairs, was just large enough to hold a bed and a small wash-hand stand. The sitting-room was of the size of a moderate dining-table. There was a view from the window of a block-tin manufactory, where a bell was rung at the end of every hour. There was an incessant noise of the steam-engine and
40 the hammers. When Londoners advertise rooms of this kind, they put in an assurance that "the situation is cheerful."

I was visited, on my arrival, by a little servant, who looked as if she had been made on purpose to fit the room, she was so small and thin. She brought a candle, and looked at me with
45 almost as much interest as I did at her. She said, "Miss Brown

had told her to ask whether I wanted anything for supper." I was about to say, no; but I recollected Mr. Pebble's advice about appearances, and told her I would go out for my tea.

I went out and took a walk up Oxford Street, partly with the intention of buying writing materials; partly in order to accustom myself to the London streets. London street life has an astonishing influence on the minds of new-comers. The strong glare of light in the principal thoroughfares, and the comparative darkness in the streets where there are no shops, joined to the incessant rattling of wheels, and the crowds of people going and coming give a foreigner a dizziness in the head. I had seen, in Wellclose Square, how violently London operated on the lower classes of my countrymen; they seemed almost as drunk with the town as with the liquor they had taken. On me it acted in a different manner. I saw every thing confusedly, and my ears were almost stunned with the noise. I walked as in a dream. I was curious to see, and yet I could not mark anything. I must have passed half-a-dozen stationer's shops; yet I had almost reached the end of Oxford Street before I found one. When I entered it, I talked confusedly, and my manner was so trembling, that the shop-people stared at me with surprise. I had great difficulty in finding my way back, and was extremely fatigued when I lay down on the little flock bed. That night, I had no dreams.

CHAPTER V.

The first week which I passed in my lodging, in Percy Street, was a sorry one. On the first morning I was embarrassed by Miss Brown, the landlady, coming up and asking whether I wished my room "done" at once, or whether she should wait till I had gone out to my business? I stared at the word *business*, for it reminded me that I had none. It is true there was a hope that I should soon be employed; but there was something in that very hope which sickened me. I had duly informed Mr. Vitriol of my exact address, and written my name in large letters for the information of the little Hackney servant; for I was very nervous about my letter being lost. The postman's knock made my heart beat; and I was once almost choked with emotion, when, immediately, after that knock, the girl came up-stairs. I listened with trembling eagerness to the sound of her steps. There was no letter for me. Since there was none, the idea of that letter had become fixed in my mind. I thought of it during the day — I dreamed of it in the night. In the meanwhile I spent my time equally between writing and walking. Economy was my grand object; but ignorance of the town made saving difficult. My proceedings in the first days struck me sometimes as being penny wise and shilling foolish;

but at last I hit upon a plan of spending sixpence a-day for my eating. Sausage rolls are very fat, and, consequently, satisfying. I bought one for my breakfast, one for dinner, and a third, which I ate at night, to make me go to sleep. I never bought all three
5 at a time, but went out for each, in order to have something to do. Now and then, being madly fond of smoking, I stinted myself of one roll, and bought a cigar instead. Still following Mr. Pebble's advice about appearances, I usually took my walks between three and six in the afternoon, to impress the people in the house with
10 the idea I had gone out to dinner. Nevertheless, I saw my few shillings fast vanishing; and one anxious day passed after another without a letter from Mr. Vitriol. I had meanwhile written an essay about the state of Prussia, which I took to Mr. Pebble, and asked him to procure its insertion in some journal. He put it by, saying
15 he was very busy just then, but hoped, in a fortnight or three week's time he should find leisure to look it over, which he must do before he could recommend it. I ventured to hint that its immediate disposal was of great importance to me, and that the looking over it would scarcely take him half an hour. He contemplated
20 me with great astonishment, and grew very restless and pettish in his manner. In going away, I thought of the German nursery tale of people who sowed the wheat when the child was hungry, and, by the time the harvest came, the child was dead. The next day I received a letter from Mr. Vitriol. I could hardly read it for trembling.
25 There were no letters of recommendation in it. I was merely informed that Mr. Vitriol had put off writing because he had returned to town, and that he wished me to call upon him the next morning. There was some hope in being appointed to meet him. The night passed away in feverish impatience.

30 I punctually attended the appointment. Alas! my interview with Mr. Vitriol showed me only that I had nothing to hope from him. His first question was, whether I had found out and obtained pecuniary assistance from any of my countrymen? At first I did not exactly understand the meaning of his words; but, when I did,
35 I felt greatly insulted, and told him I wanted no assistance, except literary employment, which none of my countrymen in London could give me. "The only alms I want are the wages of labour." He shrugged his shoulders, and said he would talk to some publishers. I might do translations. But he would not hear of giving me letters
40 to those publishers. A personal interview with him was better; I should hear from him.

To say that I left Mr. Vitriol in despair, would be a wrong description of my state of mind. The sickening hopes which hitherto confined my energies, had proved fallacious. I had done with them.
45 Still I was resolved not to despair of anything, and to hope every-

thing. After returning from Mr. Vitriol's house, I formed my plans. I would offer my services to all London papers and periodicals; I would try to live upon next to nothing, and wait the result. My state of mind was very strange; it was less depressed and anxious than it had been during the previous week. There were even times 5 when I could smile and find an interest in the deep importance which pence and farthings had acquired in my eyes. I could reconcile myself to the present, but dared not think of the future.

Meanwhile, I studied the names of journals in the news-vendors' shops, and wrote to the editors, stating my case and asking for 10 employment. The delivery of the letters at the offices was very instructive to me; it made me acquainted with the principal streets of the town. I delighted in carrying my own letters; it gave my excursions some purpose, beyond the mere walking. I wrote and carried some letters each day, but I received no answer whatever. 15 I had, meanwhile, reformed my way of living, by discovering a shop in High Holborn, where little hot things, which they called meat-pies, might be had for a penny. These were very indigestible, and, I doubt not, unwholesome; but they did for me, because anything indigestible was just what I wanted. Good digestion was 20 precisely the thing to be avoided. As the days and weeks wore on, I felt time more and more heavy on my hands. I had now nobody to speak to; for, the last time I had called on Mr. Pebble he looked so alarmed, that I could not repeat my visit. I had no books to read; there was absolutely nothing I could do, except 25 writing. But then I had great reason to be careful with my paper. I amused myself now and then by crossing the leaves of an old copy-book with short notes of my feelings and impressions. My little servant had grown sulky. It seemed as if the days would not end, and the nights were very long. I could not go to the expense of 30 having a fire, and remained in bed the greater part of the day, to keep myself warm. Christmas Day passed away almost unheeded. I had no almanack, and would have remained unconscious of the beginning of the new year, but for my little servant, who said she was going to spend New Year's Day with her friends at 35 Hackney.

January set in with severe weather, and I fell ill. I felt glad of it; for a total loss of appetite was one of the first symptoms of my illness. My appetite had, of late, been very troublesome. I was never blessed with so large a capacity for eating, 40 than when I least had the means of doing it justice. When the fever left me, in its stead came all the pangs of a morbid hunger." —

The unfortunate gentleman, during the first walk after his recovery, calls on a German bookseller, from whom he obtains leave 45

to sit in the shop sometimes and read gratuitously. The bookseller invites him to tea one evening; he stays late; and, on returning to his lodgings, finds himself accidentally shut out. "There was no choice left," he says, "but to keep out the cold by walking about
5 the streets; for to go to any hotel or public-house was quite out of the question." So, wandering about the lonely streets upon a rainy January night, he was for a time lost in London.

The bookseller and his connexions were eventually useful. The writer's acquirements were made known, and procured him employ-
10 ment. He is now connected with the Foreign department of an eminent journal, and prospers. *(Household Words.)*

22. PROMOTION.

The late Duke of York once remarked to Colonel W. at the mess of the 11th regiment that the Colonel was uncommonly bald,
15 and, although a younger man than his royal highness, he stood more in need of a wig. The Colonel, who had been of very long standing in the service, and whose promotion had been by no means rapid, informed his royal highness, that his baldness could be very easily accounted for. "In what manner?" asked his royal highness,
20 rather eagerly. To which Colonel W. replied. — "By junior officers stepping over my head." The Duke was so pleased with the reply, that the gallant Colonel obtained promotion in a few days afterwards. *(London News.)*

23. A CANDID CONFESSION.

25 Among the traditions of Westminster Hall is one of a certain sergeant Davy, who flourished some centuries back, in a darker age than the present. He was accused by his brethren of the coif, of having degraded their order by taking from a client a fee in copper; and on being solemnly arraigned for his offence he defended
30 himself by the following plea: — "I fully admit that I took a fee from him in copper, and not only one, but several, and not only fees in copper, but fees in silver, but I pledge my honour as a sergeant that I never took a single fee from him in silver until I had got all his gold, and that I never took a single fee from him
35 in copper until I had got all his silver — and you don't call that a degradation of our order?" *(London News.)*

VIERTER ABSCHNITT.

Bilder aus der Natur.

1. THE ELEPHANT.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Extinct Species of Elephants.

5

The elephant is a very remarkable animal on many accounts. First, in point of size and strength, it stands foremost in the whole class of land animals; next, it is remarkable from there being only two species of it, the Asiatic and the African, although there are several varieties, apparently the result of the climate in which it lives. 10

There is, however, a third species of elephant, which adds to the interests of the animal. This species is, however, now no more, — it is extinct; it no longer dwells upon our earth, and is only known to have existed from its enormous remains, which have been dug up in various places. These remains are abundant in 15 the northern parts both of Asia and Europe; and some have been found in England, and also in North America.

The fossil elephant (*elephas primogenitus*) appears to have been somewhat larger than those of the present race, — its body was thicker, and its frame stronger and more robust, as appears 20 from the form and character of the bones. These bones were dug up in various places, at various times, and were sometimes supposed to have been the bones of giants by the ignorant, and also by the learned; but when one of the tusks of the animal was found, it immediately upset the theory of the giants; for although 25 many of them had terrible teeth, according to the legends generally believed, yet the tusks of an elephant, weighing sixty or seventy pounds, must have been rather too large a mouthful for the highest order of giants.

These tusks were found in immense quantities by the barbarous 30

inhabitants of Siberia, and formed an article of commerce, as ivory, for many years; and the remains of the animal itself, although not entire, were so numerous in many parts of that country, that they formed large banks, and almost entire islands, in the lower parts
 5 of the great rivers, near their confluences with the Polar Ocean. It is but very recently that these remains have been found in an entire skeleton, or that persons, sufficiently skilled in comparative anatomy, have joined them, bone to bone, in the same relative situations which they must have held during the life of the animal.

10 The most perfect specimen of the fossil elephant is one which was cast ashore, frozen in an icy tomb, upon the north coast of Asia, about forty years ago. A Tungusian fisherman, observed a strange shapeless mass projecting from an ice-bank, near the mouth of a river, in the north of Siberia, the nature of which
 15 he did not understand, and which was so high in the bank, as to be beyond his reach.

The next year, the fisherman observed the same object, but could not make out what it was: but, at last, when the ice began to thaw by the hot sun, he could distinctly see that it was the
 20 frozen carcass of an enormous animal, the entire flank of which, and one of its tusks, had been disengaged from the ice.

In consequence of the ice melting earlier in the year 1803, the fifth year of its discovery, the enormous carcass became clearly disengaged, and fell down from the ice-crag upon a sand-
 25 bank, forming part of the coast of the Arctic Ocean. Its flesh was by no means entirely decayed. The Tungots took large quantities of it to feed their dogs, and the bears came and feasted on the remainder; yet the skeleton remained quite entire, except that one of the fore legs was gone.

30 The entire spine, the pelvis, one shoulder-blade, and three legs, were held together by their ligaments, and by some remains of the skin; and the other shoulder-blade was found at a short distance. The head remained covered by a dried skin, and the pupil of the eye was distinguishable. The brain also remained
 35 within the skull, but was much shrunken, and dried up. One of the ears was in excellent preservation, still retaining a tuft of strong bristly hair. The skin was extremely thick and heavy, and as much of it remained as required the exertions of ten men to carry it away; while more than thirty pounds of its hair and brist-
 40 les were afterwards collected from the wet sand-bank.

These bristles were of great importance in this discovery. They were of three kinds: — one stiff and black, of more than a foot in length; another, thinner bristles, or coarse flexible hair, of a reddish brown colour; and the third was a reddish brown wool,
 45 which grew among the roots of the long hair. These afforded an

undeniable proof that this animal had belonged to a race of elephants inhabiting a cold region, which were by no means adapted for living in the torrid zone. It is also evident, that this enormous animal must have been frozen up at the moment of its death.

The fossil remains of elephants have not only been dug up 5 in the places before mentioned, but in most of the countries of Europe, from the Mediterranean Sea to the Frozen Ocean, and in several parts of Great Britain and Ireland.

CHAPTER II.

Of the Living Species of Elephants.

10

The African and Asiatic species of elephants differ in many particulars; but the former is still in a state of nature, and is scarcely known, except as a hunted animal, for his tusks, or flesh, or both, — an elephant being a feast of many days to the inhabitants of an African village.

15

The head of the elephant is rather small in proportion to its size: its ears are large and pendulous; its body is thick, compared with its length; its eyes are bright and expressive; its legs are very stout and massive; the feet are not divided into toes, externally visible, but there are five short flat nails on each of their 20 fore feet. The feet and legs, although apparently stiff and awkward, are not so in reality; the fore foot can be used in many ways. The tail is slender, and nearly naked, for the greater part of its length, but it has a thick brush at the point. The skin of the elephant is of a dusky black, with only a few hair scattered 25 over the general surface.

The most remarkable organ in the elephant, is the one which distinguishes it from all other animals, namely, the *trunk*; which (the human hand only excepted) is the most curious mechanical instrument in the whole animal kingdom.

30

The trunk proceeds from that portion of the head which would form the snout of the animal; and is about eight feet long. At its end it has two perforations, which answer the purpose of nostrils. By these it can draw in water, so that the trunk is converted into a drinking horn, and the elephant uses it as such; 35 for having filled it, he then blows the whole contents into his mouth.

The extremity of the trunk, on the upper side, is formed into a sort of rounded lip, which bears some analogy to the finger of the hand, while the under side has a small fleshy projection, which has the same analogy to a thumb; and so useful is this part of 40 the apparatus, that the animal constantly makes use of it as a hand. By it he is enabled to pick up a pin from the floor, to draw the cork of a bottle, and perform other feats equally wonderful.

The body of the trunk is made up with a great variety of muscles, with their tendons, amounting, in all, to not less than four thousand, which is greater than the whole of the muscles in the human body. These muscles are placed in all directions, 5 and so disposed, that they can move the trunk in every way; — it can be twisted up, turned down, moved circularly, horizontally, and vertically; and lastly, they enable the elephant to make this wonderful instrument either longer or shorter, at pleasure.

With the trunk, the elephant gathers his food, puts it in his 10 mouth, draws up water to quench his thirst, to sprinkle his body, or, with it he collects dust to throw over his body, to prevent the musquitoes and flies from annoying him; by it, he also moves boxes, lifts weights, and will do the work of a dozen porters.

Next to the trunk, the most remarkable external character of 15 the elephant is its *tusks*; these occupy the place of the ordinary canine teeth of animals. These teeth, or tusks, are two in number, and are, in both species, nearly straight, or curved upwards; in the fossil elephant, on the contrary, they also being curved upward, turn again downward. What might be the use of this 20 difference of structure, is difficult to say; but the tusks are, in the fossil animal, so constructed, that they might act as hooks in pulling down substances higher than itself; and, as the northern marshes were at that time covered with tree ferns, and those other palm-like plants, it is probable that the tusks were employed in 25 pulling down the fruits of these plants, in order that the animal might feed on them.

The SUBSTANCE of the tusks is also remarkable; — it is not horn, it is not bone, *but* a substance unlike either, and yet, in some degree, resembling both. The tusks grow in the same 30 manner as the horn of an ox, by a new layer of ivory on its inner surface; for the tusk, like the horn of an ox, is nearly hollow. The largest tusks are from five to eight feet in length, and weigh from forty to seventy pounds.

The TEETH of the elephant exhibit a mode of dentition 35 (cutting) not to be found in the whole of the animal kingdom. The first grinders, or milk teeth, begin to cut the surface within nine or ten days from the birth. These are not shed, as in the case of the milk teeth of other animals, but are gradually worn away while the second teeth are coming forward; and, by the 40 time these are full grown, which is about the second year, the body of the first ones is gradually worn away, the roots are absorbed, and every vestige of the teeth is obliterated.

When the *second* teeth are perfected, and begin to perform their work, a third set forms in the rear of them, and take their 45 place as the second set wear away, which generally happens

about the end of the fifth year. After this a fourth set is formed to follow the third in the same manner; a fifth to follow the fourth, and so on, during the whole life of the animal, which, by this mode, obtains a new set of teeth every few years. This process of dentition seems to afford evidence of the great longevity 5 of the animal, although it furnishes no data, by which we may be able to ascertain the exact age to which they live.

The teeth of the elephant consist of four laminæ, or ridges of enamel in the young animal. These laminæ increase with the growth of the animal; and, in mature age, amount to sixteen or 10 twenty. From the manner in which they are constructed, they may be compared to a set of irregular chisels, placed across the jaw, and supported in the intervals by a substance softer than the enamel, and more resembling the ivory of the tusks; thus they are admirably adapted for cutting and grinding: from the character 15 of the teeth, we might know, without seeing the animal eat, that its food was of a vegetable nature.

Elephants are social and gregarious animals: the old and young associate together without the slightest animosity. The oldest and strongest male or female generally lead the rest, and the others 20 implicitly follow their motions.

In India, elephants are most abundant in the thick woods, on the left bank of the Ganges, and in the forests of Chittagong, further to the east. Here they exist in numerous herds, which occasionally invade the cultivated fields, eating vast quantities of 25 green sugar canes, rice, bananas, and other crops, and trampling down and destroying the remainder with their great feet; they are also very bold and formidable in their invasion, and, unless the people can rise *en masse*, and drive them off with torches, and cannon shot, they must be content to look on and behold the ruin 30 of their fields, till it shall please the elephants to retire.

CHAPTER III.

The Way Elephants are captured.

In India, elephants are captured not only singly, but in herds, by being driven into a series of enclosures, called keddah. 35 This consists of three enclosures, one within the other, formed of very strong stockades and deep ditches. The third, or innermost enclosure, is the strongest of the three; they are connected with each other by massive piles and bars.

When a herd is discovered by persons, in the first instance, 40 sent out to look for it, about three hundred people are employed to surround it; they are in parties of two or three, at the distance, of about twenty or thirty yards from each other; this circle is

gradually formed into an oblong, leaving room for the herd to advance in the direction of the keddah; the people in the rear of the elephants, now make a noise with their kettles, rattles, drums, horns, &c., to cause the elephants to advance. The elephants, only desirous of not being molested, continue feeding, and moving in the direction required; should they move towards the sides of the oval, fires are lighted, and every thing is done to force them towards its centre, and to continue their course. In this manner they are gradually brought to the first broad gateway of the keddah.

10 As soon as they have entered the first enclosure, fires are lighted all round it, and particularly at the entry, (or entries, for sometimes there are more than one,) to prevent the animals from returning. The elephants finding themselves ensnared, scream, and make a loud noise; but seeing no opening, except the entrance to the next enclosure, after many fruitless attempts to re-
15 trace their steps by retreating through the first enclosure, they at last, though unwillingly, dash through the gateway into the next enclosure; the leader enters, and the rest follow, and the gate through which they passed is instantly shut.

20 The same means are now taken to drive the elephants through into the third enclosure, as were used in getting them through the second. They are surrounded by fires on every side, and frightened by the various noises and shoutings of the persons stationed around; should they attempt to burst through any of the
25 stockades, they are immediately met with flaming brands, spears, and hideous noises, which, in the end, have the effect of frightening them through the other gateway.

When the herd are fixed in the third enclosure, the keddah, properly so called, they are exceedingly furious, and make various
30 attempts to break through, but generally without effect; there they remain for some time, care being taken to supply them well with water, by means of the ditch surrounding the place in which they stand. After a few days, the door of the outlet is opened, and this having a passage, strongly secured, leading to it, with double
35 gates, one of the elephants is suffered to enter it, and is enticed by various fruits and food, thrown to him from a small scaffolding above; as soon as the elephant has passed between the gates, they are immediately secured, and firmly barricaded by pieces of thick timber being placed across them in the form of an X. When
40 the elephant finds himself a close prisoner, he becomes furious, and exerts all his force to break down the bars that surround him, by butting against them with his head, and swinging his trunk about them, screaming and roaring hideously.

After he has fatigued himself with this confinement, strong
45 ropes, with running nooses are laid down; and, as soon as he

puts a foot within the noose, it is immediately drawn tight and fastened to the palisade; his hind legs are then tied together, and a strong rope is put twice round his body, close to his fore legs, like a girth; he has other ropes fastened to his back and loins, so as to prevent his using a single limb injuriously; and lastly, 5 a couple of cables, with running nooses, are placed round his neck, and tied to the posts and ropes on each; and thus, by the superior power of man's mind, the gigantic elephant is made a CAPTIVE.

But, after all, it is not force and ingenuity alone, that subjugates the elephant; — kindness is also requisite. Those who 10 are employed in putting the ropes round his body and over his head, have others near them, who occasionally feed him with a bunch of cocoa-nut leaves, or sugar cane, and otherwise try to divert and soothe him.

As soon as the elephant is secured in the way described, 15 the ends of the two cables which were fastened round his neck, are brought forward to the outer end of the outlet, where two tame elephants, which are trained to the business, are waiting, and to them these cables are made fast; the door at the end of the passage is then opened, his legs are untied, and he is led out 20 by the trained elephants; and, if very unruly, is still obliged to be secured to the trunks of large trees.

While led forth, and guided by the tame elephants, the wild one is generally somewhat quiet and subdued; but as soon as these leave him to perform the same office to other elephants, he 25 becomes outrageous, and makes a last violent effort to recover his liberty. During this period, cocoa-nut leaves and plantain trees are brought to him for food. In the agony of distress, he tosses them contemptuously away, or tramples them with indignation under his feet. The cravings of hunger, will, however, at last, 30 induce him to eat; this, however, he does with great reluctance at first, but, after a few hours, he will feed very heartily, and, at last becomes resigned to his fate.

Whole herds of elephants are captured in this way; but, occasionally, a small party of hunters endeavour to seize the males, 35 which often sally forth from the forests alone, in search of richer provisions. The places where these elephants feed, are known to the hunters, and they advance towards them in the evening, with four trained female elephants, which decoy them along; at such times, ropes can be put round their legs, without the animals being 40 aware of it; this is, however, a very hazardous task, and often the elephants, suspecting the design, burst forth with great fury, and destroy all within their reach; if secured, he is left to the charge of a keeper, who is appointed to attend, and instruct, and tame him. 45

The plan pursued in taming the elephant, is to supply him with enticing food, and to soothe and caress him by a variety of little arts; he coaxes and flatters him, scratching his head with a long bamboo, drives away the flies that sting and annoy him, 5 and keeps him cool, by squirting water over his body. In a few days he advances cautiously to his side, and pats and strokes him with his hand, speaking all the time to him in a soothing tone of voice; and then, in a little time, the elephant begins to know his keeper, and to obey his commands.

10 This obedience to his conductor, seems to proceed partly from a sense of gratitude, or it is, in some measure, voluntary; for, whenever an elephant takes fright, or is determined to run away, all the exertions of his keeper cannot prevent him, either by beating or driving the pointed iron hook into his head, with which 15 he directs him; and thus kindness, mingled with a proper degree of authority, is never forgotten.

To illustrate this, says Mr. Carse Scott, in the Asiatic Researches, — in June, 1787, Jaltra Mungul, a male elephant, taken the year before, was travelling in company with some other 20 elephants towards Chittagong, laden with a tent and some baggage, for our accomodation in the journey. Having come upon a tiger's track, which elephants discover readily by the smell, he took fright and ran off to the woods, in spite of the efforts of the driver. On entering the wood, the driver saved himself by springing from the 25 elephant and clinging to the branch of a tree under which he was passing. When the elephant got rid of his driver, he soon contrived to shake off his load. As soon as he ran away, a trained female was despatched after him, but could not get up in time to prevent his escape; she, however, brought back his driver, and the 30 load he had thrown off, and we proceeded without any hope of ever seeing him again. Eighteen months after this, when a herd of elephants had been taken, and had remained several days in the enclosure, till they were enticed into the outlet, then tied and let out in the usual manner, one of the drivers, viewing a male 35 elephant very attentively, declared he resembled the one which had run away. This excited the curiosity of every one to go and look at him; but when any person came near, the animal struck at them with his trunk, and, in every respect, appeared as wild and outrageous as any of the other elephants. At length an old hunter 40 coming and examining him narrowly, declared that he was the very elephant that had made his escape about eighteen months before. Confident of this, he boldly rode up to him on a tame elephant, and ordered him to lie down, pulling him by the ear at the same time. The animal seemed quite taken by surprise, and 45 instantly obeyed the word of command with as much quickness as

the ropes with which he was tied permitted; uttering, at the same time, a peculiar shrill squeak through his trunk, as he had been formerly known to do, by which he was immediately recognised by every person who had ever been acquainted with this peculiarity. Thus we see that this elephant, for the space of eight or ten 5 days during which he was in the enclosure, and even while he was tying in the outlet, appeared equally wild and fierce as the boldest elephant then taken, so that he was not even suspected of having been formerly taken, till he was conducted from the outlet. The moment, however, he was addressed in a commanding tone, 10 the recollection of his former obedience seemed to rush upon him at once, and, without any difficulty, he permitted a driver to be seated on his neck, who, in a few days, made him as tractable as ever.

CHAPTER IV.

15

Stories about Elephants.

There are numerous stories concerning the sagacity of the elephant. Is it true, that his senses are remarkably acute, particularly those of hearing, and touch by the proboscis; the senses of taste, and of smell, are also very acute; but still, although the 20 elephant is considered by the Hindoos, as the emblem of wisdom, as the owl was by the Greeks, it cannot be considered, by any means, so sagacious as the dog, or the horse, or, probably, the pig, which has been taught as many tricks as the elephant, though it wants some of the mechanical apparatus for performing them, 25 such as the trunk.

The elephant is, however, a sagacious animal, although he may not stand in the very first place; their remembrance of injuries, and also of kindness, seem to be remarkable. Some of the stories illustrate this very remarkably, and also another quality, if 30 the story be true; namely, that of their susceptibility of ridicule.

Elephants in India were once employed in the launching of ships. One was directed to force a very large vessel into the water, but which proved superior to his strength. In a sarcastic tone of voice his master desired the keeper to take away the lazy 35 beast, and bring another in his stead; the distressed animal instantly increased his efforts, in doing which he fractured his skull on the spot.

An elephant in Delhi, passing along the streets put his trunk into a tailor's shop, where several people were at work; some of 40 them pricked the end of it with a needle. The beast passed on; but in coming to the next dirty pool of water, filled his trunk with it, and returned apparently in great wrath back to the shop,

where, upon arriving, he discharged the whole contents over those who had offended him, and entirely spoiled their work.

An elephant in Ajmeer, which passed frequently through the bazaar, or market; as he went by a certain herb-woman, always
5 received from her a mouthful of greens. At length he was seized with one of his periodical fits of rage, broke from his fetters, and running through the market, put the crowd to flight; and among others this woman, who, in haste, forgot a little child she had brought with her. The animal gratefully recollecting the spot
10 where his benefactress was wont to sit, laid aside his fury, and taking up the infant gently in his trunk, placed it safely on a stall before a neighbouring house. — In the Dekan, another elephant, not having received some arrack which had been promised by the cornac, or governor, by way of revenge, killed him. The cornac's
15 wife, who was eye-witness to this, took her two children and flung them before the elephant, saying, "Now you have destroyed their father, you may as well put an end to their lives and mine." He instantly stopped, relented, took the biggest of the children, placed him on his neck, adopted him for his cornac, and never
20 afterwards would permit any body else to mount him.

There was a soldier at Pondicherry, who was accustomed, whenever he received his share of liquor, to carry a certain quantity of it to one of these animals; having drunk rather too freely one day, and finding himself pursued by the guards, who were going
25 to take him to prison, he took refuge under the elephant's body and fell asleep. The guard tried to force him from this asylum in vain, as the elephant protected him with his trunk. The following morning, the soldier recovering from his drunken fit, shuddered with horror to find himself stretched under the belly of this huge
30 animal. The elephant, which, without doubt, perceived the man's embarrassment, caressed him with his trunk in order to inspire him with courage, and made him understand that he might now depart in safety.

A painter was desirous of drawing the elephant, which was
35 kept in the menagerie at Versailles, in an uncommon attitude, which was that of holding his trunk raised up in the air, with his mouth open. The painter's boy, in order to keep the animal in this posture, threw fruit into his mouth; but as he had frequently deceived him, and made him an offer only of throwing the fruit,
40 he grew angry, and, as if he had known the painter's intention of drawing him was the cause of the affront that was offered him, instead of revenging himself on the lad, he turned his resentment on the master, and tanking up a quantity of water in his trunk, threw it on the paper upon which the painter was drawing, and
45 spoiled it.

The uses of elephants in India, are greater than they would be in Europe, because the roads in many parts can never be brought into a state fit for wheel carriages. India is a burden country, and, as a beast of burden, the elephant is inestimable. A male elephant, full grown, can carry about a ton weight, and 5 travel with it fifty miles a day; and then, if properly used, he will retain this power for upwards of a hundred years; so that he who purchases a good elephant, may be said to purchase an estate for his grandchild. But carrying is not the only useful purpose to which the elephant can be applied. He can be used 10 also for drawing; and thus the elephant will be even more valuable in India, in proportion as the country improves. It has already been connected with the power and state of eastern nations, from very early times, and is now a most useful appendage to an Indian army. He is an appendage of royalty, for which purpose himself 15 and the houdah, or crib, which is fastened on him, are both decked out in the most gorgeous manner, and princes and rulers ride on him in all the pomp for which an eastern clime is so celebrated.

(William Martin.)

THE BOA CONSTRICTOR.

20

CHAPTER I.

Description.

These formidable reptiles are found only in the warmer parts of the world, where vegetation is rich, and many of them near the water, more than in the dry and open places. 25

They are most abundant in Brazil. It has been sometimes supposed that the boa constrictor exists in the old continent, in the hottest parts of Asia and Africa, and there only; but it is more probable, that the large serpents found in these places are *colubers*, and that the true boa constrictor is found only in the 30 richer parts of tropical America.

The boa constrictor kills his prey by muscular strength only. It does not sting, or inflict any wound by its teeth, but coils itself round the body of its victim, and crushes it to death. As is the case with all serpents, the boas have no means of masticat- 35 ing or dividing its prey; and as a compensation, its gape is remarkably wide, and its throat and gullet capable of much dilation.

The tribe, or family of boa, comprehends all those serpents which have their scales entire, or of one plate, extending from side to side, and which, at the same time, have neither a rattle, 40 nor a spinous prolongation, at the end of the tail. It is by this

series of single scales that the family, *boa*, is distinguished from *coluber*, which are also crushing serpents.

The *boa constrictor*, "the roebuck serpent," one of the largest and most formidable of the species, is easily known by the markings along the back, which are very distinct. These consist of a regular succession of spots, alternately black, and in the form of irregular hexagons, and are all of a yellow colour, and broken by notches at the sides.

Some of the species of *boa* attain a very large size, measuring thirty or forty feet in length, and when they are of that size they can master deer, and even buffaloes. They have a spinous hook at each side of the lower part of the body, and they are capable of holding on by a tree, or a branch, with the latter part of the tail, while the rest of the body coils round the captured animal, and sometimes draw it towards the tree, where it is crushed to death.

After the prey has been thus captured, should it be too large to swallow, the reptile generally breaks the bones, and reduces it to an oblong mass; it then smears it all over with its glutinous saliva, and begins to swallow it by a very slow process, till, at last, the whole is entombed in the monster's capacious stomach.

The quality of the slimy matter, with which the prey is covered, has been proved to be a very powerful solvent, as well as a smooth, lubricating power, and assists in digestion as well as deglutition.

The construction of the jaws of the *boa constrictor* is well adapted to enable him to swallow his prey whole: he can open them to an immense extent, as we could a purse with a steel circular snap, which will fold completely back from each other, till they are in the same plane. Indeed, this is but an approximation, for the jaws of the *boa* are provided with sets of muscles which expand, and thus enable it to open its throat and mouth still wider.

The form of the teeth, and the peculiar junction of the jaw bones, urges the prey inwards, something in the same manner as the awn or beard of a barley-corn moves up a man's sleeve when he moves his arm; or as hairs work into a compact mass, in the operation of making a hat, or any other process of felting.

After the animal has thus gorged himself with his prey, it falls into a state of inactivity and stupor, and at this time may be safely approached and attacked, and easily destroyed.

Three species, or sections, form the tree, or characteristic *boas*. They all attain nearly the same size, and do not differ much in their habits. They all frequent places which are humid, although some are more frequently found in water than the others. They are often found hanging, by the tip of the tail, from a tree, beside a pool or stream, waiting for their victims; and at other times

they are stretched along the water, in which state they bear some resemblance to floating sticks.

The time of their greatest activity is said to be during the subsidency of the floods, after the rains, a season at which the places which are left bare are peculiarly pestilent. It is the very rankness of these places which makes them so rich. What may be the use of such animals in the economy of nature, has not been ascertained; but we have reason to believe, that they perform a work for which they are adapted, and produce good, although that good may be unknown to us. 10

All the parts of nature act in concert with each other, and in harmony; and it is impossible to avoid seeing, that herein is the finger of God,—that here is wisdom of plan, and perfection of execution—above all human skill and power—above all human admiration. 15

CHAPTER II.

Story of a boa constrictor.

"It was at the latter end of the dry season, in the interminable wilds of South America," says Captain Singleton, "that we might be said to languish, as shrubs without water; but, even in this state of heat and drought, it is dangerous to remain without exercise; so, arming our legs and feet with buskins of cork, we took our rifles, and went into the swamps, to see what we should meet with in the way of game. 20

"All was arid desolation around us;—the brick-heated earth, the withered leaf, the dry reed, ready to take fire spontaneously, if the wind should rustle it before the rain shall have drenched, all were silent in the stilly air, and under the burning agency of the sun; and, to a casual observer, who sees the coming on in the extreme of one of its seasons, it seems as if desolation had set its seal there, never to be broken. 25 30

"We wandered forth, and my friend, the major, observed to me, that a change of weather would assuredly take place by the shooting of his corns. I had no corns, but I remarked that the air on the surface of the ground became wonderfully transparent, and that objects which were not distinct, began to appear, and sounds were heard, of which the air could not at other times have taken any cognizance. 35

"The small quantity of water which played between the earth and the nether air, seemed to have floated upward, as if the earth had been about to be deprived of even that unsatisfying draught; and the wail of the exhausted cascade came shrill and feebly through the forest, as if it were the prelude of its soon being silent for ever. 40

But we looked round;—far beyond rose the stupendous Andes, which seemed to look down in pity from their throne of eternal snows. There was a white cloud resting on some of their lower peaks. Humidity seemed in motion upwards, escaping to another
5 region. As the sun declined, the white cloud blackened, and the last rays of the sun streamed on it like molten gold.

“Twilight faded, and all was still;—the stars were surrounded with haloes, and the southern cross resembled a constellation of comets, but were soon lost in the darkness. Then the winds,
10 which had hitherto been more than usually still, began to blow; then the signal blasts, from every point of the compass in turn; yet, the leaves were, if possible, more still than ever, and it was pitchy dark.

“Now, however, there came a gleam of light, which enveloped
15 earth and air, and then the elements seemed to burst with a violent crash. The Andes, on their eastern slope, were one blaze of lightning, and one voice of thunder, amid which the fire of the volcano was not seen, nor the sound of the earthquake heard. Then were the windows of heaven opened, and, amid the glare of
20 the lightning and the bellowing of the thunder, the clouds, as it were, tumbled headlong, till the earth received one continued cascade from the sky.

“This was the arousing of all creatures—from the highest roosting birds, down to the serpents and the boas; and the sounds
25 of terror at the present danger, and of joy at the pleasure which this violent outbreak of nature is sure to bring, were blended together in so many notes and keys, that the creatures appeared to be as much in chaos as the elements; and there was such a wriggling, and crowding, and bursting, and dashing, and flying, as was both
30 astonishing and alarming. When the drenching rains had past, every ravine had its cascade; every hollow its lake; and each of the larger rivers rolled onwards as a sea, as if they had mustered their powers to give battle to the ocean. Such was the turn of the tropical season, which raises the great serpents of America from
35 their temporary inaction, and sends them high in the trees, or distant to their haunts, to begin the season of activity.

“Being prevented by the rains on the past evening, we took our excursion on the following day, amid an uproar of waters, and whirlpools, and fallen trees, and broken banks, such as I had never
40 seen. The whole of the earth seemed chaotic; and in the confusion, writhed many a snake of enormous length, and many a reptile recalled to a state of activity and vigor. As we went through the swamp on such passable places as were left us, we were astonished, as we approached a large tree, to see the enormous folds of a boa
45 constrictor, one of the largest ever seen, twisted about its trunk,

while its eager head was raised under its branches, as if ready to dart down upon us. We lost no time—our Mexican was at hand with his spear, and, with more courage than wisdom, made a lunge with it in the direction of the tree. He pierced the reptile's skin, who immediately dropped, and ran along the grass. The Mexican followed, but in a moment the serpent encompassed him; we heard the breaking of his ribs and bones, by the pressure of the creature,—his cry was short, but piercing,—we flew to his rescue, but too late;—I presented my double-barrelled gun, and fired; I, however, missed my aim,—the major drew closer, and, just as the boa raised his head, and opened his enormous jaws, fired at him. Slightly wounded, the monster again made for the dingle, with incredible speed, but, turning himself sharply round, came in the line of my rifle; I immediately gave him a second shot, which told well, for he rolled himself up, and threw himself into a number of hideous contortions, hissing and squeaking in a furious manner, while the blood spurted from his throat and nostrils. Determined not to lose him, we drew our swords, and made several slashes at such parts of his long carcass as were within our reach; but, tenacious of life, it was some time before we could thoroughly subdue him. At last, however, he lay without motion—he was dead.

“We now went to our poor Mexican, in whom life was also extinct. Upon making an examination of his body, we found his arms, shoulder-blades, and breast-bone had been crushed and pressed together with such force, that the upper part of his body was a shapeless lump; his face was black, and the blood poured from his mouth in large quantities. Indeed, his whole body presented a spectacle too horrible to be described.

“The same day we conveyed the body of the Mexican, and that of the boa, on a litter, to the fort; the former we buried in the north-west angle, engraving on one of the rampart stones the cause of his death. The latter, which was thirty-seven feet in length, I dissected, and brought home with me, and I have now presented it to the museum of my native town.”

(William Martin.) 35

3. THE WHALE.

CHAPTER I.

Description.

THE whale is not a fish: it belongs to the order of mammalia, *i. e.* animals which suckle their young; yet it swims in the sea,

has no legs to enable it to walk, and in external shape resembles the order of fishes. The blood of the whale is warm, like that of terrestrial animals,—its bones, its muscles, and nearly every part of its body, resemble those of the mammalia; and, lastly, it brings
5 forth its young, and suckles it with milk.

The tail-fin of the whale is very different, both in form and texture, from the fins of fishes. The muscles, by which it is put in motion, do not consist of a series of transverse flakes, laid one upon another, as you may observe in the herring, or other common
10 fish, but consist, as is found in the land animals, of longitudinal fibrous muscles, having distinct tendons, as the muscle of the arm; so that the animal has more range, variety, and power of motion in it. Fish cannot twist the tail about—but whales can bend it, and twist it, upwards, downwards, *laterally*, or *obliquely*.

15 The tail of the whale may be said to combine the energies of a tail and a pair of feet, formed into a single organ; and the length of spine, and number and power of muscles which belong to this organ, make it one of great efficiency. And as the proboscis of the elephant has, in reality, more mechanical power and
20 working than the fore paw of any beast, so the tail of a whale, high and unwieldy as it seems, is far more curious and efficient than many a pair of apparently well-formed feet.

It is well worthy of remark, both on account of the fact and the moral, that murderous animals are never what we may
25 call “armed:” their only weapons are their feeding ones; and when we come to any animal that has what may be termed a weapon for war only, whether that weapon be a horn, a spear, a spine, as seen in many fishes, it is never used but as a means of defence. So the tail of the whale being a most formidable weapon, espe-
30 cially that of the common Greenland whale, (*balaena*), is never used to attack, but to defend. There is something to be learned from this, my young friends.

Singular and powerful, however, as is this part of these animals, perhaps the swimming paws are even more curious.
35 Perhaps you have seen in some picture the skeleton of the wing of a bird; or you will have noticed the skeleton of the human arm. The bones of the whale’s fin are not quite the same in shape or in relative size as those of the human arm, but they are about the same in number, and hold the same
40 relative situations with regard to each other. There is a regular scapula, or blade-bone, a humerus, a radius, an ulna, as in the fore arm; and there are four fingers on the hand, which, however, act all in one plane; nevertheless, the whale is enabled to clasp any thing, particularly its young, which it carries in its arms, the
45 same as the *quadrumana* do upon land.

There is another thing to be *observed* in the whale. The brain is much larger in proportion, and much better developed, than the brain of fishes; its eyes have *expression*, which is not the case with any other fish. Besides this, though they have very small external openings of the ears, yet within they are well formed; and 5 it is proved that they have a distinct sense of hearing in the air, which seems not to be possessed by fishes, as the little bones of the ear, the use of which in any animal is not very well known, are very delicately formed.

If you look at the skeleton of the whale, and at its external 10 form, you would not think that one belonged to the other. When seen in its entire carcass, the whale seems to have scarcely any neck; but, if you look at the skeleton, you will find it to have the same number of vertebræ,—seven, which is common to all mam- 15 malia—to the giraffe and the camel, as well as to the porpoise and the whale.

The cuticle (the outer skin) of the whale is very like that on the sole of the human foot. It is, generally speaking, smooth, and often bright and resplendent, from the quantity of oil with which it is furnished. There are few hairs or scales, but it contains a 20 great number of pores. On the internal surface it is rough, and in the larger species it has the appearance of velvet. It is variously colored, generally dark, but sometimes spotted, and occasionally the animal is found piebald. Some species are half brown, half white; and others are striped with black or yellow. 25

The most curious part of the covering of the whale is, however, the *adipose tissue*, the cells of which are loaded with that immense quantity of fat, which makes the animal so eagerly sought after by the fishermen. This quantity of fat varies in amount and in consistency in almost all the species; but upon the body it always 30 consists, for the greater part, of elain, or soft fat, (blubber,) or of stearin, or hard fat, (spermaceti,) usually found in the head of the species called the spermaceti whale. In the common whale the soft fat (blubber or spick, as it is called by the sailors) is often from twenty inches to two feet in thickness. Neither the age of the whale, 35 nor the time it goes with young, has not been exactly determined.

The head of the common, or Greenland whale, is nearly one-third the size of its body, and requires separate consideration. All whales have not teeth; some have them in one jaw, and some in both. Those that have teeth do not use them as organs of 40 mastication. The food of the whale, which is general, is therefore taken whole into the stomach, the passage to which (the gullet) is of extremely small dimensions, being not larger than to admit the hand. The more voracious species have the gullet 45 wider.

The head of that species of whale, called the whalebone whale, is remarkably curious, as regards the apparatus, by means of which it captures its prey. This consists of a series of thin plates of a peculiar kind of fine, strong, fibrous, and elastic (common) whalebone, which are attached to the bones of the palate, and hang down, as you observe, in the whale's mouth, their lower points being covered with soft hair, to prevent their hurting the tongue. When the mouth is shut, these plates fold up towards the back of it. These principal laminae, or plates, consisting of several hundred, 10 which are often ten feet in length, have also other fibres extending between them, so as to form a complete strainer for the whale's mouth, which will not allow any food to pass into it except such as is proper for its support. These plates form, when the whale's mouth is open, a sort of funnel to the water. The water enters 15 in great quantity at the fore part of the mouth, but it meets with great resistance at the plates; by this means the small animals, which the water holds suspended, get entangled among the fringes, as in a net, and are made use of as food, while the water escapes by the sides of the mouth, towards the bottom of the jaw.

20 Some portion of the water, however, reaches an opening in the gullet, and is received into membranous sacs, or cells, adapted for the purpose, and situated in the volume of the animal's enormous head. These sacs are furnished with muscles, by means of which, when they become inconveniently distended, the water thus ejected 25 passes at once into another reservoir, into which the air-passage from the lungs open, by means of valves rising upwards. When these reservoirs have received the water, a strong expiration of air from the lungs raises them, and blows the water up in those jets, the appearance of which is so striking at sea.

30

CHAPTER II.

Whale fishery.

Whales are chiefly caught in the North Sea; the largest sort are found about Greenland or Spitzbergen. The whale fishery begins in May, and continues all June and July. The manner of 35 taking whales is as follows:—

When a ship reaches the place where the whales are found, anxious watch is kept from the mast-head, and the moment a fish is seen a signal is given, and the sailors leap into their boats, with the greatest expedition, and row away to the place where the fish 40 was observed. Several boats go in company. When they get near the whale they move cautiously and silently; and at last, when within a few yards of him, the harpooner throws his weapon with great force into the body of the fish.

Attached to the harpoon is a line, and as soon as the fish is struck they take care to give him rope enough, for he immediately dives or swims away at an extraordinary rate, and, unless he had a full supply of line, would inevitably sink the boat. This rope he draws with such violence, that if it were not well watered it would, 5 by friction, set the boat on fire.

The line fastened to the harpoon is many fathoms long, and is called the forerunner, and to this is often joined many other lines, of ninety or a hundred fathoms each; and when there are not enough in one long boat, they borrow from another. 10

The man at the helm observes which way the rope goes, and steers the boat accordingly, that it may run out at the bows, and not over the sides of the boat, as it would upset the boat, if not kept straight.

When the whale is struck, another boat rows before, and 15 observes which way the line leans; the men sometimes pull it. Should they feel it stiff, it is a sign that the whale still pulls in strength; but if it hang loose, and the boat lie equally high behind and before, upon the water, they pull it in gently, but take care to coil it, so that the whale may have it again if he recover strength. 20

Occasionally the whale is struck several times, when he dives as before. A whale, when struck, will often dive to the depth of eight hundred fathoms. The pressure of the vast body of water 25 upon him at this depth must be very great, certainly not less than two hundred thousand tons, so that, when the huge creature again rises, he is very much exhausted.

The boats continue to row towards him every time he either stops or rises to the surface of the water, and discharge their harpoons at him without mercy. Sometimes, during his convulsive agonies, he will, with one blow of his tail, send the boat and its 30 crew high in the air, and break it to pieces.

After repeated attacks the whale at last grows weak; he spouts up blood, mixed with water; the weaker he grows, the greater the power of the fishermen over him; and a few more strokes of their weapons are generally sufficient to dispatch him. 35

The prize is now instantly secured, by passing a rope through two holes cut in the tail, with a knife made for that purpose, and the rope is made fast to the bow of the boat; the fins are afterwards lashed together across the belly of the fish, which always floats, when dead, with that part uppermost. If more whales are 40 to be caught, the crew of the ship go in search of them, leaving the captured fish under a guard of one or two of their messmates.

When a whale is to be cut up, it is towed to the larboard side of the ship, and raised partly out of the water. The operation of cutting up then commences. The men, having fixed spurs in the 45

soles of their shoes, to enable them to stand on the slippery surface of the whale, and two boats, managed by one or two men in each, having taken their knives, spades, &c. the *harpooner*, under the direction of the specksioneer, cuts away the blubber in
 5 large oblong pieces, of from half a ton to a ton in weight; these are hoisted on deck by means of speck tackles. The boat-steerers now cut each mass into pieces of a cubic foot, which are pressed down into the hold.

When the flesh, or blubber, is all cut away, the whiskers, or
 10 whalebone, of the upper jaw is lopped off with an axe; after this the carcass is turned adrift, and devoured by the bears and sharks, who are very fond of it.

Sometimes the blubber is brought home, as soon as a sufficient quantity of it is obtained; at other times it is melted in large pots,
 15 and converted at once into oil. This process is a very disagreeable one, owing to the unpleasant smell, and oily nature of the operation.
 (William Martin.)

4. THE BREAD-FRUIT TREE.

This fruit is one of the great gifts of God to man. The tree
 20 which bears it is found on the continent of INDIA, and in the islands of the South Seas. It grows to a middling size in Malacca, and bears a round, rough-skinned fruit, as large as a child's head. The skin is, however, thin, and has a conical-shaped core, surrounded by a white, farinaceous, pith-like substance.

25 This inner pith, which is the eatable portion, resembles the soft part of a new roll, when roasted in thick slices, and becomes an important article of food. The fruit is ripe in December, and is dressed in various ways, according to the taste or convenience of the parties using it. The Dutch cooks fry it in oil.

30 Besides using it as an article of food, the natives of the South Sea islands apply different parts of the bread-fruit tree to various purposes. The wood is used in boat building, and a cloth is made of the inner bark; the male catkins serve for tinder; the leaves for wrapping up food, and for wiping hands, instead of towels;
 35 and the juice, for making cement for filling up the cracks of water vessels. There are several varieties of the bread-fruit; the principal of these is one without seed.

Both the bread-fruit and the yam are great blessings to the countries in which they grow. The latter, (*dioscorea sativa*), the
 40 common yam, is largely cultivated in the West Indies, where it serves for food to the negroes, who eat it instead of bread. It yields large thick tubers, a foot broad, black on the outside, but,

when boiled, remarkably white and mealy within, and very little inferior to the best potato.

The yam is extensively cultivated both in the East and West Indies, and is used for ship's stores, as it will keep well for several months. Some of those, most improved by cultivation, 5 yield tubers which are frequently three feet long, and weigh thirty pounds.

All the edible species and varieties of this root are cultivated like the common potato, but they arrive much sooner at maturity, being planted in August, and fit to dig up in November. 10

There is a very interesting narrative connected with the bread-fruit. Upon its discovery by Captain Cook in the South Sea islands, it was represented to the British government that the introduction of it to the West Indies would be of great benefit to the inhabitants, particularly to the poor slaves, as an article of 15 food; accordingly, in the year 1787, a vessel was fitted out in the most commodious manner for the reception of the plants, and placed under the command of Lieutenant Bligh, who had previously sailed with Captain Cook round the world.

There were, besides the captain, thirty-four persons, and also 20 two intelligent botanists, who went for the purpose of collecting specimens of various plants in the South Sea islands, and of taking care of bread-fruit cuttings during the voyage.

The *Bounty* sailed from Spithead on the 23rd of December, and, after meeting with a severe storm, put into Teneriffe, in order 25 to refit. From this place she sailed on the 10th of January, 1788, and struggled for nearly a month with tempestuous weather. She was then obliged to bear away for the Cape of Good Hope; but, at last, came to anchor in Matavai Bay, in the island of Otaheite.

The natives soon came aboard, some with pigs, as presents, 30 and some with plantain trees, as tokens of peace. Captain Bligh went on shore, and was received with joy by the poor savages, who would insist upon clothing him in the Otaheitean fashion, and showed him every mark of respect and friendship.

The *Bounty* staid four months at Matavai, and received on 35 board upwards of one thousand plants. She then made sail to another island, called Annamooka, where the captain and crew carried on a brisk trade with the natives in yams, plantains, hogs, fruits, and other productions. The ship now steered away, bidding an affectionate farewell to the kind and simple-hearted islanders. 40

All things seemed now prosperous; but, just as the captain was congratulating himself with the success of his mission, he was early one morning awakened by Fletcher and Christian, one of the mates, with three others, who tied his hands behind his back, and threatened him with instant death, if he spoke or made the least 45

resistance. They then pulled him out of bed, forced him on deck, and placed him under a guard.

Christian, who was the leader of the mutiny, now ordered the boatswain to hoist the launch out, and Captain Bligh, with 5 nineteen persons, were forced into it. The mutineers threw into it a few bags of bread, a joint or two of pork, a little wine, spirits, and water, and left its crew out in the open sea to shift for themselves, and get back to England as they could.

The captain first tried to land on some of the islands nearest 10 to him, but they were inhabited by an unfriendly people; one of his men was murdered in making the attempt, and the whole crew narrowly escaped. He then bore away for Timor, a distance of twelve hundred leagues, across an ocean whose navigation was scarcely known, exposed both to the dangers of the deep and to 15 famine, their little store only allowing them to serve out *one ounce of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water, a day.*

But the captain and his crew passed through still greater privations. They were obliged, in one storm, to throw overboard all the superfluous clothes, spare sails, and ropes. They en- 20 countered several tempests; — sometimes the sea broke over the boat, and they were seldom dry. The allowance of food was gradually reduced, and that of rum withheld. One bird they caught, about the size of a pigeon, was divided into eighteen portions, and greedily devoured; but at last, in spite of all their misery, 25 and after a variety of adventures and privations, almost unexampled, on the 11th of June, Captain Bligh announced to his famished crew the pleasing intelligence, that, by observation of longitude, he found they had passed the meridian of the eastern part of Timor. At day-break on the following morning a cultivated coast, 30 finely wooded, appeared before them. This was Timor, an island north of New Holland.

Thus in a voyage of forty-one days, through an almost unknown sea, with the smallest stock of provisions, did this small company run a distance of three thousand six hundred and eight- 35 teen miles, without the loss of a single individual. And to what do you suppose this was owing? *Why, to order being preserved among the crew; by their implicit obedience to their superior; by Christian resignation; by fortitude, and courage, and patience.*

These are all *moral qualities*, and we may learn a lesson 40 from this narrative of the highest importance to us; namely, that we have powers within us, which, if properly used, are superior to all outward circumstances, and which will enable us to subdue many *evils*. Indeed, what is called evil, we must look upon rather as *wholesome excitements to our minds*, than as real misfortunes. 45 Without the *trials of life* we should be unable to have a due

relish for its pleasures; just as without cold we should know nothing of the comfort of heat, or without darkness be unable duly to appreciate the benefit of light.

Captain Bligh soon after came to England safe and sound, and a vessel was fitted out, in search of the mutineers. Several 5 were taken, brought to England, and executed. From their statement it appeared that quarrels soon sprung up among them after the departure of their captain, and several suffered violent deaths, among whom was Christian, the instigator of the mutiny.

For a number of years after, nothing was heard of the re- 10 mainder of the crew; but, at length, two British vessels chanced to fall in with Pitcairn's Island, and were astonished to find it inhabited; and, more so, to find that the inhabitants spoke the English language.

At last a fine gray-headed old man came on board and con- 15 fessed himself to be one of the mutineers, by name, John Adams. His little colony consisted of forty-six persons, who had a pretty little village. They had cultivated the ground, and formed it after the English fashion. They were also peaceable, loving, and happy. Why was this? you will say. — John Adams had found out that 20 good government and religion were necessary; he had instructed his community in their duty to God and man, and taught them obedience to a code of simple but efficient laws. (*William Martin.*)

5. AURORA BOREALIS.

Winter, in our temperate regions, exhibits very few phenomena 25 in comparison with what is visible in the arctic circle. The poet Thomson, therefore, has judiciously enriched his noble conclusion of *the seasons* with all the circumstances of picturesque beauty, to terrific grandeur, that could be borrowed from scenes far remote from us. The famished troops of wolves pouring from the Alps; 30 the mountains of snow rolling down the precipices of the same country; the dreary plains over which the Laplander urges his reindeer; the wonders of the icy sea; and volcanoes flaming through a waste of snow, are objects selected with the greatest propriety from all that Nature presents most singular and striking in the 35 various domains of boreal cold and desolation.

As we advance into the arctic regions, we find them distinguished by more beautiful appearances of that phenomenon which we call the *aurora borealis*. In Shetland these northern lights, which the natives call *merry-dancers*, a name by which they are 40 known to the common people even in the south of England, are the constant attendants of the clear evenings, and prove a great relief

amid the gloom of the long winter nights. They commonly appear at twilight, near the horizon, of a dim colour, approaching to yellow: sometimes continuing in that state for several hours, without any apparent motion; after which they break out into streams of stronger
 5 light, spreading into columns, altering into ten thousand different shapes, varying their colours from all the tints of yellow to the most obscure russet, and sometimes becoming on a sudden extinct. We, who see only the extremities of this northern phenomenon, can form but a faint idea of its splendour and its coruscations.

10 In Siberia there is one species of the *aurora borealis*, which regularly appears between the north-east and east, like a luminous rainbow with numberless colours of light radiating from it. Beneath the arch is a veil of darkness, through which the stars appear with some brilliancy. — There is another kind, which begins with certain
 15 insulated rays from the north, and others from the north-east: these augment by degrees, till they fill the whole concavity of the sky, and form an assemblage of colours inconceivably rich and magnificent: but the attendant circumstances strike the beholders with horror; for they crackle, sparkle, hiss, make a whistling sound,
 20 and a noise even equal to that of artificial fire-works. The idea of an electrical cause is strongly impressed by these circumstances. The natives on this occasion say it is a troop of men in the clouds furiously mad, who are passing by. Every animal is struck with fear. Even the dogs of the hunters are seized with such dread,
 25 that they will fall on the ground, and remain immoveable till the cause is over.

In Hudson's Bay, the firmament in winter has its peculiar beauties. The night is enlivened by the *aurora borealis* spreading its thousand lights and glowing colours over the sky, not to be
 30 dimmed even by the splendour of the full moon; and the stars are of a fiery redness; while, in the day-time, mock suns are frequently visible, richly tinged with all the hues of the rainbow.
 (David Blair.)

6. THE GREAT EARTHQUAKE AT LISBON.

CHAPTER I.

35 Never was a finer morning seen than the 1st of November, 1755. The sun shone in his full lustre, and the whole face of the sky was perfectly serene and clear. Not the least signal or warning was afforded of that approaching event, which, in a few
 40 minutes, rendered the flourishing, opulent, and populous city of Lisbon, a scene of general horror and desolation.

On the morning of that fatal day, between the hours of nine and ten, I was, sitting in my apartment, and had just finished a

letter, when the table I was writing on began to tremble with a gentle motion; which surprised me, as I could not perceive a breath of wind stirring. While I was reflecting on what could be the cause, the whole house began to shake from the very foundation, which at first I imputed to the rattling of coaches in the streets; 5 but on listening more attentively, I found it was owing to a frightful noise under-ground, resembling the rumbling of distant thunder. All this passed in less than a minute. I now began to be alarmed, as it occurred to me, that the noise might possibly be the presage of an approaching earthquake. 10

I threw down my pen, and started up on my feet, remaining for a moment in suspense, whether I should stay in the apartment, or run into the street; but in a moment I was roused from my dream, being stunned with a most horrid crash, as though every edifice in the city had tumbled down at once. The house I was 15 in shook with such violence, that the upper stories immediately fell in; and though my apartment (which was the first floor) did not immediately share the same fate, yet every thing was thrown out of its place, and it was with difficulty I kept my feet.

I expected nothing less than to be crushed to death; as the 20 walls continued rocking to and fro in the most frightful manner, and opening in several places: large stones fell down on every side from the cracks, and the ends of most of the rafters started at the same time from the wall. The sky in a moment became so gloomy that I could distinguish no particular object. It was 25 an Egyptian darkness, such as might be felt; owing to the prodigious clouds of dust and lime, raised from so violent a concussion, and from the overthrow of so many buildings, and, as some reported, from sulphurous exhalations. However, it is certain that I found myself almost choked for nearly ten minutes. 30

As soon as the gloom began to disperse, and the violence of the shock to abate, the first object I perceived in my room was a woman sitting on the floor, with an infant in her arms, covered with dust, pale and trembling. I asked her how she came there; but her consternation was so great that she could give me no 35 account. She asked me, in the utmost agony, if I did not think the world was at an end: at the same time she complained of being choked, and begged I would procure her a little drink. I told her she must not think of quenching her thirst, but of saving her life; as the house was just falling on our heads, and a second shock 40 would certainly bury us.

I hurried down stairs, the woman with me, holding by my arm, and made directly to that end of the street which opens to the river Tagus: but finding the passage entirely blocked up by the fallen houses, I turned back; having helped the woman over 45

a vast heap of ruins, with no small hazard to my own life. Just as we were going into the street, there was one part which I could not climb over without the assistance of my hands as well as feet: I therefore desired her to let go her hold, which she did, remaining
5 two or three feet behind me, and at this moment there fell a vast stone from a tottering wall, and crushed both her and the child in pieces!

CHAPTER II.

I had now a long narrow street to pass, in which the houses
10 on each side were four or five stories high, all very old; and the greater part already thrown down, or continually falling, and threatening the passengers with death at every step; numbers of whom lay killed before me, or, what was more deplorable, so bruised and wounded, that they could not move so as to escape
15 the destruction which impended over them.

As self-preservation, however, is the first law of nature, I proceeded on as fast as I could, and having got clear of the narrow street, I found myself in safety in the large open space before St. Paul's church, which had been thrown down a few minutes before,
20 and had buried a great part of a numerous congregation! Here I stood some time, considering what I should do; but not thinking myself safe, I climbed over the ruins of the west end of the church, to get to the river-side; that I might be removed as far as possible from the tottering houses, in the dreaded event of a second shock.
25 This with some difficulty I accomplished; and by the river-side I found a prodigious concourse of both sexes, and of all ranks and conditions. All these, whom their mutual dangers had here assembled as to a place of safety, were on their knees at prayers, with the terrors of death in their countenances; every one striking
30 his breast, and crying out incessantly to Heaven for mercy and protection.

In the midst of our devotions, the second great shock came with little less violence than the first; and it completed the ruin of those buildings which had already been much shattered. The
35 consternation now became so universal, that shrieks and cries could be distinctly heard from a considerable distance: at the same time we heard the fall of the parish-church, whereby many were killed on the spot. The force of this shock was so great, that I could scarcely support myself on my knees; and it was attended with
40 some circumstances still more dreadful than the former.

On a sudden I heard a general cry, "The sea is coming in; we shall all be lost." Upon this, turning my eyes towards the river Tagus, which in that place is nearly four miles broad, I per-

ceived it heaving and swelling in a most unaccountable manner, for no wind was stirring. In an instant there appeared, at a small distance, a large body of water, rising like a mountain. It approached foaming and roaming; and rushed toward the shore with such rapidity, that we all ran for our lives as fast as possible. Many 5 were actually swept away; for my own part I had a narrow escape; and should certainly have been lost, had I not grasped a large beam which lay on the ground, till the water returned again to its channel, which it did almost at the same instant with equal rapidity.

CHAPTER III.

10

As there now appeared at least as much danger from the sea as the land, I scarcely knew whither to retire for safety: I therefore took a sudden resolution to return back to the area of St. Paul's. Here I stood some time, and observed the ships tumbling and tossing about, as in a violent storm. Some had broken their 15 cables, and were carried to the other side of the Tagus: others were whirled round with incredible swiftness: several large boats were turned keel upwards: and all this without any wind. It was at this moment, that the new quay, built of rough marble, was entirely swallowed up, with all the people on it, who had fled 20 there for safety, and had reason to consider themselves out of danger. At the same time a great number of boats and small vessels, which were anchored near it, all full of people (who had retired to them for the same purpose), were all swallowed up as in a whirlpool, and never more appeared. 25

I did not see this last dreadful incident with my own eyes, as it occurred a quarter of a mile from the spot where I was: but I had the account from several masters of ships, who were anchored near the quay, and who saw the whole catastrophe. One of them informed me, that during the second shock he per- 30 ceived the whole city waving backward and forward, like the sea when the wind first begins to rise; and that the agitation of the earth was so great, even under the river, that it threw up his large anchor from the mooring, which seemed to swim on the surface of the water: that immediately on this extraordinary 35 concussion, the river rose at once near twenty feet, and in a moment subsided: at which instant he saw the quay, with the immense concourse of people upon it, sink down; and at the same time the boats and vessels that were near it were also drawn into the cavity, which instantly closed, inasmuch as no sign of a wreck 40 was ever afterwards seen. I went myself in a few days, but could not find even the ruins of a place where I had taken so many

agreeable walks: I found it all deep water, and in some parts so deep as scarcely to be fathomed.

I had not been long in the area of St. Paul's church-yard, when I felt the third shock; at which, though less violent than
5 the two former, the sea rushed in again, but retired in like manner. I took notice that the waters retired so impetuously, as to leave some vessels quite dry, which rode in seven fathom water.

Perhaps you may think the subject concluded; but, alas! the horrors of this day are sufficient to fill a volume. As soon as it
10 grew dark, in the evening another scene presented itself, little less shocking than those already described. The whole city appeared in a blaze, so bright that I could see to read. It was, without exaggeration, on fire in a hundred different places at once; and it continued burning for six days together, without intermission, or
15 without the least attempt being made to stop its progress, such were the distress and consternation of the survivors.

I could never learn that this terrible fire was owing to any subterraneous eruption. The first of November being All Saints' day, every altar and every church and chapel (some of them having
20 more than twenty) was illuminated with a number of wax-tapers and lamps; which setting fire to the curtains and timber-work that fell with the shock, the conflagration soon spread in the neighbouring houses. The fire, in consequence, destroyed the whole city, at least every thing that was grand or valuable.

The number of persons that perished, including those who
25 were burnt, or who were afterwards crushed to death while digging in the ruins, is supposed, on the lowest calculation, to have amounted to more than sixty thousand. This extensive and opulent city is now nothing but a vast heap of ruins; the rich and poor
30 are at present upon a level; and some thousands of families who but the day before had been easy in their circumstances, were this day scattered in the fields, in want of every convenience, while none were able to relieve them. *(David Blair.)*

7. THE SEA.

CHAPTER I.

35 The ocean rolling its surges from clime to clime, is the most august object under the whole heaven. It is a spectacle of magnificence and terror, which fills the mind, and amazes the imagination.

Let us examine a single drop of water, only so much as will
40 adhere to the point of a needle. In this speck an eminent philosopher computes no less than thirteen thousand globules. And if

so many exist in so small a space, how many must there be in the unmeasured extent of the ocean!

It is remarkable, that sand is a more effectual barrier against the sea than rock; accordingly the sea is continually gaining upon a rocky shore, and losing upon a sandy shore, unless where it sets in with an eddy. Thus it has been gaining from age to age upon the isle of Portland, and the Land's-end in Cornwall; undermining, throwing down, and swallowing up one huge rock after another. Meantime the sandy shores, both on our southern and western coasts, gain continually upon the sea. 5 10

Beneath the boundary of rocks frequently lies a smooth level sand, almost as firm as a well-compacted causeway; insomuch that the tread of a horse scarcely impresses it, and the waters never penetrate it. Without this wise contrivance, the searching waves would insinuate into the heart of the earth; and the earth itself would in some places be hollow as a honey-comb, in others bibulous as a sponge. 15

Nor are the regions of the ocean without their proper inhabitants, clothed in exact conformity to the clime; not in swelling wool or buoyant feathers, but with as much compactness and as little superfluity as possible. They are clad, or rather sheathed, in scales which adhere close, and are laid in a kind of natural oil; than which nothing can be more light, and at the same time nothing more solid. It hinders the fluid from penetrating their flesh; it prevents the cold from chilling their blood; and enables them to make their way through the waters with the utmost facility. And they have each an air bladder, a curious instrument, by expanding or compressing which they rise to what height or sink to what depth they please. 20 25

It is impossible to enumerate the variety of the scaly herds. Among them are animals of monstrous shapes and amazing qualities. The upper jaw of the sword-fish is lengthened into a strong and sharp sword, with which, though he is not above sixteen feet long, he scruples not to engage the whale himself. The sun-fish is one round mass of flesh; only it has two fins, which act the part of oars. The polypus, with its numerous feet and claws, seems fitted only to crawl: yet an excrescence rising on the back enables it to steer a steady course through the waves. The shell of the nautilus forms a kind of boat, and he unfurls a membrane to the wind for a sail. He extends also two arms, with which, as with oars, he rows himself along. When he is disposed to dive, he strikes sail, and at once sinks to the bottom. When the weather is calm, he mounts again, and performs his voyage without either chart or compass. 30 35 40

Some, lodged in their shells, seem to have no higher employ than to imbibe nutriment, and are almost rooted to the rocks on 45

which they lie; while others shoot along the yielding flood, and range the spacious regions of the deep. How various is their figure! The shells of some seem to be the rude productions of chance rather than of skill and design; yet even in these we find the
 5 nicest dispositions. Uncouth as they appear, they are exactly suited to the exigencies of their respective tenants. The structure of others is all symmetry and elegance, and no enamel can be compared to their polish.

The mackarel, herring, and various other kinds, throng our
 10 creeks and bays; while those of enormous size and appearance, which would fright the valuable fish from our coasts, are kept in the abysses of the ocean; as wild beasts, compelled by the same over-ruling Power, hide themselves in the recesses of the forest.

CHAPTER II.

15 As the natives of the deep are continually obliged to devour one another for necessary subsistence, without extraordinary recruits the whole watery race must soon be totally extinct. Were they to bring forth no more at a birth than land-animals, the increase would be far too small for the consumption. The weaker species
 20 would soon be destroyed by the stronger, and the stronger themselves must soon after perish for want of food. Therefore, to supply millions of animals with subsistence, they spawn not by scores, but by millions. A single female produces a nation. The great naturalist, Mr. Leuwenboeck, counted in an ordinary cod 9,384,000
 25 eggs. By this amazing expedient, constant reparation is made proportionable to the immense havoc.

And as the sea abounds with animal inhabitants, so it does also with vegetable productions; some soft as wool, others hard as stone. Some rise like a leafless shrub; some are expanded in the
 30 form of a net; some grow with their heads hanging downwards, and seem rather suspended than springing from the juttings of the rocks.

The herbs and trees on the dry land are fed by the juices that permeate the soil, and float in the air. For this purpose they
 35 are furnished with leaves to collect the one, and with roots to attract the other. Whereas the sea-plants, having sufficient nourishment in the circumambient waters, have no need to detach roots into the ground, or forage the earth for sustenance. Instead, therefore, of penetrating, they are but just tacked to the bottom; and
 40 adhere to some solid substance only with such a tenacity as may secure them from being tost to and fro by the agitation of the waves.

The sea is that grand reservoir which supplies the earth with

its fertility; and the air and sun are the mighty engines, which work without intermission, to raise the water from this inexhaustible cistern. The clouds, as aqueducts, convey the genial stores along the atmosphere, and distribute them in seasonable and regular proportions through all the regions of the globe. 5

With what difficulty do we extract a drop of perfectly sweet water from this vast pit of brine! Yet the sun draws off every moment millions of tons in vaporous exhalations, which, being securely lodged in the clouds, are sent abroad sweetened and refined, without the least brackish tincture or bituminous sediment; sent 10 forth upon the wings of the winds to distil in dews and rains, to ooze in fountains, to trickle along in rivulets, to roll from the sides of mountains, to flow in copious streams amid burning deserts and through populous kingdoms, in order to refresh and fertilise, to beautify and enrich, every soil in the clime. 15

How amazing are the goodness and power of the world's adorable Maker, in distributing so largely what is so extensively beneficial! that water, without which we can scarce perform any business, or enjoy any comfort, should stream by our houses, should come from the ends of the earth, from the extremities of 20 the ocean to serve us! that this boundless mass of fluid salt, so intolerably nauseous to the taste, should be the original spring that quenches the thirst both of man and every other species of animals! Doubtless the power by which this is effected can make all things work together for our good. (Monthly Magazine.) 25

8. THE TIDES.

The tides of the sea have ever been considered among the most wonderful phenomena of Nature. The conjectures of ancient philosophers concerning them were equally various, visionary, and wild. But the moderns have discovered that the phenomena of 30 the tides are to be accounted for upon the principle of action and re-action, created by the common rotation of fixed earth and oscillating fluids, the former reacting on the latter, and producing the oscillations of the waters called tides.

The waters of the great oceans are observed to oscillate in 35 mass backward and forward, twice in every twenty-four hours. Their rate of motion in performing this oscillation is, in different seas, from two to five miles per hour; and the accumulation and retreat of the waters on the shores of seas and rivers occasion a rise and fall of from five to forty feet according to local circum- 40 stances, which rises and falls are called *Tides*. It is found also

that the times of high and low water vary every day about fifty minutes, or the difference of time in which the Moon arrives on successive days at the meridian of the place.

There appears therefore to be some connection between the motions of the waters of the sea, and the Motion of the Moon. This connection has been ascribed to a supposed power called attraction or gravitation, acting in some unknown manner between remote bodies; but it is now found to be a necessary effect of the reciprocal motions of the Earth and Moon, created by the reactions of each on the intervening medium of space.

The Moon appears to perform a monthly revolution about the Earth; but in truth the Moon does not revolve around the centre of the Earth, but round a point, fulcrum, or centre of the two masses of the Earth and Moon; and around this centre the Earth revolves in the same time, or 27 days, while it also revolves every day around its own axis.

The Earth's motion, then, around the centre of the two masses, while it turns on its own axis, necessarily gives a coincident swing, or centrifugal force, to the moveable waters; and as this force has constant reference to the position of the Moon on the opposite side of their common centre of motion, it will vary its position on the Earth accordingly, or about 50 minutes per day, because the Moon performs its entire revolution in 27 days, and therefore advances the 27th part of 24 hours.

The action or impulse of the Sun on the Earth and Moon being equal at the quarters, the Earth's diurnal motion and its lunar motion then coincide, and the swing from the latter being the least, the tides then become the lowest or *neap*; but as the two bodies approach the conjunction, or new, or full Moon, the greatest difference in the forces takes place, and then the oscillation of the seas is the greatest, and the rise is called a *spring* tide.

The rise and fall is however not the same on all coasts, because the same bulk of waters will rise higher in contracted channels than in open ones, and because among rocks and islands the effect is often increased by the meeting of the currents of tides in opposite directions.

In effect the tides serve to regulate and give steadiness to the motions of the Earth, like the balance-wheel of any machine, and are a further proof of the sublime contrivance which arranged the world.

(David Blair.)

9. THE WINDS.

The earth on which we live is every where surrounded by a fine invisible fluid, which extends to several miles above its sur-

face, and is called *air*. It is found by experiments, that a small quantity of air is capable of being expanded so as to fill a very large space, or of being compressed into a much smaller compass than it occupied before. The general cause of the expansion of the air is heat; that of its compression, cold. Hence, if any part 5 of the air or atmosphere receive a greater degree of cold or heat than it had before, its parts will be put in motion, and be expanded or compressed. But when air is put in motion, we call it wind in general; and a breeze, gale, or storm, according to the quickness or velocity of that motion. 10

Winds, therefore, which are commonly considered as things extremely variable and uncertain, depend on a general cause, and act with more or less uniformity in proportion as the action of this cause is more or less constant. It is found, by observations made at sea, that, from thirty degrees north latitude to thirty degrees 15 south, there is a constant east wind throughout the year, blowing on the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, and called the *trade wind*. This is occasioned by the action of the sun, which, in moving from east to west, heats, and consequently expands, the air immediately under him; and by this means a stream or tide of air always 20 accompanies him in his course, and occasions a perpetual east wind within these limits. This general cause, however, is modified by a number of particulars, the detail of which would be too tedious and complicated here.

The winds called the *tropical winds*, which blow from some 25 particular point of the compass without much variation, are of three kinds: 1. The *general trade winds*, which extend to nearly thirty degrees of latitude on each side of the equator in the Atlantic, Ethiopic, and Pacific seas. 2. The *monsoons*, or shifting trade winds, which blow six months in the opposite. These are mostly 30 in the Indian or Eastern Ocean, and do not extend above two hundred leagues from the land. Their change is at the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, and is accompanied with terrible storms of thunder, lightning, and rain. 3. The *sea and land breezes*, which are another kind of periodical winds, that blow from the land from 35 midnight to noon, and from the sea from about noon till midnight; these, however, do not extend above two or three leagues from shore.

Near the coast of Guinea, in Africa, the wind blows nearly always from the west, south-west, or south. On the coast of Peru, in South America, it blows constantly from the south-west. Beyond 40 the latitude of thirty north and south, the winds, as we daily perceive in Great Britain, are more variable, though they blow oftener from the west than any other point. Between the fourth and tenth degrees of north latitude, and between the longitude of Cape Verd Islands, there is a tract of sea condemned to perpetual 45

calms, attended with terrible thunder and lightning, and such rains, that this sea has acquired the name of *the Rains*. (David Blair.)

10. PEARL-FISHING.

There are two seasons for pearl fishing; the first is in March
5 and April, and the last in August and September; and the more
rain there falls in the year, the more plentiful these fisheries are.
At the beginning of the season there are sometimes two hundred
and fifty barks on the banks; the larger barks have two divers;
and the smaller one each. As soon as the barks arrive at the
10 place where the fish lie, and have cast anchor, each diver binds a
stone six inches thick and a foot long, under his body; which
serves him as ballast, prevents his being driven away by the motion
of the water, and enables him to walk more steadily under the
waves. They also tie another very heavy to one foot, by which
15 they are speedily sent to the bottom of the sea; and as the oysters
are usually firmly fastened to the rocks, they arm their hands with
leathern mittens, to prevent their being bruised in pulling the oysters
violently off; but this is sometimes performed with an iron rake.
Lastly, each diver carries down with him a large net in the manner
20 of a sack, tied to his neck by a long cord, the other end of which
is fastened to the side of the bark. This net is to hold the oysters
gathered from the rock, and the cord is to pull up the diver when
his bag is full, or when he wants air.

Thus equipped, he sometimes precipitates himself sixty feet
25 under water; and as he has no time to lose, he no sooner arrives
at the bottom, than he begins to run from side to side, tearing
up all the oysters he meets with, and putting them with the utmost
expedition into his net.

At whatever depth the divers are, the light is so great that
30 they easily see all that passes in the sea, and sometimes, to their
great consternation, perceive the approach of enormous fishes, to
which their dexterity in muddying the water does not always save
them from becoming a prey: and of all the dangers attending the
fishery, this is the greatest and the most usual.

35 The best divers will keep under water near half an hour, and
the least skilful do not stay less than a quarter. During all this
time they hold their breath, which they acquire the power of doing
by long practice. When they want relief, they pull the rope to
which the bag is fastened, and hold fast by it with both hands;
40 on which those in the bark draw them up into the air, and unload
them of their oysters, amounting sometimes to five hundred.

(David Blair.)

11. OBSERVATIONS OF ONE WHO WAS BORN BLIND, AND OBTAINED HIS SIGHT BY COUCHING.

He thought scarlet the most beautiful of all colours; of the rest, the most gay were the most pleasing; but the first time he saw black he was very uneasy, and the sight of a negro woman 5 some months after struck him with horror.

When he first obtained his sight, he was so far from having any idea about distance, that he thought all objects touched his eyes, and none were so agreeable as those which were smooth and regular, but he could form no opinion as to what it was that 10 pleased him.

Upon being told the names of things, the form of which he before knew from feeling, he would carefully observe them, that he might know them again; and he often complained, "that he learned to know, again to forget, a thousand things in a day." 15

He was much surprised that the persons and things which from feeling he had liked best, did not always appear the most agreeable to his sight; and he evidently expected that those persons whom he most loved, would appear most beautiful, and that those things which were most agreeable to taste, should be so 20 to vision.

It was not till two months after he was couched, he discovered that pictures merely represented solid bodies, and even then when he found that those parts which, from their shades appeared round and uneven, felt flat like the other parts, he was amazed, 25 and asked which was "the lying sense," the touch or vision. Being shown his father's likeness, in a locket, he acknowledged the resemblance, and was much surprised that a large face could be expressed in so little room, saying, it seemed as impossible to him "as to put a bushel of any thing into a pint measure." 30

At first he could bear very little light, and he thought the things he saw extremely large; upon seeing larger objects, and comparing them with the former, he remarked a difference in size between them; but he was unable to imagine any dimensions beyond those immediately in view; and though he knew the room he was 35 in was only a part of the house, yet he could not conceive that the whole house could look bigger than the room did.

He said his principal reason for submitting to be couched was, "that he might be able to read and write." He did not suppose that he could have more pleasure in walking abroad than in the garden, 40 which he could do readily and with safety; and added, that even blindness had this advantage, that he could go anywhere in the dark, much better than those who could see.

Every new object was, he said, a new delight to him; and being taken to Epsom Downs, and observing an extended prospect, he was greatly pleased, and called it "a new kind of feeling."

(*Monthly Magazine.*)

12. THE MINES OF ENGLAND.

CHAPTER I.

Coal-Mines.

English coal is of great repute even in foreign countries, and forms a considerable article of commerce. The principal of them are at and near Newcastle upon-Tyne.

The Northumbrian coal-mines are very subject to fire-damps by which men have often been killed, maimed, or burnt. Some have been blown up at the mouth of the works; and the whole of the works have often been known to be shattered to pieces and completely destroyed. The fire-damp is a vapour, which, being touched by the workmen's candles, presently takes fire, giving a report like a gun, and producing all the effects of lightning. To prevent these mischiefs, the miners now use no candles in their work, but the safety lamp, invented by Sir H. Davy, which gives light through masses of fine wire without the possibility of igniting the vapour.

From the mines of Kingswood in Gloucestershire, the city of Bristol is supplied with coals; but no part of England affords such prodigious quantities of this serviceable mineral as the pits in Northumberland and Durham. The coals from Newcastle are sent by sea to all parts of England and Scotland, and also so Holland, to France and Flanders. The city of London alone is reckoned to consume annually at least 1,000,000 chaldrons containing six-and-thirty bushels; yet it is calculated that they will not be exhausted in 300 years.

Whitehaven is the second most eminent port in England for its coal-trade. From hence the city of Dublin and all the towns of Ireland on the coast, as well as some parts of Scotland, and the Isle of Man, are supplied. *Cannel*, or *candle-coal*, which is found in some of the northern counties, particularly in Lancashire, is light and glossy; cleaves into thin flakes, and, when kindled, yields a continual blaze till it is consumed to ashes. Its hardness renders it capable of a polish; and standishes, cups, candlesticks, etc. are frequently made of it.

There is a kind of coal dug up in Staffordshire, called *peacock coal*; because, when turned to the light, it shows all the colours in the peacock's train. Another kind called *wood coal*, from its

colour and softness, which indicate that it has recently been converted from wood into coal, is dug up in Derbyshire.

The business of a miner was lately rendered dangerous by explosions of gas; but it being discovered that metal wire stops the passage of flame, *safety lamps* have been constructed which give light without danger of explosion.

CHAPTER II.

The Lead-Mines in Somersetshire.

The lead-mines of the Mendip hills in Somersetshire afford vast quantities of this useful metal. The ore sometimes runs in veins, is at others dispersed in banks, and often lies between rocks. Some of it is hard, and some soft. There is a spar about it which is white, transparent, and brittle, like glass; and another substance called crootes, which is a white stone, soft, mealy, and marled with ore. That ore is best which is clearest and heaviest, and of which thirty-six hundred weight will yield a ton of lead. The soil about these mines is red and stony; and the stones that are washed by the brooks and springs are ponderous, and of a reddish colour.

The miners work by the light of candles, which, if they have enough, will last three or four hours. They seldom meet with damp, but water occasionally breaks in upon them: in which case they drive an *adit*, or new passage, upon a level till it is dry. To empty the water out of the mines, they use leathern bags that will each hold eight or nine gallons, which are drawn up to the top by ropes and pulleys.

The tools with which they work are so hardened as to make an impression upon the heap of an anvil; and yet they often break in an hour's time. When they meet with a black stone, they reckon it a bad sign, as leading to a rock that will hinder their works; the nearness of which is also indicated by a short brittle clay. Having got the ore of the mine, they beat it small, wash it in a running stream, and sift it in iron sieves. Then upon a hearth, or furnace, they lay a quantity of oaken gads, which they light with charcoal, and blow with bellows worked by men's feet. When the fire-plate is hot, they throw the ore on the wood, which melts down into the furnace, whence they take it out with an iron ladle, and cast it upon sand into what form they please. The smoke of the lead is a very great annoyance to the workmen, and subjects them to a mortal disease, as it does the cattle that are suffered to graze thereabout. The adjacent trees also have their tops burnt, and their leaves and bark discoloured.

CHAPTER III.

The Copper-Mines of Cornwall.

No part of Europe affords richer copper than Cornwall, though the mines have not been worked with considerable advantage much more than ninety years. It is there discovered in a vast variety of ores, the most common of which is of a yellow brass-colour; but there are also red, grey, black, blue, green, and peacock ore; the latter yields but little copper; the grey contains more metal than the yellow, and the red more than the grey. There are, besides, in most of the mines, considerable quantities of malleable copper, which from its purity, the miners call virgin ore. This is naturally alloyed with various substances; sometimes with rock-crystal, sometimes with a gravelly clay, and at others with the rust of iron. Its figure also is very various; being sometimes in thin plates, shaped like leaves; sometimes in drops and lumps; sometimes branched, fringed, or twisted into wires; sometimes crossed at the top like a dagger; and at others resembling hollow fillagree work.

It has also been found in powder, little inferior in lustre to gold, and in solid masses of several pounds weight, unmixed, and highly polished.

The water in which the copper-ore is washed, is converted by evaporation into blue vitriol for the dyers: and that which comes from the bottom of the mines is strongly impregnated with copper.

There is a mineral found in *tin-mines*, called mundie, which the tanners formerly separated from the tin, because it made it thick and curdy; whence it was thrown aside and neglected; but experiments have lately been made upon it, and this once useless ore affords as good copper as that of Sweden.

Cornwall also produces lead and iron, together with a great variety of crystals, and a considerable number of semi-metals, as speltre, bismuth, zinc, antimony, lapis calaminaris, black-lead, and cobalt. Here are likewise some quarries of marble, a stone called warming-stone, which, on being once heated, will continue warm eight or ten hours. In a copper-mine near Redruth, on the north-coast, is found the swimming-stone. It consists of rectilinear laminae as thin as paper intersecting each other in all directions, and leaving unequal cavities between them — a structure which renders the stone so cellular as to swim in water. Here have likewise been found several kinds of the asbestos, a stone so fibrous, that a kind of linen has been made of it, which is capable of resisting the action of fire.

CHAPTER IV.

The Tin-Mines of Cornwall.

Among the various metals and minerals produced in England, none is more considerable than its tin; the greatest part of Europe being supplied with that article from the mines in Cornwall. 5

How long the tin-mines have been discovered or worked cannot be exactly ascertained; but it is certain that the ancient Britons, if not the Romans, converted them to their advantage. Under the Saxons they appear to have been neglected; but after the coming of the Normans, they produced very considerable revenues, to the 10 earls of Cornwall, particularly to Richard, brother of King Henry III. Several regulations were afterwards made to encourage adventurers; a charter and various immunities being granted by Edmund, earl Richard's brother, who also framed and ratified the stannary laws, laying a certain duty upon tin, payable to the earls of Cornwall. 15 Edward III. confirmed the tanners in all their privileges, and erected Cornwall into a dukedom, with which he invested his son, Edward the Black Prince: and since that time the heirs apparent to the crown of England, if eldest sons, have enjoyed it successively.

The working of the tin-mines is extremely difficult; not only 20 on account of the great depth to which the workmen are sometimes obliged to sink their shafts or pits, but also because the rocks through which a passage is to be cut are so hard that they can scarcely dig a foot in a week. The soft shaking earth found in these mines is also very troublesome, an account of the unwhole- 25 some vapours it exhales, and the currents of water that frequently issue from it. When the ore is dug and drawn out of the mine, it is broken to pieces with large hammers, and then carried to a stamping-mill, where it is pounded still smaller; and the water, passing through, washes away the earthy parts, leaving the metallic 30 ones behind. It is then dried in a furnace on iron plates to drive off the arsenic with which it is combined, and ground to powder in a mill, after which it is again washed and dried, and in this state the metallic matter is called *black tin*.

To convert it into *white tin*, or metal, they carry it to a 35 furnace, where, by means of a charcoal fire, kept up by very large bellows, it is smelted; and when cold they forge it, which is the last thing done to it in the works. Two pounds of black tin, when melted, yield about one of white. It is remarkable that the dross or scoria scummed off the tin in fusion, and melted down 40 with fresh ore, runs into metal; and even the matter washed and separated from the metal in the mill, being thrown up in heaps, after resting six or seven years, will, by *fetching* over again, as they call it, yield as good tin as that of Germany. (David Blair.)

FÜNFTER ABSCHNITT.

G e s c h i c h t e.

1. THE ANCIENT BRITONS.

All ancient writers agree in representing the first inhabitants of
5 Britain as a tribe of the Gauls or Celtae, who peopled that island
from the neighbouring continent. Their language was the same,
their manners, their government, their superstition, varied only by
those small differences which time or communication with the
bordering nations must necessarily introduce. The inhabitants of
10 Gaul, especially in those parts which lie contiguous to Italy, had
acquired, from a commerce with their southern neighbours, some
refinement in the arts which gradually diffused themselves north-
wards and spread but a very faint light over this island. The
Greek and Roman navigators or merchants (for there were scarcely
15 any other travellers in those ages) brought back the most shocking
accounts of the ferocity of the people, which they magnified, as
usual, in order to excite the admiration of their countrymen. The
south-east parts, however, of Britain, had already, before the age
of Caesar, made the first and most requisite step towards a civil
20 settlement, and the Britons, by tillage and agriculture, had there
increased to a great multitude. The other inhabitants of the island
still maintained themselves by pasture: they were clothed with skins
of beasts. They dwelt in huts, which they reared in the forests
and marshes, with which the country was covered: they shifted
25 easily their habitation, when actuated either by the hopes of plunder,
or the fear of an enemy: the convenience of feeding their cattle
was even a sufficient motive for removing their seats: and as they
were ignorant of all the refinements of life, their wants and their
possessions were equally scanty and limited.

30 The Britons were divided into many small nations or tribes;
and being a military people, whose sole property was their arms

and their cattle, it was impossible, after they had acquired a relish for liberty, for their princes or chieftains to establish any despotic authority over them. Their governments, though monarchical, were free, as well as those of all the Celtic nations; and the common people seem even to have enjoyed more liberty among them, than 5 among the nations of Gaul, from whom they were descended. Each state was divided into factions within itself: it was agitated with jealousy or animosity against the neighbouring states: and while the arts of peace were yet unknown, wars were the chief occupation and formed the chief object of ambition, among the people. 10

The religion of the Britons was one of the most considerable parts of their government; and the Druids, who were their priests, possessed great authority among them. Besides ministering at the altar, and directing all religious duties, they presided over the education of youth; they enjoyed an immunity from wars and taxes; 15 they possessed both the civil and criminal jurisdiction; they decided all controversies among states as well as among private persons, and whoever refused to submit to their decree was exposed to the most severe penalties. The sentence of excommunication was pronounced against him: he was forbidden access to the sacrifices or 20 public worship: he was debarred all intercourse with his fellow-citizens, even in the common affairs of life: his company was universally shunned, as profane and dangerous: he was refused the protection of law: and death itself became an acceptable relief from the misery and infamy to which he was exposed. Thus, the bands 25 of government, which were naturally loose among that rude and turbulent people, were happily corroborated by the terrors of their superstition.

No species of superstition was ever more terrible than that of the Druids. Besides the severe penalties, which it was in the power of the ecclesiastics to inflict in this world, they inculcated the 30 eternal transmigration of souls; and thereby extended their authority as far as the fears of their timorous votaries. They practised their rites in dark groves or other secret recesses; and in order to throw a greater mystery over their religion, they communicated their doctrines only to the initiated, and strictly forbade the committing of 35 them to writing, lest they should at any time be exposed to the examination of the profane vulgar. Human sacrifices were practised among them: the spoils of war were often devoted to their divinities; and they punished with the severest tortures whoever dared to secrete any part of the consecrated offering. These treasures they 40 kept in woods and forests, secured by no other guard than the terrors of their religion; and this steady conquest over human avidity may be regarded as more signal than their prompting men to the most extraordinary and most violent efforts. No idolatrous worship ever attained such an ascendant over mankind as that of 45

the ancient Gauls and Britons; and the Romans, after their conquest, finding it impossible to reconcile those nations to the laws and institutions of their masters, while it maintained its authority, were at last obliged to abolish it by penal statutes; a violence
 5 which had never, in any other instance, been practised by those tolerating conquerors. (David Hume)

2. THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN.

Ambition and the unbounded love of glory impelled Julius Cesar to invade this, hitherto unexplored country. The conqueror
 10 of Gaul wished to become also the conqueror of Britain. Seizing, therefore, the miserable pretext, that the Britons had sent aid to the Gauls, in the noble struggle, which they had maintained against him for their liberties, Julius Cesar set sail, with his formidable legions, from the spot where Calais now stands.

15 Passing the narrow channel, his galleys anchored nearly opposite to Deal in Kent, about fifty-five years before the nativity of our Saviour. The British tribes were seen arranged in their unskilful order of battle on the beach, ready to receive the attack of their enemies. Their intermingled infantry and chariots rushed forward
 20 into the waves to meet those troops, who by their discipline and valour had triumphed over all resistance; and so violent was the shock of rude, undisciplined warriors, animated by the spirit of patriotism and liberty, that it was not far from overthrowing the superiority of arms, armour, steady valour and military experience.
 25 So dreadful was the charge of the half-naked Britons, that it required an extraordinary effort to animate the Romans to maintain the reputation they had so long enjoyed. The utmost exertions of their general were called forth; and the standard-bearer of the tenth legion, Cesar's favourite legion, threw the sacred eagle into
 30 the midst of the fight to stimulate and render desperate his men. After a severe struggle, the Romans prevailed; the Britons were defeated, demanded peace and offered hostages.

35 Convinced that he had engaged in an enterprize much more difficult than he had imagined, Cesar listened to their proposals, and granted the requested peace upon easy conditions. The peace however was soon broken, for what peace can be maintained with invaders! A Roman legion was surrounded, and in danger of being
 40 destroyed by the Britons, but was disengaged by the timely approach of Cesar. Having spent the winter in Italy, the Roman commander returned to Britain in the spring with more numerous forces. Cas-sibelanus, Prince of the Trinobantes, bravely attacked the Romans. In the first encounter he was crowned with success; but being
 45 entirely vanquished in a second battle, he was finally obliged to

give up the contest. Cesar having imposed a tribute upon the vanquished and taken hostages for its payment, departed for Gaul. Though this illustrious Roman had beaten the Britons in battle, and dismayed them by the terror of his arms, yet he effected only their nominal subjection, and by no means made a conquest of the country. 5

For nearly one hundred years after the death of Julius Cesar, Britain remained ungalled by the yoke of Rome. The Britons began to advance towards civilisation by their intercourse with the Romans; many of whom settled in the country, and engaged in commerce. Until the reign of the Emperor Claudius the Roman 10 authority over Britain was more a name than a reality, but an army was then sent to Britain under the command of Ostorius Scapula, a skilful leader. In vain did the Britons, headed by Caractacus, one of their intrepid rulers, oppose the storm. After having, during nine years, struggled against superior force and experience, the 15 brave Caractacus was betrayed by a treacherous ally, and carried to Rome, a captive. So little was this noble patriot affected by his personal misfortune, that, when looking around he surveyed the magnificent edifices of the proud queen of cities, he exclaimed: How is it possible that they who possess such sumptuous habitations, 20 should covet the mean cottages of the Britons! Introduced to the presence of the emperor, he spoke with such force and dignity, that Claudius commanded his fetters to be stricken off, and treated him and his family with distinguished honour. But the Britons were not yet subdued. The Druids, calling superstition to the aid of free- 25 dom, excited their oppressed countrymen to resistance. They flew to arms, and the flames of war soon spread throughout the land. But Suetonius Paulinus, a renowned leader, reanimated the courage of the Romans, and after repeated conflicts, penetrated to the isle of Mona, now Anglesea, the sacred retreat of the Druids; where under 30 thick forests of their favourite tree, the oak, they taught their pupils, and practised their horrible rites. Paulinus found these priests intermingled with frantic females, running along the coast, uttering dreadful yells, with torches in their hands and dishevelled hair, inspiring their warriors with all the furies of fanaticism, and the 35 fiercest ardour of fight.

This fearful spectacle at first daunted the Roman soldiers, but encouraged by their general to despise vain appearances, they advanced to combat and gained a sanguinary victory. They destroyed the altars and consecrated woods, they burnt the Druids in their 40 own fires, and imagined that they had secured their conquest by this triumph over superstition. But no sooner had the victor marched away to quell an insurrection in the eastern provinces, in which 7000 Romans had perished by the avenging sword of the Britons, than those he had conquered resumed their arms, and led on by 45

Boadicea, a heroine princess, exasperated by cruel personal injuries, attacked London, which was already a considerable colony, and devastated it by fire and sword. Suetonius Paulinus revenged the destruction of his countrymen by a decisive victory and Boadicea
5 sought refuge from captivity in voluntary death.

Britain, however, was not wholly subdued until the time of Domitian, when Julius Agricola, a man of talent and experience, after having subdued the southern part of the island penetrated to its northern limits, exterminated the last army the Britons could
10 raise, headed by the brave but unfortunate Galgacus, drove the savage inhabitants to their mountains, and reduced nearly the whole of Britain to a Roman province. To repel the incursions of the wild mountaineers, Agricola caused his soldiers to construct a rampart from the mouth of the Clyde to that of the Forth. By his care the
15 rest of the country was meliorated and civilized. He introduced the Roman customs, language and sciences. In proportion as they tasted the sweets, and enjoyed the advantages of civil life, the Britons lost their love of independence and hardy valour, but with it they likewise lost the superstition, which enslaved them to the Druids,
20 and that fierce irritable temper, which involved them in perpetual wars, producing desolation in the land, and preventing improvement of every kind. (Holt.)

3. THE SCOTS AND PICTS.

During the interval of blessed historic oblivion Adrian who visited
25 the island, thought fit to abandon the northern extremity, and erected a new rampart from the Solway to the Tyne, many miles south of the rampart of Agricola. Severus, likewise, who found his presence necessary in Britain to repel the incursions of the Caledonians and Meatae, erected a stone-wall almost parallel with that of Adrian;
30 and so firmly was it constructed, that its remains are still visible. The Caledonians were a fierce and hardy tribe, supposed to have emigrated from Ireland into Scotland, the wild and mountainous region of which they occupied. The Meatae were the inhabitants of the northern part of England, who though equally as barbarous
35 as the Caledonians, yet not possessing a country so difficult of access were more easily subdued.

When Constantius ascended the imperial throne of Rome, he placed Britain under the Prefect of the Gauls and divided it into three provinces. The first, called Britannia prima, comprehended
40 all that portion of Britain, which lies south of the Thames. London was its capital. The second was named Britannia secunda. It comprehended that part of the country which lies between the river

Severn and the Irish sea, and which is now called Wales. Isca, or Caerleon, was its chief-town. The third named Maxima Caesariensis, included all the remaining part of Britain, east and north of the Thames and the Severn. York was its principal city. Towards the close of the fourth century the Britons engaged in the party 5 of Maximus, a pretender to the imperial sceptre, and multitudes of them accompanied him into Gaul. His enterprize failed, but his British soldiers retreating to Armorica, settled there. The name Bretagne, Britany and evident traces of their language are standing proofs of this event. 10

In the year of Christ 412 the weakened conditions of the empire obliged Honorius to withdraw the Roman troops from distant stations, in order to strengthen the more central parts of his dominions. The Picts, so called from the term Pictich, a plunderer, together with the Scots, who derived that appellation from the Celtic word 15 Scuite, a wanderer, quickly forced the rampart which had been raised by Roman skill, and defended by Roman bravery, and overwhelmed the unwarlike Britons, like a torrent. Twice the Roman emperor sent them aid from Gaul. Gallio of Ravenna, who commanded the last detachment of auxiliaries, having driven back the 20 savage plunderers to their woods and fastnesses, assembled the chiefs of the island and informed them that they could not longer hope for the assistance of the Romans, but must depend for their safety upon their own exertions. The repairing of the wall of Severus, arms and military engines, with instructions how to use 25 them, were the last kind offices the Britons received from their friendly conquerors. But arms and military engines are of little avail, without courage and experience, to use them. — Britain had been a Roman province nearly 400 years.

The Scots and Picts soon poured in again upon the effeminated 30 Britons; who instead of uniting to oppose their dreaded foes, wasted the little strength they had in absurd disputes with one another. So wretched was the condition to which they were reduced, that they implored succour from Aëtius, the celebrated commander, whose courage and skill was the sole support of the empire against the 35 attack of the dreadful Attila and his savage Huns, in most lamentable and bewailing language. "Come to our aid," said they, "for the barbarians drive us to the sea, and the sea repels us upon the weapons of the barbarians; so that the only choice left us is that of perishing in the waves, or by the swords of our enemies." Aëtius, 40 having need of all his force to oppose his terrible foe, could afford them no succour. The Britons abandoned the open lands, and sought an asylum in the recesses of their forests. In 445 a prince, named Vortigern, apparently an ambitious, worthless man, gained the ascendancy over the Britons. Vortigern induced his countrymen 45

to seek for aid against the Picts and Scots in Germany. For this purpose, the Britons sent an embassy to the Saxons, the people destined completely to enslave them. (Holt.)

4. THE SAXONS.

5 Of all the barbarous nations, known either in ancient or modern times, the Germans seem to have been the most distinguished both by their manners and political institutions, and to have carried to the highest pitch the virtues of valour and love of liberty; the only virtues which can have place among an uncivilized people, where
10 justice and humanity are commonly neglected. Kingly government, even when established among the Germans, (for it was not universal), possessed a very limited authority, and though the sovereign was usually chosen from among the royal family, he was directed in every measure by the common consent of the nation over whom
15 he presided. When any important affairs were transacted, all the warriors met in arms, the men of greatest authority employed persuasion to engage their consent; the people expressed their approbation by rattling their armour, or their dissent by murmurs; there was no necessity for a nice scrutiny of votes among a multitude
20 who were usually carried with a strong current to one side or the other; and the measure, thus suddenly chosen by general agreement, was executed with alacrity and prosecuted with vigour. Even in war, the princes governed more by example than by authority; but in peace the civil union was in a great measure dissolved, and the
25 inferior leaders administered justice after an independent manner, each in his particular district. These were elected by the votes of the people in their great councils; and though regard was paid to nobility in the choice, their personal qualities, chiefly their valour, procured them from the suffrages of their fellow-citizens that hon-
30 ourable but dangerous distinction. The warriors of each tribe attached themselves to their leader with the most devoted affection and most unshaken constancy. They attended him as his ornament in peace, as his defence in war, as his council in the administration of justice. Their constant emulation in military renown dissolved not that in-
35 violable friendship which they professed to their chieftain and to each other: to die for the honour of their band was their chief ambition: to survice its disgrace, or the death of their leader, was infamous. They even carried into the field their women and children, who adopted all the martial sentiments of the men: and being thus
40 impelled by every human motive, they were invincible, where they

were not opposed either by the similar manners and institutions of the neighbouring Germans, or by the superior discipline, arms, and numbers of the Romans.

The leaders and their military companions were maintained by the labour of their slaves, or by that of the weaker and less warlike 5 part of the community, whom they defended. The contributions which they levied went not beyond a bare subsistence; and the honours, acquired by a superior rank, were the only reward of their superior dangers and fatigues. All the refined arts of life were unknown among the Germans: tillage itself was almost wholly ne- 10 glected: they even seem to have been anxious to prevent any improvements of that nature; and the leaders, by annually distributing anew all the land among the inhabitants of each village, kept them from attaching themselves to particular possessions, or making such progress in agriculture as might divert their attention from military 15 expeditions, the chief occupation of the community.

The Saxons had been for some time regarded as one of the most warlike tribes of this fierce people, and had become the terror of the neighbouring nations. They had diffused themselves from the northern parts of Germany and the Cimbrian Chersonesus, and had 20 taken possession of all the sea-coast from the mouth of the Rhine to Jutland; whence they had long infested by their piracies all the eastern and southern parts of Britain, and the northern of Gaul. In order to oppose their inroads, the Romans had established an officer, whom they called *Count of the Saxon shore*; and as the naval 25 arts can flourish among a civilized people alone, they seem to have been more successful in repelling the Saxons, than any of the other barbarians by whom they were invaded. The dissolution of the Roman power invited them to renew their inroads; and it was an acceptable circumstance, that the deputies of the Britons appeared 30 among them, and prompted them to undertake an enterprise, to which they were of themselves sufficiently inclined.

Hengist and Horsa, two brothers, possessed great credit among the Saxons, and were much celebrated both for their valour and nobility. They were reputed, as most of the Saxon princes, to be 35 sprung from Woden, who was worshipped as a god among those nations, and they are said to be his great-grandsons; a circumstance which added much to their authority. We shall not attempt to trace any higher the origin of those princes and nations. It is evident what fruitless labour it must be to search, in those barbarous 40 and illiterate ages, for the annals of a people, when their first leaders, known in any true history, were believed by them to be the fourth in descent from a fabulous deity, or from a man exalted by ignorance into that character. The dark industry of antiquaries, led by imaginary analogies of names, or by uncertain traditions, would 45

in vain attempt to pierce into that deep obscurity which covers the remote history of those nations.

These two brothers, observing the other provinces of Germany to be occupied by a warlike and necessitous people, and the rich provinces of Gaul already conquered or overrun by other German tribes, found it easy to persuade their countrymen to embrace the sole enterprise which promised a favourable opportunity of displaying their valour and gratifying their avidity. They embarked their troops in three vessels, and about the year 449 or 450, carried over 1600 men, who landed in the isle of Thanet, and immediately marched to the defence of the Britons against the northern invaders. The Scots and Picts were unable to resist the valour of these auxiliaries; and the Britons, applauding their own wisdom in calling over the Saxons, hoped thenceforth to enjoy peace and security under the powerful protection of that warlike people.

But Hengist and Horsa perceiving from their easy victory over the Scots and Picts, with what facility they might subdue the Britons themselves, who had not been able to resist those feeble invaders, were determined to conquer and fight for their own grandeur, not for the defence of their degenerate allies. They sent intelligence to Saxony of the fertility and riches of Britain; and represented as certain the subjection of a people so long disused to arms, who, being now cut off from the Roman empire, of which they had been a province during so many ages, had not yet acquired any union among themselves, and were destitute of all affection to their new liberties, and of all national attachments and regards. The vices and pusillanimity of Vortigern, the British leader, were a new ground of hope; and the Saxons in Germany, following such agreeable prospects, soon reinforced Hengist and Horsa with 5000 men, who came over in seventeen vessels. The Britons now began to entertain apprehensions of their allies, whose numbers they found continually augmenting; but thought of no remedy, except a passive submission and connivance. This weak expedient soon failed them. The Saxons sought a quarrel, by complaining that their subsidies were ill paid, and their provisions with-drawn: and immediately taking off the mask, they formed an alliance with the Picts and Scots, and proceeded to open hostility against the Britons.

The Britons, impelled by these violent extremities, and roused to indignation against their treacherous auxiliaries, were necessitated to take arms; and having deposed Vortigern, who has become odious from his vices, and from the bad event of his rash counsels, they put themselves under the command of his son, Vortimer. They fought many battles with their enemies; and though the victories in these actions be disputed between the British and Saxon annalists, the progress still made by the Saxons proves that the advantage

was commonly on their side. In one battle, however, fought at Eaglesford, now Ailsford, Horsa, the Saxon general, was slain, and left the sole command over his countrymen in the hands of Hengist. This active general, continually reinforced by fresh numbers from Germany, carried devastation into the most remote corners of Britain; and being chiefly anxious to spread the terror of his arms, he spared neither age, nor sex, nor condition, wherever he marched with his victorious forces. The private and public edifices of the Britons were reduced to ashes: the priests were slaughtered on the altars by those idolatrous ravagers; the bishops and nobility shared the fate of the vulgar: the people, flying to the mountains and deserts, were intercepted and butchered in heaps: some were glad to accept of life and servitude under their victors: others, deserting their native country, took shelter in the province of Armorica, where, being charitably received by a people of the same language and manners, they settled in great numbers, and gave the country the name of Brittany. (David Hume.)

5. ALFRED THE GREAT.

After Alfred had subdued, and had settled or expelled, the Danes, he found the kingdom in the most wretched condition; desolated by the ravages of those barbarians, and thrown into disorders which were calculated to perpetuate its misery. Though the great armies of the Danes were broken, the country was full of straggling troops of that nation, who, being accustomed to live by plunder, were become incapable of industry, and who, from the natural ferocity of their manners, indulged themselves in committing violence, even beyond what was requisite to supply their necessities. The English themselves, reduced to the most extreme indigence by these continued depredations, had shaken off all bands of government; and those who had been plundered to-day, betook themselves next day to the like disorderly life, and, from despair, joined the robbers in pillaging and ruining their fellow-citizens. These were the evils for which it was necessary that the vigilance and activity of Alfred should provide a remedy.

That he might render the execution of justice strict and regular, he divided all England into counties; these counties he subdivided into hundreds; and the hundreds into tithings. Every householder was answerable for the behaviour of his family and slaves, and even of his guests, if they lived above three days in his house. Ten neighbouring householders were formed into one corporation,

who, under the name of a tithing, decennary, or fribourg, were answerable for each other's conduct, and over whom one person, called a tithingman, headbourg, or borsholder, was appointed to preside. Every man was punished as an outlaw who did not register
5 himself in some tithing. And no man could change his habitation, without a warrant or certificate from the borsholder of the tithing to which he formerly belonged.

When any person in any tithing or decennary was guilty of a crime, the borsholder was summoned to answer for him; and if he
10 were not willing to be surety for his appearance, and his clearing himself, the criminal was committed to prison, and there detained till his trial. If he fled, either before or after finding sureties, the borsholder and decennary became liable to inquiry, and were exposed to the penalties of law. Thirty-one days were allowed them
15 for producing the criminal; and if that time elapsed without their being able to find him, the borsholder, with two other members of the decennary, was obliged to appear, and, together with three chief members of the three neighbouring decennaries, (making twelve in all,) to swear that his decennary was free from all privity both of
20 the crime committed, and of the escape of the criminal. If the borsholder could not find such a number to answer for their innocence, the decennary was compelled by fine to make satisfaction to the king, according to the degree of the offence. By this institution, every man was obliged from his own interest to keep a
25 watchful eye over the conduct of his neighbours; and was in a manner surety for the behaviour of those who were placed under the division to which he belonged: whence these decennaries received the name of frank-pledges.

Such a regular distribution of the people, with such a strict
30 confinement in their habitation, may not be necessary in times when men are more inured to obedience and justice; and it might perhaps be regarded as destructive of liberty and commerce in a polished state; but it was well calculated to reduce that fierce and licentious people under the salutary restraint of law and government. But
35 Alfred took care to temper these rigours by other institutions favourable to the freedom of the citizens; and nothing could be more popular and liberal than his plan for the administration of justice. The borsholder summoned together his whole decennary to assist him in deciding any lesser difference which occurred among
40 the members of this small community. In affairs of greater moment, in appeals from the decennary, or in controversies arising between members of different decennaries, the cause was brought before the hundred, which consisted of ten decennaries, or a hundred families of freemen, and which was regularly assembled once in four weeks
45 for the deciding of causes. Their method of decision deserves to

be noted, as being the origin of juries; an institution, admirable in itself, and the best calculated for the preservation of liberty and the administration of justice, that ever was devised by the wit of man. Twelve freeholders were chosen; who, having sworn, together with the hundreder, or presiding magistrate of that division, to administer 5 impartial justice, proceeded to the examination of that cause which was submitted to their jurisdiction. And beside these monthly meetings of the hundred, there was an annual meeting, appointed for a more general inspection of the police of the district; for the inquiry into crimes, the correction of abuses in magistrates, and the obliging of 10 every person to show the decennary in which he was registered. The people, in imitation of their ancestors, the ancient Germans, assembled there in arms; whence a hundred was sometimes called a wapentake, and its court served both for the support of military discipline, and for the administration of civil justice. 15

The next superior court to that of the hundred was the county-court, which met twice a year, after Michaelmas and Easter, and consisted of the freeholders of the county, who possessed an equal vote in the decision of causes. The bishop presided in this court, together with the alderman; and the proper object of the court was 20 the receiving of appeals from the hundreds and decennaries, and the deciding of such controversies as arose between men of different hundreds. Formerly, the alderman possessed both the civil and military authority; but Alfred, sensible that this conjunction of powers rendered the nobility dangerous and independent, appointed 25 also a sheriff in each county, who enjoyed a co-ordinate authority with the former in the judicial function. His office also empowered him to guard the rights of the crown in the county, and to levy the fines imposed; which in that age formed no contemptible part of the public revenue. 30

There lay an appeal, in default of justice, from all these courts to the king himself in council; and as the people, sensible of the equity and great talents of Alfred, placed their chief confidence in him, he was soon overwhelmed with appeals from all parts of England. He was indefatigable in the despatch of these causes; but 35 finding that his time must be entirely engrossed by this branch of duty, he resolved to obviate the inconvenience, by correcting the ignorance or corruption of the inferior magistrates, from which it arose. He took care to have his nobility instructed in letters and the laws. He chose the earls and sheriffs from among the men 40 most celebrated for probity and knowledge. He punished severely all malversation in office. And he removed all the earls, whom he found unequal to the trust; allowing only some of the more elderly to serve by a deputy, till their death should make room for more worthy successors. 45

The better to guide the magistrates in the administration of justice, Alfred framed a body of laws; which though now lost, served long as the basis of English jurisprudence, and is generally deemed the origin of what is denominated the COMMON LAW. He appointed
5 regular meetings of the states of England twice a year in London; a city which he himself had repaired and beautified, and which he thus rendered the capital of the kingdom. The similarity of these institutions to the customs of the ancient Germans, to the practice of the other northern conquerors, and to the Saxon laws during the
10 Heptarchy, prevents us from regarding Alfred as the sole author of this plan of government; and leads us rather to think, that, like a wise man, he contented himself with reforming, extending and executing the institutions which he found previously established. But, on the whole, such success attended his legislation, that every thing
15 bore suddenly a new face in England: robberies and iniquities of all kinds were repressed by the punishment or reformation of the criminals: and so exact was the general police, that Alfred, it is said, hung up, by way of bravado, golden bracelets near the highways; and no man dared to touch them. Yet, amidst these rigours
20 of justice, this great prince preserved the most sacred regard to the liberty of his people; and it is a memorable sentiment preserved in his will, That is was just the English should for ever remain as free as their own thoughts.

As good morals and knowledge are almost inseparable, in every
25 age, though not in every individual, the care of Alfred for the encouragement of learning among his subjects was another useful branch of his legislation, and tended to reclaim the English from their former dissolute and ferocious manners: but the king was guided in this pursuit, less by political views, than by his natural
30 bent and propensity towards letters. When he came to the throne, he found the nation sunk into the grossest ignorance and barbarism, proceeding from the continued disorders in the government, and from the ravages of the Danes: the monasteries were destroyed, the monks butchered or dispersed, their libraries burnt; and thus
35 the only seats of erudition in those ages were totally subverted. Alfred himself complains, that on his accession he knew not one person, south of the Thames, who could so much as interpret the Latin service; and very few in the northern parts, who had reached even that pitch of erudition. But this prince invited over the most
40 celebrated scholars from all parts of Europe; he established schools every where for the instruction of his people; he founded, at least repaired, the university of Oxford, and endowed it with many privileges, revenues, and immunities; he enjoined by law all freeholders possessed of two hydes of land or more, to send their
45 children to school for their instruction; he gave preferment both in

church and state to such only as had made some proficiency in knowledge: and by all these expedients he had the satisfaction, before his death, to see great change in the face of affairs; and in a work of his, which is still extant, he congratulates himself on the progress which learning, under his patronage, had already made 5 in England.

But the most effectual expedient employed by Alfred, for the encouragement of learning, was his own example, and the constant assiduity with which, notwithstanding the multiplicity and urgency of his affairs, he employed himself in the pursuits of knowledge. 10 He usually divided his time into three equal portions: one was employed in sleep, and the refectation of his body by diet and exercise; another in the despatch of business; a third in study and devotion; and that he might more exactly measure the hours, he made use of burning tapers of equal length, which he fixed in lanthorns, an 15 expedient suited to that rude age, when the geometry of dialling, and the mechanism of clocks and watches, were totally unknown. And by such a regular distribution of his time, though he often laboured under great bodily infirmities, this martial hero, who fought in person fifty-six battles by sea and land, was able, during a life 20 of no extraordinary length, to acquire more knowledge, and even to compose more books, than most studious men, though blessed with the greatest leisure and application, have, in more fortunate ages, made the object of their uninterrupted industry.

Sensible that the people, at all times, especially when their 25 understandings are obstructed by ignorance and bad education, are not much susceptible of speculative instruction, Alfred endeavoured to convey his morality by apologues, parables, stories, apophthegms, couched in poetry; and besides propagating among his subjects former compositions of that kind, which he found in the Saxon 30 tongue, he exercised his genius in inventing works of a like nature, as well as in translating from the Greek the elegant fables of Aesop. He also gave Saxon translations of Orosius's and Bede's histories; and of Boethius concerning the consolation of philosophy. And he 35 deemed it nowise derogatory from his other great characters of sovereign, legislator, warrior, and politician, thus to lead the way to his people in the pursuits of literature.

Meanwhile, this prince was not negligent in encouraging the vulgar and mechanical arts, which have a more sensible, though not a closer, connexion with the interests of society. He invited, from 40 all quarters, industrious foreigners to repeople his country, which had been desolated by the ravages of the Danes. He introduced and encouraged manufactures of all kinds; and no inventor or improver of any ingenious art did he suffer to go unrewarded. He prompted men of activity to betake themselves to navigation, to 45

push commerce into the most remote countries, and to acquire riches by propagating industry among their fellow-citizens. He set apart a seventh portion of his own revenue for maintaining a number of workmen, whom he constantly employed in rebuilding
 5 the ruined cities, castles, palaces, and monasteries. Even the elegances of life were brought to him from the Mediterranean and the Indies; and his subjects, by seeing those productions of the peaceful arts, were taught to respect the virtues of justice and industry, from which alone they could arise. Both living and dead,
 10 Alfred was regarded by foreigners, no less than by his own subjects, as the greatest prince after Charlemagne that had appeared in Europe during several ages, and as one of the wisest and best that had ever adorned the annals of any nation. (*David Hume.*)

6. THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS.

15 The English and Normans now prepared themselves for the important decision; but the aspect of things on the night before the battle was very different in the two camps. The English spent the time in riot, and jollity, and disorder; the Normans in silence, and in prayer, and in the other functions of their religion. On the
 20 morning, the duke called together the most considerable of his commanders, and made them a speech suitable to the occasion. He represented to them, that the event which they and he had long wished for was approaching; the whole fortune of the war now depended on their swords, and would be decided in a single action:
 25 that never army had greater motives for exerting a vigorous courage, whether they considered the prize which would attend their victory, or the inevitable destruction which must ensue upon their discomfiture: that if their martial and veteran bands could once break those raw soldiers, who had rashly dared to approach them, they
 30 conquered a kingdom at one blow, and were justly entitled to all its possessions as the reward of their prosperous valour: that, on the contrary, if they remitted in the least their wonted prowess, an enraged enemy hung upon their rear, the sea met them in their retreat, and an ignominious death was the certain punishment of
 35 their imprudent cowardice: that by collecting so numerous and brave a host, he had insured every human means of conquest; and the commander of the enemy, by his criminal conduct, had given him just cause to hope for the favour of the Almighty, in whose hands alone lay the event of wars and battles: and that a perjured
 40 usurper, anathematized by the sovereign pontiff, and conscious of his own breach of faith, would be struck with terror on their appearance, and would prognosticate to himself that fate which his

multiplied crimes had so justly merited. The duke next divided his army into three lines: the first, led by Montgomery, consisted of archers and light-armed infantry: the second, commanded by Martel, was composed of his bravest battalions, heavy armed, and ranged in close order: his cavalry, at whose head he placed himself, formed the third line, and were so disposed, that they stretched beyond the infantry, and flanked each wing of the army. He ordered the signal of battle to be given; and the whole army, moving at once, and singing the hymn or song of Roland, the famous peer of Charlemagne, advanced, in order and with alacrity, 10 towards the enemy.

Harold had seized the advantage of a rising ground, and having likewise drawn some trenches to secure his flanks, he resolved to stand upon the defensive, and to avoid all action with the cavalry, in which he was inferior. The Kentish men were placed in the 15 van; a post which they had always claimed as their due: the Londoners guarded the standard: and the king himself, accompanied by his two valiant brothers, Gurth and Leofwin, dismounting, placed himself at the head of his infantry, and expressed his resolution to conquer, or to perish in the action. The first attack of the Nor- 20 mans was desperate, but was received with equal valour by the English, and after a furious combat, which remained long undecided, the former, overcome by the difficulty of the ground, and hard pressed by the enemy, began first to relax their vigour, then to retreat; and confusion was spreading among the ranks, when William, 25 who found himself on the brink of destruction, hastened with a select band to the relief of his dismayed forces. His presence restored the action; the English were obliged to retire with loss; and the duke, ordering his second line to advance, renewed the attack with fresh forces, and with redoubled courage. Finding that 30 the enemy, aided by the advantage of ground, and animated by the example of their prince, still made a vigorous resistance, he tried a stratagem, which was very delicate in its management, but which seemed advisable in his desperate situation, where, if he gained not a decisive victory, he was totally undone: he commanded his troops 35 to make a hasty retreat, and to allure the enemy from their ground by the appearance of flight. The artifice succeeded against those unexperienced soldiers, who, heated by the action, and sanguine in their hopes, precipitately followed the Normans into the plain. William gave orders, that at once the infantry should face about upon 40 their pursuers, and the cavalry make an assault upon their wings, and both of them pursue the advantage, which the surprise and terror of the enemy must give them in that critical and decisive moment. The English were repulsed with great slaughter, and driven back to the hill; where, being rallied by the bravery of 45

Harold, they were able, notwithstanding their loss, to maintain the post, and continue the combat. The duke tried the same stratagem a second time with the same success; but even after this double advantage, he still found a great body of the English, who, maintaining themselves in firm array, seemed determined to dispute the victory to the last extremity. He ordered his heavy-armed infantry to make an assault upon them; while his archers, placed behind, should gall the enemy, who were exposed by the situation of the ground, and who were intent on defending themselves against the swords and spears of the assailants. By this disposition he at last prevailed: Harold was slain by an arrow, while he was combating with great bravery at the head of his men: his two brothers shared the same fate: and the English, discouraged by the fall of those princes, gave ground on all sides, and were pursued with great slaughter by the victorious Normans. A few troops, however, of the vanquished, had still the courage to turn upon their pursuers; and attacking them in deep and miry ground, obtained some revenge for the slaughter and dishonour of the day. But the appearance of the duke obliged them to seek their safety by flight; and darkness saved them from any further pursuit by the enemy.

Thus was gained by William, Duke of Normandy, the great and decisive victory of Hastings, after a battle which was fought from morning till sunset, and which seemed worthy, by the heroic valour displayed by both armies, and by both commanders, to decide the fate of a mighty kingdom. William had three horses killed under him; and there fell near fifteen thousand men on the side of the Normans: the loss was still more considerable on that of the vanquished; besides the death of the king and his two brothers. The dead body of Harold was brought to William, and was generously restored without ransom to his mother. The Norman army left not the field of battle without giving thanks to Heaven in the most solemm manner for their victory: and the prince, having refreshed his troops, prepared to push to the utmost his advantage against the divided, dismayed, and discomfited English. *(David Hume.)*

35 7. HENRY II. CONQUEST OF IRELAND.

Ireland was at the time of Henry II. nearly in the same situation in which England had been after the first invasion of the Saxons. Its inhabitants had been early converted to Christianity; and, for three or four centuries after, possessed a very large proportion of the learning of the times: being undisturbed by foreign invasions, and perhaps too poor to invite the rapacity of conquerors, they enjoyed a peaceful life, which they gave up to piety, and

such learning as was then thought necessary to promote it. Of their learning, their arts, their piety, and even their polished manners, too many monuments remain to this day for us to make the least doubt concerning them; but it is equally true, that in time they fell from these advantages, and their degenerate posterity, 5 at the period we are now speaking of, were involved in the darkest barbarity. This may be imputed to the frequent invasions which they suffered from the Danes and Norwegians, who overran the whole country, and every where spread their ravages, and confirmed their authority: the natives, kept in the strictest bondage, 10 grew every day more ignorant and brutal; and when at last they rose upon their conquerors, and totally expelled them from the island, they wanted instructors to restore them to their former attainments. Henceforward they long continued in the most deplorable state of barbarism. The towns that had been formerly 15 built were suffered to fall into ruin; the inhabitants exercised pasture in the open country, and sought protection from danger by retiring into their forests and bogs. Almost all sense of religion was extinguished; the petty princes exercised continual outrages upon each other's territories; and strength alone was able to 20 procure redress.

At the time when Henry first planned the invasion of the island, it was divided into five small kingdoms, namely, Leinster, Meath, Munster, Ulster, and Connaught. As it had been usual for one or other of the five kings to make the lead in their wars, 25 he was denominated monarch of the island, and possessed a power resembling that of the early Saxon monarchs in England. Roderic O'Connor, king of Connaught, then enjoyed this dignity, and Dermont M'Morrogh was king of Leinster. This last-named prince, a weak, licentious tyrant, had carried off and ravished the daughter 30 of the king of Meath, who, being strengthened by the alliance of the king of Connaught, invaded the ravisher's dominions, and expelled him from his kingdom. This prince, thus justly punished, had recourse to Henry, who was at that time in Guienne, and offered to hold his kingdom of the English crown, if he should 35 recover it by the king's assistance. Henry readily accepted the offer; but being at that time embarrassed by more near interests, he only gave Dermont letters patent, by which he empowered all his subjects to aid the Irish prince in the recovery of his dominions. Dermont, relying on this authority, repaired to Bristol, where, 40 after some difficulty, he formed a treaty with Richard, surnamed Strongbow, earl of Pembroke, who agreed to reinstate him in his dominions, upon condition of his being married to his daughter Eva, and declared heir of all his territory. He at the same time contracted for succours with Robert Fitzstephen and Maurice Fitzgerald, 45

whom he promised to gratify with the city of Wexford, and the two adjoining districts, which were then in possession of the Easterlings, or descendants of the Norwegians. Being thus assured of assistance, he returned privately to Ireland, and concealed himself during the winter in the monastery of Fernes, which he had founded. Robert Fitzstephen was first able, the ensuing spring, to fulfil his engagements, by landing with thirty knights, sixty esquires, and three hundred archers. They were soon after joined by Maurice Prendergast, who, about the same time, brought over ten knights and sixty archers; and with his small force they resolved on besieging Wexford, which was to be theirs by treaty. This town was quickly reduced; and the adventurers, being reinforced by another body of men, to the amount of a hundred and fifty, under the command of Maurice Fitzgerald, composed an army that struck the barbarous natives with awe. Roderic, the chief monarch of the island, ventured to oppose them, but he was defeated, and soon after the prince of Ossory was obliged to submit, and give hostages for his future conduct.

Dermont, being thus reinstated in his hereditary dominions, soon began to conceive hopes of extending the limits of his power, and making himself master of Ireland. With these views he endeavoured to expedite Strongbow, who, being personally prohibited by the king had not come over.

Dermont tried to inflame his ambition by the glory of the conquest, and his avarice by the advantages it would procure: he expatiated on the cowardice of the natives, and the certainty of his success. Strongbow first sent over Raymond, one of his retinue with ten knights and seventy archers; and receiving permission shortly after for himself, he landed with two hundred horse and a hundred archers. All these English forces, now joining together, became irresistible, and though the whole number did not amount to a thousand, yet, such was the barbarous state of the natives, that they were every where put to the rout. The city of Waterford quickly surrendered; Dublin was taken by assault; and Strongbow, marrying Eva, according to treaty, became master of the kingdom of Leinster upon Dermont's decease.

The island being thus in a manner wholly subdued, for nothing was capable of opposing the progress of the English arms, Henry became jealous of the success of the adventurers, and was willing to share in person those honours which they had already secured. He therefore shortly after landed in Ireland (1171) at the head of five hundred knights and some soldiers; not so much to conquer a disputed territory, as to take possession of a subject kingdom. In his progress through the country, he received the homage of the petty chieftains, and left most of them in possession of their

ancient territories. In a place so uncultivated and so ill peopled, there was still land enough to satisfy the adventurers who had followed him: Strongbow was made seneschal of Ireland; Hugh de Lacey was made governor of Dublin, and John de Courcy received a patent for conquering the province of Ulster, which yet remained 5 unsubdued. The Irish bishops very gladly admitted the English, as they expected from their superior civilization a greater degree of reverence and respect. Pope Adrian IV. had, in the beginning, encouraged Henry to subdue the Irish by his bull, granting him the kingdom. Pope Alexander III. now confirmed him in his conquest; 10 and the kings of England were acknowledged as lords over Ireland for ever. Thus, after a trifling effort, in which very little money was expended, and little bloodshed, that beautiful island became an appendage to the English crown, and as such it has ever since continued with unshaken fidelity. (Oliver Goldsmith.) 15

8. DEATH AND CHARACTER OF RICHARD I.

Vidomar, Viscount of Limoges, a vassal of the king's, had found a treasure, of which he sent part to that prince as a present. Richard, as superior lord, claimed the whole; and, at the head of some Brabançons, besieged the viscount in the castle of Chalus, near 20 Limoges, in order to make him comply with his demand. The garrison offered to surrender; but the king replied, that since he had taken the pains to come thither and besiege the place in person, he would take it by force, and would hang every one of them. The same day, Richard, accompanied by Marcadée, leader 25 of his Brabançons, approached the castle in order to survey it; when one Bertrand de Gourdon, an archer, took aim at him, and pierced his shoulder with an arrow. The king, however, gave orders for the assault, took the place, and hanged all the garrison, except Gourdon, who had wounded him, and whom he reserved for a more 30 deliberate and more cruel execution.

The wound was not in itself dangerous; but the unskilfulness of the surgeon made it mortal: he so rankled Richard's shoulder in pulling out the arrow, that a gangrene ensued; and that prince was now sensible that his life was drawing towards a period. He 35 sent for Gourdon, and asked him, *Wretch, what have I ever done to you, to oblige you to seek my life? — What have you done to me?* replied coolly the prisoner; *You killed with your own hands my father and my two brothers; and you intended to have hanged myself: I am now in your power, and you may 40 take revenge, by inflicting on me the most severe torments; but I shall endure them all with pleasure, provided I can*

think that I have been so happy as to rid the world of such a nuisance. Richard, struck with the reasonableness of this reply, and humbled by the near approach of death, ordered Gourdon to be set at liberty, and a sum of money to be given him: but Marcadée, unknown to him, seized the unhappy man, flayed him alive, and then hanged him. Richard died in the tenth year of his reign, and the forty-second of his age; and he left no issue behind him.

The most shining parts of this prince's character are his military talents. No man, even in that romantic age, carried personal courage and intrepidity to a greater height; and this quality gained him the appellation of the lion-hearted, *coeur de lion*. He passionately loved glory, chiefly military glory; and as his conduct in the field was not inferior to his valour, he seems to have possessed every talent necessary for acquiring it. His resentments also were high; his pride unconquerable; and his subjects, as well as his neighbours, had therefore reason to apprehend, from the continuance of his reign, a perpetual scene of blood and violence. Of an impetuous and vehement spirit, he was distinguished by all the good as well as the bad qualities, incident to that character; he was open, frank, generous, sincere, and brave, he was revengeful, domineering, ambitious, haughty, and cruel; and was thus better calculated to dazzle men by the splendour of his enterprises, than either to promote their happiness or his own grandeur, by a sound and well-regulated policy. As military talents make great impression on the people, he seems to have been much beloved by his English subjects; and he is remarked to have been the first prince of the Norman line that bore any sincere regard to them. He passed however only four months of his reign in that kingdom: the Crusade employed him near three years; he was detained about fourteen months in captivity; the rest of his reign was spent either in war, or preparations for war, against France; and he was so pleased with the fame which he had acquired in the East, that he determined, notwithstanding his past misfortunes, to have further exhausted his kingdom, and to have exposed himself to new hazards, by conducting another expedition against the infidels. (David Hume.)

9. MAGNA CHARTA.

A conference between king John and the barons was appointed at Runnemede, between Windsor and Staines; a place which has ever since been extremely celebrated, on account of this great event. The two parties encamped apart, like open enemies; and after a debate of a few days, the king, with a facility somewhat suspicious, signed and sealed the charter which was required of him. This

famous deed, commonly called the GREAT CHARTER, either granted or secured very important liberties and privileges to every order of men in the kingdom; to the clergy, to the barons and to the people.

The freedom of elections was secured to the clergy: the former 5 charter of the king was confirmed, by which the necessity of a royal *congé-d'élire* and confirmation was superseded: all check upon appeals to Rome was removed, by the allowance granted every man to depart the kingdom at pleasure: and the fines to be imposed on the clergy for any offence, were ordained to be proportional to 10 their lay estates, not their ecclesiastical benefices.

The privileges granted to the barons were either abatements in the rigour of the feudal law, or determinations in points which had been left by that law, or had become, by practice, arbitrary and ambiguous. The reliefs of heirs succeeding to a military fee were 15 ascertained; an earl's and baron's at a hundred marks, a knight's at a hundred shillings. It was ordained by the charter, that, if the heir be a minor, he shall, immediately upon his majority, enter upon his estate, without paying any relief: the king shall not sell his wardship: he shall levy only reasonable profits upon the estate, 20 without committing waste, or hurting the property: he shall uphold the castles, houses, mills, parks, and ponds: and if he commit the guardianship of the estate to the sheriff or any other, he shall previously oblige them to find surety to the same purpose. During the minority of a baron, while his lands are in wardship, and are 25 not in his own possession, no debt which he owes to the Jews shall bear any interest. Heirs shall be married without disparagement; and before the marriage be contracted, the nearest relations of the person shall be informed of it. A widow, without paying any relief, shall enter upon her dower, the third part of her hus- 30 band's rents: she shall not be compelled to marry, so long as she chooses to continue single; she shall only give security never to marry without her lord's consent. The king shall not claim the wardship of any minor who holds lands by military tenure of a baron, on pretence that he also holds lands of the crown, by 35 soccage or any other tenure. Scutages shall be estimated at the same rate as in the time of Henry I.; and no scutage or aid, except in the three general feudal cases, the king's captivity, the knighting of his eldest son, and the marrying of his eldest daughter, shall be imposed but by the great council of the kingdom; the prelates, 40 earls, and great barons, shall be called to this great council, each by a particular writ; the lesser barons by a general summons of the sheriff. The king shall not seize any baron's land for a debt to the crown, if the baron possesses as many goods and chattels as are sufficient to discharge the debt. No man shall be obliged 45

to perform more service for his fee than he is bound to by his tenure. No governor or constable of a castle shall oblige any knight to give money for castleguard, if the knight be willing to perform the service in person, or by another able-bodied man; and
 5 if the knight be in the field himself, by the king's command, he shall be exempted from all other service of this nature. No vassal shall be allowed to sell so much of his land as to incapacitate himself from performing his service to his lord.

These were the principal articles, calculated for the interest of
 10 the barons; and had the charter contained nothing further, national happiness and liberty had been very little promoted by it, as it would only have tended to increase the power and independence of an order of men who were already too powerful, and whose yoke might have become more heavy on the people than even that of
 15 an absolute monarch. But the barons, who alone drew and imposed on the prince this memorable charter, were necessitated to insert in it other clauses of a more extensive and more beneficent nature: they could not expect the concurrence of the people, without comprehending, together with their own, the interests of inferior ranks
 20 of men; and all provisions which the barons, for their own sake, were obliged to make, in order to insure the free and equitable administration of justice, tended directly to the benefit of the whole community. The following were the principal clauses of this nature.

It was ordained, that all the privileges and immunities above
 25 mentioned, granted to the barons against the king, should be extended by the barons to their inferior vassals. The king bound himself not to grant any writ, empowering a baron to levy aids from his vassals, except in the three feudal cases. One weight and one measure shall be established throughout the kingdom. Merchants
 30 shall be allowed to transact all business, without being exposed to any arbitrary tolls and impositions: they and all freemen shall be allowed to go out of the kingdom and return to it at pleasure: London, and all cities and burghs, shall preserve their ancient liberties, immunities, and free customs: aids shall not be required
 35 of them but by the consent of the great council: no towns or individuals shall be obliged to make or support bridges but by ancient custom: the goods of every freeman shall be disposed of according to his will: if he die intestate, his heirs shall succeed to them. No officer of the crown shall take any horses, carts, or wood, without
 40 the consent of the owner. The king's courts of justice shall be stationary, and shall no longer follow his person: they shall be open to every one; and justice shall no longer be sold, refused, or delayed by them. Circuits shall be regularly held every year: the inferior tribunals of justice, the county court, sheriff's turn, and
 45 court-leet, shall meet at their appointed time and place: the she-

riffs shall be incapacitated to hold pleas of the crown; and shall not put any person upon his trial, from rumour or suspicion alone, but upon the evidence of lawful witnesses. No freeman shall be taken or imprisoned, or dispossessed of his free tenement and liberties, or outlawed, or banished, or anywise hurt or injured unless by 5 the legal judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land; and all who suffered otherwise, in this or the two former reigns, shall be restored to their rights and possessions. Every freeman shall be fined in proportion to his fault; and no fine shall be levied on him to his utter ruin: even a villain or rustic shall not, by any 10 fine, be bereaved of his carts, ploughs, and implements of husbandry. This was the only article calculated for the interests of this body of men, probably at that time the most numerous in the kingdom.

It must be confessed, that the former articles of the Great Charter contain such mitigations and explanations of the feudal law as are 15 reasonable and equitable; and that the latter involve all the chief outlines of a legal government, and provide for the equal distribution of justice and free enjoyment of property; the great objects for which political society was at first founded by men, which the people have a perpetual and unalienable right to recall, and which 20 no time, nor precedent, nor statute, nor positive institution, ought to deter them from keeping ever uppermost in their thoughts and attention. Though the provisions made by this charter might, conformably to the genius of the age, be esteemed too concise, and too bare of circumstances, to maintain the execution of its articles, 25 in opposition to the chicanery of lawyers, supported by the violence of power; time gradually ascertained the sense of all the ambiguous expressions; and those generous barons, who first extorted this concession, still held their swords in their hands, and could turn them against those who dared, on any pretence, to depart from the 30 original spirit and meaning of the grant. We may now, from the tenor of this charter, conjecture what those laws were of King Edward, which the English nation, during so many generations, still desired, with such an obstinate perseverance, to have recalled and established. They were chiefly these latter articles of *Magna Charta*; 35 and the barons who, at the beginning of these commotions, demanded the revival of the Saxon laws, undoubtedly thought that they had sufficiently satisfied the people, by procuring them this concession, which comprehended the principal objects to which they had so long aspired. But what we are most to admire is, the 40 prudence and moderation of those haughty nobles themselves, who were enraged by injuries, inflamed by opposition, and elated by a total victory over their sovereign. They were content, even in this plenitude of power, to depart from some articles of Henry I.'s charter, which they made the foundation of their demands, parti- 45

cularly from the abolition of wardships, a matter of the greatest importance; and they seem to have been sufficiently careful not to diminish too far the power and revenue of the crown. If they appear, therefore, to have carried other demands to too great a height, it can be ascribed only to the faithless and tyrannical character of the king himself, of which they had long had experience, and which, they foresaw, would, if they provided no further security, lead him soon to infringe their new liberties, and revoke his own concessions. This alone gave birth to those other articles, seemingly
 10 exorbitant, which were added as a rampart for the safeguard of the Great Charter.

(*David Hume.*)

10. EDWARD I.'s CONQUEST OF WALES AND SCOTLAND.

In 1274 Edward I., and Eleanor, his amiable and truly worthy queen, were crowned at Westminster. His virtues and talents had
 15 rendered him a favourite of the nation. By means of this popularity he curbed the insolence of the barons, and by the equable administration of justice he maintained tranquillity among the people. Had not the love of war and the thirst of conquest counterbalanced his good qualities, and impelled him to arbitrary and cruel acts,
 20 Edward I. would, probably, have been a blessing to his subjects. But he too soon began, and too long continued, the career of false glory. Scarcely did he find himself firmly seated on the throne, when he determined to subdue Wales, and to tame the hitherto untameable fierceness of the descendants of the ancient Britons.

25 Safe under the shelter of their mountains, and animated with the love of liberty, these aboriginal inhabitants of Britain had preserved themselves from the yoke of the Saxons, the Danes, and the Normans; but at last, internal discord began the process of their subjugation, and the great military abilities of Edward completed it. He subdued Wales, after a doubtful and severe struggle;
 30 annexed it to the English crown, and determined that the title of Prince of Wales should be borne by the eldest sons of his successors. It is asserted by the most historians of England, though denied by some, that Edward commanded all the Welsh bards who
 35 could be found to be put to death, lest by their enthusiastic songs they should rouse the ancient British spirit, and renew the struggle for liberty. Ambition is a restless, insatiable passion. Seven years after he had effected this conquest, Edward proceeded to another still more important. Alexander III., king of Scotland, dying without
 40 children, the crown was claimed by several competitors among whom Bruce and Baliol were the principal, being descended on the female side from the royal house. The flames of civil war were about to

burst forth and rage. To prevent this, the nobles of Scotland chose Edward as umpire between the rivals. But by this, they brought upon their country an evil, worse than that which they wished to avoid. The monarch of England accepted the office; marched at the head of a powerful army; caused several fortresses 5 to be put into his hands as pledges of obedience to his award; and obliged the Scotch barons to acknowledge him as their liege lord. He then pronounced sentence in favour of Baliol. Baliol soon found the yoke of Edward too galling to be borne; and making a league with Philip le Bel, king of France, he and his 10 countrymen endeavoured to throw it off. This alliance had the unexpected effect of giving political existence to the common people of England. The Earl of Leicester had, indeed, invited them to send representatives to parliament; but the invitation of a rebel had been but little regarded. Edward, surrounded by a factious 15 nobility, and threatened with two wars at once, perceived that he could not hope for external success, nor internal peace, unless the nation at large were interested in his favour; he, accordingly, summoned the people to choose their deputies, in order to give their consent to the imposition of taxes, saying, "It is but just 20 that what interests all, should be approved of by all."

With the supplies granted by these representatives of the people, Edward raised a large army, and quickly subdued the Scotch, made Baliol prisoner, and sent him to finish his days as a private individual in France. In vain did Bruce and Wallace, 25 heroic patriots, strive to resist the mighty power of Edward. They strove in vain; and had the English sovereign governed the Scotch with equity, their union with England would probably have taken place at that time. But his governors exercised shameful oppression, and harassed the nation with grievous vexations. Again and 30 again did the Scotch rise against their oppressors, and sometimes by the wonderful valour of William Wallace, their efforts were crowned with success. Yet, finally, they failed; and Wallace, their noble hero, being betrayed into the hands of Edward, instead of being treated with that respect which his laudable though fruitless 35 efforts merited, he was, contrary to all justice, executed as a traitor. Robert Bruce, son of the rival candidate with Baliol for the crown, then formed the design of delivering his country. He was living in London, a kind of prisoner at large, when his intentions were betrayed to the king, by Comyn, a treacherous friend. Of this the 40 Earl of Gloucester is said to have warned Bruce, by sending him a purse of gold and a pair of spurs. Though the roads were covered with snow, having caused his horse's shoes to be reversed, that he might not be tracked, he arrived safely in his own country, and roused the Scotch once more to arms. At first, his bold 45

attempt promised well, and he was crowned king of Scotland at Scone. But the scene soon changed. Three English armies invaded his territories at the same time. Bruce was defeated, and obliged to fly to concealment in one of the smallest of the western
 5 islands. His kinsmen and friends were taken prisoners and inhumanly massacred; and Edward, whose indignation had now risen to the highest pitch, threatening to exterminate the whole nation, marched early in the spring of the year 1307 towards the north, with a most formidable force of veteran soldiers and experienced
 10 commanders. But death arrested him in his sanguinary course. On the sands not far from Carlisle, he sank under the overpowering influence of a rapid disease. The immediate view of death did not quell his savage sentiments of revenge, for just before he expired, he exhorted his son to complete his schemes of vengeance,
 15 and commanded, that his bones should be carried in the front of the army, asserting that the Scotch would fly at the mere sight of his remains. — Edward had lived sixty-eight years, and reigned thirty-four. His stature was majestic, and his whole figure commanding. His legs were long, out of proportion to the rest of
 20 his body; which circumstance gave him the name of Longshanks.

(Holt.)

11. BATTLE OF CRECY.

The intelligence of Edward's unexpected invasion soon reached Paris; and threw Philip into great perplexity. He issued orders, however,
 25 for levying forces in all quarters; and despatched the Count of Eu, Constable of France, and the Count of Tancarville, with a body of troops, to the defence of Caën, a populous and commercial but open city, which lay in the neighbourhood of the English army. The temptation of so rich a prize, soon allured Edward to approach
 30 it; and the inhabitants, encouraged by their numbers, and the reinforcements which they daily received from the country, ventured to meet him in the field. But their courage failed them on the first shock: they fled with precipitation: the Counts of Eu and Tancarville were taken prisoners: the victors entered the city along with
 35 the vanquished, and a furious massacre commenced, without distinction of age, sex, or condition. The citizens, in despair, barricaded their houses, and assaulted the English with stones, bricks, and every missile weapon: the English made way by fire to the destruction of the citizens: till Edward, anxious to save both his spoil
 40 and his soldiers, stopped the massacre; and having obliged the inhabitants to lay down their arms, gave his troops licence to begin a more regular and less hazardous plunder of the city. The pillage continued for three days: the king reserved for his own share the

jewels, plate, silks, fine cloth, and fine linen; and he bestowed all the remainder of the spoil on his army. The whole was embarked on board the ships, and sent over to England, together with three hundred of the richest citizens of Caën, whose ransom was an additional profit, which he expected afterwards to levy. This dismal scene passed in the presence of two cardinal legates, who had come to negotiate a peace between the kingdoms. 5

The king moved next to Rouen, in hopes of treating that city in the same manner; but found that the bridge over the Seine was already broken down, and that the King of France himself was arrived there with his army. He marched along the banks of that river towards Paris, destroying the whole country, and every town and village which he met with on his road. Some of his light troops carried their ravages even to the gates of Paris; and the royal palace of St. Germans, together with Nanterre, Ruelle, and other villages, was reduced to ashes within sight of the capital. 10 The English intended to pass the river at Poissy, but found the French army encamped on the opposite banks, and the bridge at that place as well as all others over the Seine, broken down by orders from Philip. Edward now saw that the French meant to enclose him in their country, in hopes of attacking him with advantage on all sides: but he saved himself by a stratagem from this perilous situation. He gave his army orders to dislodge, and to advance further up the Seine; but immediately returning by the same road, he arrived at Poissy, which the enemy had already 25 quitted in order to attend his motions. He repaired the bridge with incredible celerity, passed over his army, and having thus disengaged himself from the enemy, advanced by quick marches towards Flanders. His vanguard, commanded by Harcourt, met with the townsmen of Amiens, who were hastening to reinforce their king, and defeated them with great slaughter: he passed by Beauvais, and burned the suburbs of that city: but as he approached the Somme, he found himself in the same difficulty as before: all the bridges on that river were either broken down or strongly guarded: an army, under the command of Godemar de Faye, was stationed on the opposite 35 banks: Philip was advancing on him from the other quarter, with an army of a hundred thousand men: and he was thus exposed to the danger of being enclosed, and of starving in an enemy's country. In this extremity he published a reward to any one that should bring him intelligence of a passage over the Somme. A peasant, 40 called Gobin Agace, whose name has been preserved by the share which he had in these important transactions, was tempted, on this occasion, to betray the interests of his country; and he informed Edward of a ford below Abbeville which had a sound bottom, and might be passed without difficulty at low water. The king hastened 45

thither, but found Godemar de Faye on the opposite banks. Being urged by necessity, he deliberated not a moment; but threw himself into the river, sword in hand, at the head of his troops; drove the enemy from their station; and pursued them to a distance on the plain. The French army under Philip arrived at the ford, when the rear-guard of the English were passing. So narrow was the escape which Edward, by his prudence and celerity, made from this danger! The rising of the tide prevented the French king from following him over the ford, and obliged that prince to take his route over the bridge at Abbeville; by which some time was lost.

It is natural to think that Philip, at the head of so vast an army, was impatient to take revenge on the English, and to prevent the disgrace to which he must be exposed, if an inferior enemy should be allowed, after ravaging so great a part of his kingdom, to escape with impunity. Edward also was sensible that such must be the object of the French monarch; and as he had advanced but a little way before his enemy, he saw the danger of precipitating his march over the plains of Picardy, and of exposing his rear to the insults of the numerous cavalry, in which the French camp abounded. He took, therefore, a prudent resolution: he chose his ground with advantage, near the village of Crecy; he disposed his army in excellent order; he determined to await in tranquillity the arrival of the enemy; and he hoped that their eagerness to engage, and to prevent his retreat, after all their past disappointments, would hurry them on to some rash and ill concerted action. He drew up his army on a gentle ascent, and divided them into three lines: the first was commanded by the Prince of Wales, and under him, by the Earls of Warwick and Oxford, by Harcourt, and by the Lords Chandos, Holland, and other noblemen: the Earls of Arundel and Northampton, with the Lords Willoughby, Basset, Roos, and Sir Lewis Tufton, were at the head of the second line: he took to himself the command of the third division, by which he purposed either to bring succour to the two first lines, or to secure a retreat in case of any misfortune, or to push his advantages against the enemy. He had likewise the precaution to throw up trenches on his flanks, in order to secure himself from the numerous bodies of the French, who might assail him from that quarter; and he placed all his baggage behind him in a wood, which he also secured by an intrenchment.

The skill and order of this disposition, with the tranquillity in which it was made, served extremely to compose the minds of the soldiers; and the king, that he might further inspirit them, rode through the ranks with such an air of cheerfulness and alacrity, as conveyed the highest confidence into every beholder. He pointed out to them the necessity to which they were reduced, and the

certain and inevitable destruction which awaited them, if, in their present situation, enclosed on all hands in an enemy's country, they trusted to any thing but their own valour, or gave that enemy an opportunity of taking revenge for the many insults and indignities which they had of late put upon him. He reminded them of the 5 visible ascendant which they had hitherto maintained over all the bodies of French troops that had fallen in their way; and assured them, that the superior numbers of the army which at present hovered over them, gave them not greater force, but was an advantage easily compensated by the order in which he had placed 10 his own army, and the resolution which he expected from them. He demanded nothing, he said, but that they would imitate his own example, and that of the Prince of Wales; and as the honour, the lives, the liberties of all were now exposed to the same danger, he was confident that they would make one common effort to extricate 15 themselves from the present difficulties, and that their united courage would give them the victory over all their enemies.

It is related by some historians, that Edward, besides the resources which he found in his own genius and presence of mind, employed also a new invention against the enemy, and placed in 20 his front some pieces of artillery, the first that had yet been made use of on any remarkable occasion in Europe. This is the epoch of one of the most singular discoveries that has been made among men; a discovery which changed by degrees the whole art of war, and by consequence many circumstances in the political government 25 of Europe. But the ignorance of that age in the mechanical arts rendered the progress of this new invention very slow. The artillery first framed were so clumsy, and of so difficult management, that men were not immediately sensible of their use and efficacy: and even to the present times, improvements have been continually mak- 30 ing on this furious engine, which, though it seemed contrived for the destruction of mankind, and the overthrow of empires, has in the issue rendered battles less bloody, and has given greater stability to civil societies. Nations by its means have been brought more to a level: conquests have become less frequent and rapid: 35 success in war has been reduced nearly to be a matter of calculation: and any nation overmatched by its enemies, either yields to their demands, or secures itself by alliances against their violence and invasion.

The invention of artillery was at this time known in France as 40 well as in England; but Philip in his hurry to overtake the enemy, had probably left his cannon behind him, which he regarded as a useless encumbrance. All his other movements discovered the same imprudence and precipitation. Impelled by anger, a dangerous counsellor, and trusting to the great superiority of his numbers, he 45

thought that all depended on forcing an engagement with the English; and that, if he could once reach the enemy in their retreat, the victory on his side was certain and inevitable. He made a hasty march, in some confusion, from Abbeville; but after he had advanced above two leagues, some gentlemen, whom he had sent before to take a view of the enemy, returned to him, and brought him intelligence, that they had seen the English drawn up in great order, and awaiting his arrival. They therefore advised him to defer the combat till the ensuing day, when his army would have recovered from their fatigue, and might be disposed into better order than their present hurry had permitted them to observe. Philip assented to this counsel; but the former precipitation of his march, and the impatience of the French nobility, made it impracticable for him to put it in execution. One division pressed upon another: orders to stop were not seasonably conveyed to all of them; this immense body was not governed by sufficient discipline to be manageable: and the French army, imperfectly formed into three lines, arrived, already fatigued and disordered, in presence of the enemy. The first line, consisting of 15,000 Genoese cross-bow men, was commanded by Anthony Doria and Charles Grimaldi: the second was led by the Count of Alençon, brother to the king: the king himself was at the head of the third. Besides the French monarch, there were no less than three crowned heads in this engagement: the King of Bohemia, the King of the Romans, his son; and the King of Majorca; with all the nobility and great vassals of the crown of France. The army now consisted of above 120,000 men, more than three times the number of the enemy. But the prudence of one man was superior to the advantage of all this force and splendour.

The English, on the approach of the enemy, kept their ranks firm and immovable; and the Genoese first began the attack. There had happened, a little before the engagement, a thunder shower, which had moistened and relaxed the strings of the Genoese cross-bows; their arrows, for this reason, fell short of the enemy. The English archers, taking their bows out of their cases, poured in a shower of arrows upon this multitude who were opposed to them, and soon threw them into disorder. The Genoese fell back upon the heavy-armed cavalry of the Count of Alençon; who, enraged at their cowardice, ordered his troops to put them to the sword. The artillery fired amidst the crowd; the English archers continued to send in their arrows among them; and nothing was to be seen in that vast body but hurry and confusion, terror and dismay. The young Prince of Wales had the presence of mind to take advantage of this situation, and to lead on his line to the charge. The French cavalry, however, recovering somewhat their order, and encouraged

by the example of their leader, made a stout resistance; and having at last cleared themselves of the Genoese runaways, advanced upon their enemies, and by their superior numbers began to hem them round. The Earls of Arundel and Northampton now advanced their line to sustain the prince, who, ardent in his first feats of arms, set 5 an example of valour which was imitated by all his followers. The battle became, for some time, hot and dangerous, and the Earl of Warwick, apprehensive of the event from the superior numbers of the French, despatched a messenger to the king, and entreated him to send succours to the relief of the prince. Edward had chosen 10 his station on the top of the hill; and he surveyed in tranquillity the scene of action. When the messenger accosted him, his first question was, whether the prince were slain or wounded? On receiving an answer in the negative, *Return*, said he, *to my son, and tell him that I reserve the honour of the day to him: I* 15 *am confident that he will show himself worthy of the honour of knighthood which I so lately conferred upon him: he will be able, without any assistance, to repel the enemy.* This speech being reported to the prince and his attendants inspired them with fresh courage: they made an attack with redoubled vigour on 20 the French, in which the Count of Alençon was slain: that whole line of cavalry was thrown into disorder: the riders were killed or dismounted: the Welch infantry rushed into the throng, and with their long knives cut the throats of all who had fallen; nor was any quarter given that day by the victors. 25

The King of France advanced in vain with the rear to sustain the line commanded by his brother: he found them already discomfited; and the example of their rout increased the confusion which was before but too prevalent in his own body. He had himself a horse killed under him: he was remounted; and though left almost 30 alone, he seemed still determined to maintain the combat; when John of Hainault seized the reins of his bridle, turned about his horse, and carried him off the field of battle. The whole French army took to flight, and was followed and put to the sword, without mercy, by the enemy; till the darkness of the night put an end to 35 the pursuit. The King, on his return to the camp, flew into the arms of the Prince of Wales, and exclaimed, *My brave son! Persevere in your honourable course: You are my son; for valiantly have you acquitted yourself to-day: You have shown yourself worthy of empire!* 40

This battle, which is known by the name of the battle of Crecy, began after three o'clock in the afternoon, and continued till evening. The next morning was foggy; and as the English observed that many of the enemy had lost their way in the night and in the mist, they employed a stratagem to bring them into their power: 45

they erected on the eminences some French standards which they had taken in the battle; and all who were allured by this false signal were put to the sword, and no quarter given them. In excuse for this inhumanity, it was alleged that the French king had given like orders to his troops; but the real reason probably was, that the English, in their present situation, did not choose to be encumbered with prisoners. On the day of battle and on the ensuing, there fell, by a moderate computation, 1200 French knights, 1400 gentlemen, 4000 men at arms, besides about 30,000 of inferior rank: many of the principal nobility of France, the Dukes of Lorraine and Bourbon, the Earls of Flanders, Blois, Vaudemont, Aumale, were left on the field of battle. The kings also of Bohemia and Majorca were slain: the fate of the former was remarkable: he was blind from age; but being resolved to hazard his person, and set an example to others, he ordered the reins of his bridle to be tied on each side to the horses of two gentlemen of his train; and his dead body, and those of his attendants, were afterwards found among the slain, with their horses standing by them in that situation. His crest was three ostrich feathers, and his motto these German words, *Ich dien*, *I serve*: which the Prince of Wales and his successors adopted in memorial of this great victory. The action may seem no less remarkable for the small loss sustained by the English, than for the great slaughter of the French; there were killed in it only one esquire and three knights, and very few of inferior rank; a demonstration, that the prudent disposition planned by Edward, and the disorderly attack made by the French, had rendered the whole rather a rout than a battle; which was indeed the common case with engagements in those times.

(David Hume.)

30 12. THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

In the village of Domremi, near Vaucouleur, on the borders of Lorraine, there lived a country girl of twenty seven years of age, called Joan d'Arc, who was servant in a small inn, and who in that station had been accustomed to tend the horses of the guests, to ride them without a saddle to the watering place, and to perform other offices, which in well-frequented inns, commonly fall to the share of the men servants. This girl was of an irreproachable life, and had not hitherto been remarked for any singularity; whether that she had met with no occasion to excite her genius, or that the unskilful eyes of those who conversed with her had not been able to discern her uncommon merit. It is easy to imagine, that the present situation of France was an interesting object even to persons of the lowest rank, and would become the frequent subject

of conversation: a young prince expelled his throne by the sedition of native subjects, and by the arms of strangers, could not fail to move the compassion of all his people, whose hearts were uncorrupted by faction; and the peculiar character of Charles, so strongly inclined to friendship and the tender passions, naturally rendered him 5 the hero of that sex whose generous minds know no bounds in their affections. The siege of Orleans, the progress of the English before that place, the great distress of the garrison and inhabitants, the importance of saving this city and its brave defenders, had turned thither the public eye; and Joan, inflamed by the general sentiment, 10 was seized with a wild desire of bringing relief to her sovereign in his present distresses. Her unexperienced mind, working day and night on this favourite object, mistook the impulses of passion for heavenly inspirations; and she fancied that she saw visions, and heard voices, exhorting her to re-establish the throne of France, 15 and to expel the foreign invaders. An uncommon intrepidity of temper made her overlook all the dangers which might attend her in such a path; and thinking herself destined by Heaven to this office, she threw aside all that bashfulness and timidity so natural to her sex, her years, and her low station. She went to Vau- 20 couleurs; procured admission to Baudricourt the governor; informed him of her inspirations and intentions; and conjured him not to neglect the voice of God, who spoke through her, but to second those heavenly revelations which impelled her to this glorious enterprise. Baudricourt treated her at first with some neglect; but on 25 her frequent returns to him, and importunate solicitations, he began to remark something extraordinary in the maid, and was inclined, at all hazards, to make so easy an experiment. It is uncertain whether this gentleman had discernment enough to perceive that great use might be made with the vulgar of so uncommon an en- 30 gine; or, what is more likely, in that credulous age, was himself a convert to this visionary: but he adopted at last the schemes of Joan; and he gave her some attendants, who conducted her to the French court, which at that time resided at Chinon.

It is the business of history to distinguish between the *mira-* 35 *culous* and the *marvellous*; to reject the first in all narrations merely profane and human; to doubt the second; and when obliged by unquestionable testimony, as in the present case, to admit of something extraordinary, to receive as little of it as is consistent with the known facts and circumstances. It is pretended, that 40 Joan, immediately on her admission, knew the king, though she had never seen his face before, and though he purposely kept himself in the crowd of courtiers, and had laid aside every thing in his dress and apparel which might distinguish him: that she offered him, in the name of the supreme Creator, to raise the siege of 45

Orleans, and conduct him to Rheims to be there crowned and anointed; and on his expressing doubts of her mission, revealed to him, before some sworn confidants, a secret, which was unknown to all the world beside himself, and which nothing but a heavenly inspiration could have discovered to her; and that she demanded, as the instrument of her future victories, a particular sword, which was kept in the church of St. Catherine of Fierbois, and which, though she had never seen it, she described by all its marks, and by the place in which it had long lain neglected. This is certain, that all these miraculous stories were spread abroad in order to captivate the vulgar. The more the king and his ministers were determined to give in to the illusion, the more scruples they pretended. An assembly of grave doctors and theologians cautiously examined Joan's mission, and pronounced it undoubted and supernatural. She was sent to the parliament, then residing at Poitiers; and was interrogated before that assembly: the presidents, the counsellors, who came persuaded of her imposture, went away convinced of her inspiration. A ray of hope began to break through that despair in which the minds of all men were before enveloped. Heaven had now declared itself in favour of France, and had laid bare its outstretched arm to take vengeance on her invaders. Few could distinguish between the impulse of inclination and the force of conviction; and none would submit to the trouble of so disagreeable a scrutiny.

After these artificial precautions and preparations had been for some time employed, Joan's requests were at last complied with: she was armed cap-à-pee, mounted on horseback, and shown in that martial habiliment before the whole people. Her dexterity in managing her steed, though acquired in her former occupation, was regarded as a fresh proof of her mission; and she was received with the loudest acclamations by the spectators. Her former occupation was even denied: she was no longer the servant of an inn: she was converted into a shepherdess, an employment much more agreeable to the imagination. To render her still more interesting, near ten years were subtracted from her age; and all the sentiments of love and of chivalry were thus united to those of enthusiasm, in order to inflame the fond fancy of the people with prepossessions in her favour.

When the engine was thus dressed up in full splendour, it was determined to essay its force against the enemy. Joan was sent to Blois, where a large convoy was prepared for the supply of Orleans, and an army of ten thousand men, under the command of St. Severe, assembled to escort it. She ordered all the soldiers to confess themselves before they set out on the enterprise; she displayed in her hands a consecrated banner; where the Supreme

Being was represented grasping the globe of earth, and surrounded with flower-de-luces: and she insisted, in right of her prophetic mission, that the convoy should enter Orleans by the direct road from the side of Beausse: but the Count of Dunois, unwilling to submit the rules of the military art to her inspirations, ordered it 5 to approach by the other side of the river, where, he knew, the weakest part of the English army was stationed.

Previous to this attempt, the maid had written to the regent, and to the English generals before Orleans, commanding them, in the name of Omnipotent Creator, by whom she was commissioned, 10 immediately to raise the siege, and to evacuate France; and menacing them with divine vengeance in case of their disobedience. All the English affected to speak with derision of the maid, and of her heavenly commission; and said, that the French king was now indeed reduced to a sorry pass when he had recourse to such 15 ridiculous expedients; but they felt their imagination secretly struck with the vehement persuasion which prevailed in all around them; and they waited with an anxious expectation, not unmixed with horror, for the issue of these extraordinary preparations.

As the convoy approached the river, a sally was made by the 20 garrison on the side of Beausse to prevent the English general from sending any detachment to the other side: the provisions were peaceably embarked in boats, which the inhabitants of Orleans had sent to receive them: the maid covered with her troops the embarkation: Suffolk did not venture to attack her: and the French 25 general carried back the army in safety to Blois; an alteration of affairs which was already visible to all the world, and which had a proportional effect on the minds of both parties.

The maid entered the city of Orleans arrayed in her military garb, and displaying her consecrated standard; and was received 30 as a celestial deliverer by all the inhabitants. They now believed themselves invincible under her influence; and Dunois himself, perceiving such a mighty alteration both in friends and foes, consented that the next convoy, which was expected in a few days, should enter by the side of Beausse. The convoy approached: no sign 35 of resistance appeared in the besiegers: the waggons and troops passed without interruption between the redoubts of the English: a dead silence and astonishment reigned among those troops, formerly so elated with victory, and so fierce for the combat.

The Earl of Suffolk was in a situation very unusual and extra- 40 ordinary, and which might well confound the man of the greatest capacity and firmest temper. He saw his troops overawed, and strongly impressed with the idea of a divine influence accompanying the maid. Instead of banishing these vain terrors by hurry, and action, and war, he waited till the soldiers should recover from 45

the panic; and he thereby gave leisure for those prepossessions to sink still deeper into their minds. The military maxims which are prudent in common cases, deceived him in these unaccountable events. The English felt their courage daunted and overwhelmed; 5 and thence inferred a divine vengeance hanging over them. The French drew the same inference from an inactivity so new and unexpected. Every circumstance was now reversed in the opinions of men, on which all depends: the spirit resulting from a long course of uninterrupted success was on a sudden transferred from 10 the victors to the vanquished.

The maid called aloud, that the garrison should remain no longer on the defensive; and she promised her followers the assistance of Heaven in attacking those redoubts of the enemy which had so long kept them in awe, and which they had never hitherto 15 dared to insult. The generals seconded her ardour: an attack was made on one redoubt, and it proved successful: all the English who defended the intrenchments were put to the sword, or taken prisoners: and Sir John Talbot himself, who had drawn together, from the other redoubts, some troops to bring them relief durst not 20 appear in the open field against so formidable an enemy.

Nothing after this success, seemed impossible to the maid and her enthusiastic votaries. She urged the generals to attack the main body of the English in their intrenchments; but Dunois, still unwilling to hazard the fate of France by too great temerity, and 25 sensible that the least reverse of fortune would make all the present visions evaporate, and restore every thing to its former condition, checked her vehemence, and proposed to her first to expel the enemy from their forts on the other side of the river, and thus lay the communication with the country entirely open, before she 30 attempted any more hazardous enterprise. Joan was persuaded, and these forts were vigorously assailed. In one attack the French was repulsed; the maid was left almost alone; she was obliged to retreat, and join the runaways; but displaying her sacred standard, and animating them with her countenance, her gestures, her exhortations, she led them back to the charge, and overpowered the 35 English in their intrenchments. In the attack of another fort, she was wounded in the neck with an arrow; she retreated a moment behind the assailants; she pulled out the arrow with her own hands; she had the wound quickly dressed; and she hastened back to head the 40 troops, and to plant her victorious banner on the ramparts of the enemy.

By all these successes the English were entirely chased from their fortifications on that side: they had lost above six thousand men in these different actions; and, what was still more important, their wonted courage and confidence was wholly gone, and had 45 given place to amazement and despair. The maid returned trium-

phant over the bridge, and was again received as the guardian angel of the city. After performing such miracles, she convinced the most obdurate incredulity of her divine mission: men felt themselves animated as by a superior energy, and thought nothing impossible to that divine hand which so visibly conducted them. It was in vain even for the English generals to oppose with their soldiers the prevailing opinion of supernatural influence: they themselves were probably moved by the same belief: the utmost they dared to advance was, that Joan was not an instrument of God; she was only the implement of the devil: but as the English had felt, to their sad experience, that the devil might be allowed sometimes to prevail, they derived not much consolation from the enforcing of this opinion.

It might prove extremely dangerous for Suffolk, with such intimidated troops, to remain any longer in the presence of so courageous and victorious an enemy; he therefore raised the siege, and retreated with all the precaution imaginable. The French resolved to push their conquests, and to allow the English no leisure to recover from their consternation. Charles formed a body of six thousand men, and sent them to attack Jergeau, whither Suffolk had retired with a detachment of his army. The siege lasted ten days; and the place was obstinately defended. Joan displayed her wonted intrepidity on the occasion. She descended into the fossé in leading the attack, and she there received a blow on the head with a stone, by which she was confounded and beaten to the ground: but she soon recovered herself; and in the end rendered the assault successful: Suffolk was obliged to yield himself prisoner to a Frenchman called Renaud; but before he submitted, he asked his adversary, whether he were a gentleman? On receiving a satisfactory answer, he demanded, whether he were a knight? Renaud replied, that he had not yet attained that honour. *Then I make you one*, replied Suffolk: upon which he gave him the blow with his sword, which dubbed him into that fraternity; and he immediately surrendered himself his prisoner.

The remainder of the English army was commanded by Fastolffe, Scales, and Talbot, who thought of nothing but of making their retreat, as soon as possible, into a place of safety; while the French esteemed the overtaking them equivalent to a victory. So much had the events which passed before Orleans altered every thing between the two nations! The vanguard of the French, under Richemont and Xantrailles, attacked the rear of the enemy at the village of Patay. The battle lasted not a moment: the English were discomfited and fled: the brave Fastolffe himself showed the example of flight to his troops; and the order of the garter was taken from him, as a punishment for this instance of cowardice.

Two thousand men were killed in this action, and both Talbot and Scales taken prisoners.

In the account of all these successes, the French writers, to magnify the wonder, represent the maid (who was now known by the appellation of *the maid of Orleans*) as not only active in combat, but as performing the office of general; directing the troops, conducting the military operations, and swaying the deliberations in all councils of war. It is certain, that the policy of the French court endeavoured to maintain this appearance with the public: but it is much more probable, that Dunois and the wiser commanders prompted her in all her measures, than that a country girl, without experience or education, could, on a sudden, become expert in a profession which requires more genius and capacity than any other active scene of life. It is sufficient praise, that she could distinguish the persons on whose judgment she might rely; that she could seize their hints and suggestions, and on a sudden, deliver their opinions as her own; and that she could curb, on occasion, that visionary and enthusiastic spirit with which she was actuated, and could temper it with prudence and discretion.

The raising of the siege of Orleans was one part of the maid's promise to Charles: the crowning of him at Rheims was the other: and she now vehemently insisted that she should forthwith set out on that enterprise. A few weeks before, such a proposal would have appeared the most extravagant in the world. Rheims lay in a distant quarter of the kingdom; was then in the hands of a victorious enemy; the whole road which led to it was occupied by their garrisons; and no man could be so sanguine as to imagine, that such an attempt could so soon come within the bounds of possibility. But as it was extremely the interest of Charles to maintain the belief of something extraordinary and divine in these events, and to avail himself of the present consternation of the English, he resolved to follow the exhortations of his warlike prophetess, and to lead his army upon this promising adventure. Hitherto he had kept remote from the scene of war: as the safety of the state depended upon his person, he had been persuaded to restrain his military ardour; but observing this prosperous turn of affairs, he now determined to appear at the head of his armies, and to set the example of valour to all his soldiers. And the French nobility saw at once their young sovereign assuming a new and more brilliant character, seconded by fortune, and conducted by the hand of Heaven; and they caught fresh zeal to exert themselves in replacing him on the throne of his ancestors.

Charles set out for Rheims at the head of twelve thousand men: he passed by Troye, which opened its gates to him: Chalons imitated the example: Rheims sent him a deputation with its keys,

before his approach to it: and he scarcely perceived, as he passed along, that he was marching through an enemy's country. The ceremony of his coronation was here performed with the holy oil, which a pigeon had brought to King Clovis from heaven on the first establishment of the French monarchy: the Maid of Orleans 5 stood by his side in complete armour, and displayed her sacred banner, which had so often dissipated and confounded his fiercest enemies: and the people shouted with the most unfeigned joy on viewing such a complication of wonder. After the completion of the ceremony, the maid threw herself at the king's feet, embraced 10 his knees, and with a flood of tears, which pleasure and tenderness exorted from her, she congratulated him on this singular and marvellous event.

Charles, thus crowned and anointed, became more respectable in the eyes of all his subjects, and seemed, in a manner, to receive 15 anew, from a heavenly commission, his title to their allegiance. The inclinations of men swaying their belief, no one doubted of the inspirations and prophetic spirit of the maid: so many incidents, which passed all human comprehension, left little room to question a superior influence: and the real and undoubted facts brought credit 20 to every exaggeration, which could scarcely be rendered more wonderful. Laon, Soissons, Chateau-Thierry, Provins, and many other towns and fortresses in that neighbourhood immediately after Charles's coronation, submitted to him on the first summons; and the whole nation was disposed to give him the most zealous testimonies of 25 their duty and affection.

Nothing can impress us with a higher idea of the wisdom, address, and resolution of the Duke of Bedford, than his being able to maintain himself in so perilous a situation, and to preserve some footing in France, after the defection of so many places, and 30 amidst the universal inclination of the rest to imitate that contagious example. This prince seemed present every where by his vigilance and foresight: he employed every resource which fortune had yet left him: he put all the English garrisons in a posture of defence: he kept a watchful eye over every attempt among the 35 French towards an insurrection: he retained the Parisians in obedience, by alternately employing caresses and severity: and knowing that the Duke of Burgundy was already wavering in his fidelity, he acted with so much skill and prudence, as to renew, in this dangerous crisis, his alliance with that prince; an alliance of 40 the utmost importance to the credit and support of the English government.

The small supplies which he received from England set the talents of this great man in a still stronger light. The ardour of the English for foreign conquests was now extremely abated by 45

time and reflection: the parliament seems even to have become sensible of the danger which might attend their further progress: no supply of money could be obtained by the regent during his greatest distresses; and men enlisted slowly under his standard, or
 5 soon deserted, by reason of the wonderful accounts which had reached England, of the magic, and sorcery, and diabolical power of the Maid of Orleans. It happened fortunately, in this emergency, that the Bishop of Winchester, now created a cardinal, landed at Calais with a body of five thousand men, which he was conducting into
 10 Bohemia, on a crusade against the Hussites. He was persuaded to lend these troops to his nephew during the present difficulties; and the regent was thereby enabled to take the field, and to oppose the French king, who was advancing with his army to the gates of Paris.

15 The extraordinary capacity of the Duke of Bedford appeared also in his military operations. He attempted to restore the courage of his troops by boldly advancing to the face of the enemy; but he chose his posts with so much caution, as always to decline a combat, and to render it impossible for Charles to attack him.
 20 He still attended that prince in all his movements; covered his own towns and garrisons; and kept himself in a posture to reap advantage from every imprudence or false step of the enemy. The French army, which consisted mostly of volunteers, who served at their own expense, soon after retired and was disbanded: Charles
 25 went to Bourges, the ordinary place of his residence, but not till he made himself master of Compeigne, Beauvais, Senlis, Sens, Laval, Lagni, St. Denis, and of many places in the neighbourhood of Paris, which the affections of the people had put into his hands.

The regent endeavoured to revive the declining state of his af-
 30 fairs by bringing over the young King of England, and having him crowned and anointed at Paris. All the vassals of the crown who lived within the provinces possessed by the English, swore new allegiance, and did homage to him. But this ceremony was cold and insipid, compared with the lustre which had attended the
 35 coronation of Charles at Rheims; and the Duke of Bedford expected more effect from an accident, which put into his hands the person that had been the author of all his calamities.

The Maid of Orleans, after the coronation of Charles, declared to the Count of Dunois, that her wishes were now fully gratified,
 40 and that she had no further desire than to return to her former condition, and to the occupation and course of life which became her sex; but that nobleman, sensible of the great advantages which might still be reaped from her presence in the army, exhorted her to persevere, till, by the final expulsion of the English, she had
 45 brought all her prophecies to their full completion. In pursuance

of this advice, she threw herself into the town of Compeigne, which was at that time besieged by the Duke of Burgundy, assisted by the Earls of Arundel and Suffolk; and the garrison on her appearance, believed themselves thenceforth invincible. But their joy was of short duration. The maid, next day after her arrival, headed 5 a sally upon the quarters of John of Luxembourg: she twice drove the enemy from their intrenchments; finding their numbers to increase every moment, she ordered a retreat; when hard pressed by the pursuers, she turned upon them, and made them again recoil; but being here deserted by her friends, and surrounded by the 10 enemy, she was at last, after exerting the utmost valour, taken prisoner by the Burgundians. The common opinion was, that the French officers, finding the merit of every victory ascribed to her, had in envy to her renown, by which they themselves were so much eclipsed, willingly exposed her to this fatal accident. 15

The envy of her friends, on this occasion, was not a greater proof of her merit than the triumph of her enemies. A complete victory would not have given more joy to the English and their partisans. The service of *Te Deum*, which has so often been profaned by princes, was publicly celebrated, on this fortunate event, 20 at Paris. The Duke of Bedford fancied, that, by the captivity of that extraordinary woman, who had blasted all his successes, he should again recover his former ascendant over France, and to push further the present advantage, he purchased the captive from John of Luxembourg, and formed a prosecution against her, which 25 whether it proceeded from vengeance or policy, was equally barbarous and dishonourable.

There was no possible reason why Joan should not be regarded as a prisoner of war, and be entitled to all the courtesy and good usage which civilized nations practise towards enemies on these 30 occasions. She had never, in her military capacity, forfeited, by any act of treachery or cruelty, her claim to that treatment; she was unstained by any civil crime: even the virtues and the very decorums of her sex had ever been rigidly observed by her: and though her appearing in war, and leading armies to battle, may seem an 35 exception, she had thereby performed such signal service to her prince, that she had abundantly compensated for this irregularity; and was, on that very account, the more an object of praise and admiration. It was necessary, therefore, for the Duke of Bedford to interest religion some way in the prosecution; and to cover, 40 under that cloak, his violation of justice and humanity.

The Bishop of Beauvais, a man wholly devoted to the English interests, presented a petition against Joan, on pretence that she was taken within the bounds of his diocese; and he desired to have her tried by an ecclesiastical court for sorcery, impiety, idolatry, and 45

magic: the university of Paris was so mean as to join in the same request: several prelates, among whom the Cardinal of Winchester was the only Englishman, were appointed her judges: they held their court in Rouen, where the young King of England then resided: and the maid clothed in her former military apparel, but loaded with irons, was produced before this tribunal.

She first desired to be eased of her chains: her judges answered, that she had once already attempted an escape, by throwing herself from a tower: she confessed the fact, maintained the justice of her intention, and owned that, if she could, she would still execute that purpose. All her other speeches showed the same firmness and intrepidity: though harassed with interrogatories during the course of near four months, she never betrayed any weakness or womanish submission: and no advantage was gained over her. The point which her judges pushed most vehemently, was her visions and revelations, and intercourse with departed saints; and they asked her, whether she would submit to the church the truth of these inspirations? She replied, that she would submit them to God, the fountain of truth. They then exclaimed, that she was a heretic, and denied the authority of the church. She appealed to the Pope: they rejected her appeal.

They asked her, why she put trust in her standard, which had been consecrated by magical incantations? She replied, that she put trust in the Supreme Being alone, whose image was impressed upon it. They demanded, why she carried in her hand that standard at the anointment and coronation of Charles at Rheims? She answered, that the person who had shared the danger was entitled to share the glory. When accused of going to war, contrary to the decorum of her sex, and of assuming government and command over men; she scrupled not to reply, that her sole purpose was to defeat the English, and to expel them the kingdom. In the issue, she was condemned for all the crimes of which she had been accused, aggravated by heresy; her revelations were declared to be inventions of the devil to delude the people; and she was sentenced to be delivered over to the secular arm.

Joan, so long surrounded by inveterate enemies, who treated her with every mark of contumely; brow-beaten and overawed by men of superior rank, and invested with the ensigns of a sacred character, which she had been accustomed to revere, felt her spirit at last subdued; and those visionary dreams of inspiration, in which she had been buoyed up by the triumphs of success and the applauses of her own party, gave way to the terrors of that punishment to which she was sentenced. She publicly declared herself willing to recant; she acknowledged the illusion of those revelations which the church had rejected; and she promised never more to maintain

them. Her sentence was then mitigated: she was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, and to be fed during life on bread and water.

Enough was now done to fulfil all political views, and to convince both the French and the English, that the opinion of divine influence, which had so much encouraged the one and daunted the 5 other, was entirely without foundation. But the barbarous vengeance of Joan's enemies was not satisfied with this victory. Suspecting that the female dress which she had now consented to wear, was disagreeable to her, they purposely placed in her apartment a suit of men's apparel; and watched for the effects of that temptation 10 upon her. On the sight of a dress, in which she had acquired so much renown, and which, she once believed, she wore by the particular appointment of Heaven, all her former ideas and passions revived; and she ventured in her solitude to clothe herself again in the forbidden garment. Her insidious enemies caught her in that 15 situation: her fault was interpreted to be no less than a relapse into heresy; no recantation would now suffice, and no pardon could be granted her. She was condemned to be burned in the marketplace of Rouen; and the infamous sentence was accordingly executed. This admirable heroine, to whom the more generous superstition of 20 the ancients would have erected altars, was, on pretence of heresy and magic, delivered over alive to the flames, and expiated, by that dreadful punishment, the signal services which she had rendered to her prince, and to her native country. (David Hume.)

13. THE WAR OF THE ROSES.

25

As Henry VI. advanced in years, he manifested a mild and gentle disposition, but an utter incapacity for steering the vessel of the state through the waves of a stormish sea. By the influence of the Earl of Suffolk, an ambitious and unprincipled man, Henry married Margaret, daughter of René, of Anjou, titular king of 30 Naples, a woman of great energy of mind, and unbounded love of power, who, consequently, governed him with absolute sway. The enthusiasm, excited in the French nation by Joan of Arc, who imagined herself to be commissioned by the Almighty to deliver her country from a foreign yoke, of which Charles and his com- 35 manders skilfully made use — the disputes which took place among the English captains; and the defection of the Duke of Burgundy, together with the loss of Talbot, the illustrious Earl of Shrewsbury, and several other brave warriors, gradually transferred the conquests made by Henry V., to their lawful possessors. The nation mur- 40 mured; the barons quarrelled with one another, till at last blazed forth that dreadful flame of civil war which raged for thirty years

— produced twelve pitched battles — sacrificed upwards of one hundred thousand lives — and nearly destroyed the ancient nobility of England.

Richard, Duke of York, was descended, by the female line, 5 from Lionel, the second son of Edward III., and was, therefore, nearer the throne, in regular succession, than Henry VI., who derived his descent from the Duke of Lancaster, the third son of that mighty monarch. Richard was endowed with considerable abilities, great valour, and popular qualities. His party was sus- 10 tained by the Earl of Salisbury and the Earl of Warwick, the most potent baron and formidable warrior of his age. The Lancastrian cause was espoused by the Dukes of Suffolk and Somerset, the Earl of Northumberland, Clifford, and many other famous nobles. The latter assumed the *red rose* as their emblem, while the Yorkists 15 adopted the *white rose* as the sign of their faction. Various were the changes of fortune which took place in these unhappy and most destructive dissensions. Henry was alternately in the hands of both parties, and by each played as a mere puppet. His queen Margaret manifested astonishing activity and fortitude, but disgraced by cruel 20 and implacable revenge. The Duke of York himself perished in the conflict with his youthful son, the Duke of Rutland; but Warwick and the other sons of York sustained their cause. Edward, the eldest son of Richard, was crowned at London, under the title of Edward IV. Henry, captive for the third time, was lodged in 25 the Tower of London. Margaret and his son took refuge in France. To all appearances, the struggle was now over; but it proved to be not so. Another storm was raised by pride and anger, which produced another change. Warwick was sent by Edward to the French Court, to demand for him in marriage Bona of Savoy, the 30 sister-in-law of Louis XI. The illustrious envoy succeeded in his commission, and obtained the Princess. But in the intervening time, the capricious Edward had espoused and crowned a beautiful and accomplished woman, daughter of the Duchess of Bedford, and widow of Sir John Grey. This imprudent act naturally displeased 35 the French monarch, and filled the high spirited Warwick with indignation. This, however, he concealed in his own bosom for some years, till he found an opportunity of displaying it effectually.

George, Duke of Clarence, one of Edward's brothers, being prevented by him from marrying a rich heiress, who was given to 40 the queen's brother, was impelled, by the rage of disappointment, to an open rupture with the king; and with him Warwick united. Their first movements were unsuccessful. They were obliged to fly to France: where the desire of vengeance reconciled them to Queen Margaret. Louis furnished them with troops, vessels, and money. 45 Warwick arrived in safety at Dartmouth; declared himself the avenger

of the house of Lancaster; and soon saw himself at the head of sixty thousand men. Taken by surprize, and unable to resist such a torrent, Edward fled into Holland, after having narrowly escaped being taken prisoner. Henry VI. was released from the Tower, and, for the fourth time, reseated on the throne. But the unfortunate sovereign did not remain long in that dangerous situation. Edward returned with a small force, furnished for him by his ally, the Duke of Burgundy. Landing in Yorkshire, the adherents to his cause crowded to his standard by thousands; he led them to London, and was well received in that city. At length the hostile armies met near Barnet, and a sanguinary battle took place. In the heat of the fight the fickle Duke of Clarence went over to his brother with the body of men which he commanded; and Warwick, who had been styled the king-maker, was slain. In another battle near Tewkesbury, the unhappy Margaret vainly endeavoured to support her falling cause. The Lancastrians were again defeated; their leader, the Duke of Somerset, was slain; and the queen, with her son Edward, a high-minded and gallant young prince, fell into the power of the victors, who cruelly murdered the latter, and kept the former in captivity, till she was ransomed by the king of France. Almost all the friends of the Lancastrian family had now perished in battle or on the scaffold. Henry VI. did not long survive his irremediable misfortunes. After a miserable reign of fifty-two years he died in the Tower, A. D. 1472; — according to most English historians, assassinated by Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the valiant, fierce, and pitiless brother of Edward IV.

Edward IV. may be regarded as being established on the throne of England, A. D. 1472. A profound calm now succeeded the dreadful tempest which had raged so long, and scattered desolation so widely from its wings. Edward was remarkable for the beauty of his form, and for active valour. But there ends his praise. He was vindictive, cruel, and shamefully intemperate, indulging all his passions, without scruple, or limit. In him it clearly appeared that the love of pleasure by no means tends to soften the angry and inhuman feelings. Though he had apparently pardoned Neville, Archbishop of York, for having deserted him, he sent him to perish in prison in a foreign land. Though his brother Clarence, by deserting Warwick in the midst of the fight, had probably given victory to Edward, yet mindful only of that prince's former defection, he impeached him before the parliament and procured his condemnation and death. Scarcely had he satisfied his thirst of revenge, when he yielded to the temptations of ambition, and formed the project of attacking France in conjunction with the duke of Burgundy. He actually passed into that country at the head of a formidable army, but not being supported by his ally, he accepted an annual

tribute, which Louis offered for the sake of peace. In seven years after, death delivered the world from this pernicious monarch, A. D. 1483. He was forty three years of age.

The deceased monarch left two sons and six daughters. The
5 eldest son, Edward V. was immediately acknowledged as king of England, but as he was only thirteen years old, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, his uncle, governed under his name as Protector. This ambitious and crafty man gradually gained possession of the supreme power, and destroyed his rivals and opponents, the relations of the
10 queen. He seized the person of the young sovereign, and of his brother, Richard, Duke of York, and under pretext of securing them from sudden violence, placed them in the Tower. Afterwards he caused reports of their illegitimacy to be spread, asserting that the late king was married to another woman, when he took Elizabeth
15 Grey to wife; and that he himself was the only lawful heir of the crown. Endeavouring to engage Hastings, the lord chamberlain, to destroy the young princes, and finding him faithful to the royal house, he procured his condemnation and death. By means of the Duke of Buckingham, he then obtained the apparent choice of the
20 people, and their invitation to assume the sceptre. In this manner, Richard of Gloucester ascended the throne; and soon after this event, his innocent nephews were murdered, A. D. 1485. It is supposed that they were stifled by his command, and buried beneath a heap of stones. In the reign of Charles II. the rubbish
25 which was imagined to cover the remains of the unfortunate princes, being removed in order to make a new entrance to the chapel of the white tower, in the great Tower of London, two skeletons were found, answering in size and position, the tradition concerning the interment of the royal children. The bones were transported to
30 Westminster Abbey, and there deposited under a marble monument.

Wicked associates seldom live long in friendship; Richard and Buckingham, the vile instrument of his exaltation, soon quarrelled. There existed a branch of the house of Lancaster, Henry, Earl of Richmond, by the paternal line, grandson of Owen Tudor, whom
35 Catherine of France had married after the decease of her noble husband, Henry V., and descended by the female side from Edward III. He was, at that time, living in Brittany, rather guarded than protected by its duke. Him Buckingham invited to wrest the sceptre from the hands of the tyrant Richard; while he himself
40 appearing in arms prematurely, was taken and beheaded. In the mean time, Richmond obtained a small supply of troops from the French king; and, landing in Wales, was there joined by Vere, Earl of Oxford, and many remaining friends of the red rose. Thence he marched forwards to Bosworth in Leicestershire where
45 Richard met him with a far superior force. An engagement ensued;

at the very commencement of which, Lord Stanley, who had married the mother of Richmond, and who had suffered under the oppressive sway of the usurper, deserted from him with a considerable body of troops. The rest of the royal army was speedily routed, and Richard, rushing among his enemies with desperate fury, was 5 slain, after having killed Sir Robert Brandon, who bore Richmond's standard. Together with him fell the Duke of Norfolk and four thousand common men, fighting in a cause of little importance to their welfare, A. D. 1485. Upon the field of battle, the victorious army, with loud shouts, saluted Richmond king of England, and he 10 ascended the throne without further opposition. The contest between the white and red roses was now terminated for ever. The families of York and Lancaster were united by the marriage of Richmond, now Henry VII., with Elizabeth, eldest daughter of Edward IV.; and an end was happily put to those dreadful civil 15 wars, which had sacrificed multitudes of valuable citizens, and almost broken the strength of the nation. (Holt.)

14. HENRY VII.

Henry Tudor was a wise and prudent monarch, who knew how to appreciate the value of peace, and felt its necessity for 20 reviving the strength of the nation. His reign of nearly four and twenty years was fortunate and tranquill, rather than brilliant, and was so much the more beneficial to his subjects. Toward its commencement he suppressed two dangerous insurrections by his activity and vigour; one raised by Simnal, the son of a baker, 25 who pretended that the infortunate Duke of Clarence was his father; the other by Perkin Warbeck, who asserted himself to be Richard, Duke of York, escaped from the assassins employed by his inhuman uncle; and who had actually murdered his brother Edward V. Henry VII. found the royal treasury nearly exhausted by the ex- 30 travagance of his predecessors. Habits of strict economy were, therefore, absolutely necessary. Unfortunately those habits became immoderately strong and finally degenerated into rapacity and avarice. By Elizabeth of York, Henry had two sons; the elder of whom Arthur, a prince whose talents and conduct raised the 35 most pleasing expectations, died before his father, to the great regret of the whole nation; especially as Henry, the second son, did not afford such cheering hopes. Henry VII., by wise and cautious measures, endeavoured to destroy the overgrown and pernicious power of the nobles. Till his time, the great lords had the use of 40 their possessions for their lives only, and had not the liberty of alienating or selling them; in consequence of which, such accumu-

lations took place in some high families, that, by degrees, they became proprietors of the greater part of the lands of the whole kingdom. To remedy this evil, the king granted these great landholders permission to sell. They took advantage of this permission, 5 and parted with their lands, or portions of them, to supply the cravings of dissipation and luxury. Private individuals, who had enriched themselves by industry, purchased them, and thus the lower orders of citizens acquired that influence which the barons lost; and a more even balance was established between the two orders.

10 This monarch patronized commerce and voyages of discovery, and invited the illustrious navigator Columbus to enter into his service, which was prevented only by an unlucky accident. In his reign Sebastian Cabot, sailing from Bristol, discovered that part of America, called Newfoundland. He caused to be constructed an 15 enormously large vessel, named "the Great Henry," and by maintaining ships of his own, in fact laid the foundation of that navy which is the grand bulwark of Britain. Before his time, if the exigencies of the state required a fleet, the monarch had no other means of providing one than hiring, or forcibly seizing the vessels of the 20 merchants. Henry died of consumption in the fifty-third year of his life, A. D. 1509, and was buried in a magnificent chapel, which he had built in Westminster Abbey, and which is still one of the greatest ornaments of that venerable edifice. The favourite maxim of this sovereign was, "When Christ came into the world, peace 25 was sung, and when he left it peace was bequeathed," and had this been the ruling principle of preceding and successive sovereigns, much less bloodshed and animosity, much less natural and moral evil, would have existed in the world. (Holt.)

15. HENRY VIII.

30 Upon the decease of his father, Henry VIII. ascended the throne without a rival, flourishing in youthful vigour and personal beauty, the object of the best hopes and most pleasing expectations of his subjects. Listening to the advice of his prudent grandmother, the countess of Richmond and Derby, he selected a wise and 35 respectable council; he completed his marriage with Catherine, who having been espoused to his brother Arthur, upon the prince's lamented death was retained in England to become his wife; he gave up to the resentment of the nation, Dudley and Empson, the odious ministers of the exactions of Henry VII. Adorned with 40 manly and literary accomplishments, the young monarch attracted the attention of civilized Europe, and his friendship was courted by its greatest potentates. But this bright prospect was too soon

obsured by threatening clouds. Henry became extravagant, luxurious, intemperate, and quickly lavished in useless and vain pomp, the immense treasures which the late king had amassed. These he might have applied to public benefit, and it was surely his duty so to do. In his alliances and attachments he was extremely fickle 5 and capricious. Sometimes he was the friend of the gallant romantic Francis I. of France, and at other times he united himself with the cautious and crafty Charles V. Emperor of Germany.

Youthful effervescence and activity of mind degenerated into violence and cruelty, and he finally became an odious tyrant! 10 Wolsey, a priest of great abilities and learning, but cunning and ambitious, by flattering the passions of Henry, and administering to his absurd and extravagant pleasures, gained almost his exclusive favour. He rose rapidly to the highest rank and offices; and was graced by the pope with the title of Cardinal. This man, for a 15 season, ruled insensibly the fiery monarch, and consequently the whole realm. The parliaments were submissive, the king was absolute, and English liberty appeared to be expiring. At this period Luther, a German ecclesiastic, began to attack the corruptions introduced, or at least countenanced by the Roman Pontiffs. 20 Henry VIII., having been intended for an ecclesiastical life, and destined to the archbishopric of Canterbury, before his brother's death, had been educated in the knowledge and practice of polemical theology. Proud of this attainment Henry entered the lists with Luther, and defended the power of the popes, and the seven 25 Catholic sacraments. Pope Leo X. conferred upon the royal disputant, the title of "Defender of the Faith," little expecting that this defender would finally sever England from the Holy See.

The passions of Henry VIII. were impetuous, and he had not acquired the power of commanding them. But from what was 30 a personal evil to Henry himself and doubtless an apparent evil to those around, the infinitely wise and benevolent disposer of all events educed good. From this source arose the freedom of England from ecclesiastical tyranny. The king indulging a capricious fancy for Anne Boleyn, a beautiful and accomplished young woman, 35 one of the queen's attendants, in order to marry her wished to obtain a divorce from Catherine. For this purpose, he applied to Pope Clement VII. to annul his union with his brother's widow, as being unlawful, and pretending great scruples of conscience on that account. Catherine of Arragon was the aunt of the powerful 40 Charles V. of Germany, whose menaces deterred Clement from complying with the request of Henry. Finding that he could not accomplish his plan, the impatient spirit of the king burst forth into a flame. He disgraced Cardinal Wolsey, who dared not sup-

port his temporal sovereign against his spiritual lord; and the fallen favourite died of grief and mortified pride.

Cranmer, a learned ecclesiastic, who was soon after created archbishop of Canterbury, devised the fortunate expedient of consulting the most celebrated universities of Europe upon the legality of the marriage with his brother's widow. The greater part of those learned bodies condemned such an union, and declared that the pope himself had not authority to sanction it. Whereupon, Henry repudiated Catherine, and substituted the object of his fickle affection in her place. Despising a bull of excommunication which Clement published against him, the king induced his compliant Parliament to declare him head of the English church instead of the pope, and to break of all connexion with the Holy See. Henry proceeded to expel the monks from their convents and to take possession of their wealth, an act of cruel injustice. He persecuted to death both protestants and papists who denied his supremacy over the church, or presumed to profess religious opinions different from those which he pretended to hold. He created six new bishoprics, caused the Bible to be translated into English, and adopted partly the Romish and partly the Reformed creed. Sir Thomas More, a man of solid learning, great abilities and admirable character, who had succeeded Wolsey in the office of Chancellor and had executed the duties of that important office with undeviating integrity, together with Fisher, bishop of Rochester, who deservedly enjoyed high reputation, were sacrificed by Henry's indiscriminating anger. In comparatively a short time, Henry's affections were alienated from Anne Boleyn, and he caused her to be tried, condemned, and beheaded, though evidently innocent of the charges brought against her.

Immediately after her death, Henry married Jane Seymour, who became the mother of Edward VI. Death removing her, this capricious sovereign espoused Anne of Cleves, a German princess; but her he speedily divorced, and disgraced Cromwell, an able statesman and zealous friend of the reformation, for having advised that marriage. The tyrant caused him to be impeached of high treason and beheaded. Catherine Howard next succeeded to the dangerous dignity of queen, and experienced the fate of Anne Boleyn. Catherine Parr, widow of Lord Latimer, Henry's sixth wife, fortunately survived this sanguinary husband, though she had a narrow escape; for the king began to suspect that she presumed to differ from his religious opinions, and her enemies were urging him to her destruction. In the mean time, Henry had absurdly engaged in successive wars of no long duration, nor of great consequence; he gained some advantages in France, and while he was in that country, James IV. of Scotland, who had embraced

this opportunity of attacking England, was defeated and killed by the Earl of Surrey at Flodden field. Henry VIII., rendered still more irritable than ever by disease, fortunately for his subjects at large, and yet more fortunately for those immediately about his person, died A. D. 1547.

(Holt.) 5

16. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA (1492).

The situation of Columbus was daily becoming more and more critical. In proportion as he approached the regions where he expected to find land, the impatience of his crews augmented. The favourable signs which increased his confidence, were derided by them as delusive; and there was danger of their rebelling, and obliging him to turn back, when on the point of realizing the object of all his labours. They beheld themselves with dismay still wafted onward, over the boundless wastes of what appeared to them a mere watery desert, surrounding the habitable world. What was to become of them should their provisions fail? Their ships were too weak and defective even for the great voyage they had already made, but if they were still to press forward, adding at every moment to the immense expanse behind them, how should they ever be able to return, having no intervening port where they might victual and refit.

In this way they fed each other's discontents, gathering together in little knots, and fomenting a spirit of mutinous opposition: and when we consider the natural fire of the Spanish temperament and its impatience of control; and that a great part of these men were sailing on compulsion: we cannot wonder that there was imminent danger of their breaking forth into open rebellion and compelling Columbus to turn back. In their secret conferences they exclaimed against him as a desperado, bent, in a mad phantasy, upon doing something extravagant to render himself notorious. What were their sufferings and dangers to one evidently content to sacrifice his own life for the chance of distinction? What obligations bound them to continue on with him: or when were the terms of their agreement to be considered as fulfilled? They had already penetrated unknown seas, untraversed by a sail, far beyond where man had ever before ventured. They had done enough to gain themselves a character for courage and hardihood in undertaking such an enterprise and persisting in it so far. How much further were they to go in quest of a merely conjectured land? Were they to sail on until they perished, or until all return became impossible? In such case they would be the authors of their own destruction.

On the other hand, should they consult their safety, and return back before too late, who would blame them? Any complaints made by Columbus would be of no weight; he was a foreigner, without friends or influence; his schemes had been condemned by the learned, and discountenanced by people of all ranks. He had no party to uphold him, and a host of opponents whose pride of opinion would be gratified by his failure. Or, as an effectual means of preventing his complaints, they might throw him into the sea, and give out that he had fallen overboard while busy with his instruments contemplating the stars; a report which no one would have either the inclination or the means to controvert.

Columbus was not ignorant of the mutinous disposition of his crew, but he still maintained a serene and steady countenance; soothing some with gentle words; endeavouring to stimulate the pride or avarice of others, and openly menacing the refractory with signal punishment, should they do any thing to impede the voyage.

On the 25th of September, the wind again became favourable, and they were able to resume their course directly to the west. The airs being light, and the sea calm, the vessels sailed near to each other, and Columbus had much conversation with Martin Alonzo Pinzon on the subject of a chart, which the former had sent three days before on board of the Pinta. Pinzon thought that, according to the indications of the map, they ought to be in the neighbourhood of Cipango, and the other islands which the admiral had therein delineated. Columbus partly entertained the same idea, but thought it possible that the ships might have been borne out of their track by the prevalent currents, or that they had not come so far as the pilots had reckoned. He desired that the chart might be returned, and Pinzon tying it to the end of a cord, flung it on board to him. While Columbus, his pilot, and several of his experienced mariners were studying the map, and endeavouring to make out from it their actual position, they heard a shout from the Pinta, and looking up, beheld Martin Alonzo Pinzon mounted on the stern of his vessel, crying, "Land! land! Señor, I claim my reward!" He pointed at the same time to the south-west, where there was indeed an appearance of land at about twenty-five leagues' distance. Upon this Columbus threw himself on his knees and returned thanks to God; and Martin Alonzo repeated the *Gloria in excelsis*, in which he was joined by his own crew and that of the admiral.

The seamen now mounted to the mast-head or climbed about the rigging, straining their eyes in the direction pointed out. The conviction became so general of land in that quarter, and the joy of the people so ungovernable, that Columbus found it necessary to vary from his usual course, and stand all night to the south-west.

The morning light, however, put an end to all their hopes, as to a dream. The fancied land proved to be nothing but an evening cloud, and had vanished in the night. With dejected hearts they once more resumed their western course, from which Columbus would never have varied, but in compliance with their clamorous wishes. 5

For several days they continued on with the same propitious breeze, tranquil sea, and mild, delightful weather. The water was so calm that the sailors amused themselves with swimming about the vessel. Dolphins began to abound, and flying fish, darting into the air, fell upon the decks. The continued signs of land diverted 10 the attention of the crews, and insensibly beguiled them onward.

On the 1st of October, according to the reckoning of the pilot of the admiral's ship, they had come five hundred and eighty leagues west since leaving the Canary islands. The reckoning which Columbus showed the crew was five hundred and eighty-four, but 15 the reckoning which he kept privately, was seven hundred and seven. On the following day, the weeds floated from east to west; and on the third day no birds were to be seen.

The crews now began to fear that they had passed between islands, from one to the other of which the birds had been flying. 20 Columbus had also some doubts of the kind, but refused to alter his westward course. The people again uttered murmurs and menaces; but on the following day they were visited by such flights of birds, and the various indications of land became so numerous, that from a state of despondency they passed to one of 25 confident expectation.

Eager to obtain the promised pension, the seamen were continually giving the cry of land, on the least appearance of the kind. To put a stop to these false alarms, which produced continual disappointments, Columbus declared that should any one give such 30 notice, and land not be discovered within three days afterwards, he should thenceforth forfeit all claims to the reward.

On the evening of the 6th of October, Martin Alonzo Pinzon began to lose confidence in their present course, and proposed that they should stand more to the southward. Columbus, however, 35 still persisted in steering directly west. Observing this difference in opinion in a person so important in his squadron as Pinzon, and fearing that chance or design might scatter the ships, he ordered that, should either of the caravels be separated from him, it should stand to the west, and endeavour as soon as possible to join 40 company again: he directed, also, that the vessels should keep near to him at sunrise and sunset, as at these times the state of the atmosphere is most favourable to the discovery of distant land.

On the morning of the 7th of October, at sunrise, several of the admiral's crew thought they beheld land in the west, but so 45

indistinctly that no one ventured to proclaim it, lest he should be mistaken, and forfeit all chance of the reward: the Niña however, being a good sailer, pressed forward to ascertain the fact. In a little while a flag was hoisted at her mast-head, and a gun discharged, being the preconcerted signals for land. New joy was awakened throughout the little squadron, and every eye was turned to the west. As they advanced, however, their cloud-built hopes faded away, and before evening the fancied land had again melted into air.

10 The crews now sank into a degree of dejection proportioned to their recent excitement; but new circumstances occurred to arouse them. Columbus, having observed great flights of small field-birds going towards the south-west, concluded they must be secure of some neighbouring land, where they would find food and
15 a resting-place. He knew the importance which the Portuguese voyagers attached to the flight of birds, by following which they had discovered most of their islands. He had now come seven hundred and fifty leagues, the distance at which he had computed to find the island of Cipango; as there was no appearance of it,
20 he might have missed it through some mistake in the latitude. He determined, therefore, on the evening of the 7th of October, to alter his course to the west-south-west, the direction in which the birds generally flew, and continue that direction for at least two days. After all, it was no great deviation from his main
25 course, and would meet the wishes of the Pinzons, as well as be inspiring to his followers generally.

For three days they stood in this direction, and the further they went the more frequent and encouraging were the signs of land. Flights of small birds of various colours, some of them such
30 as sing in the fields, came flying about the ships, and then continued towards the south-west, and others were heard also flying by in the night. Tunny fish played about the smooth sea, and a heron, a pelican, and a duck, were seen, all bound in the same direction. The herbage which floated by was fresh and green, as
35 if recently from land, and the air, Columbus observes, was sweet and fragrant as April breezes in Seville.

All these, however, were regarded by the crews as so many delusions beguiling them on to destruction; and when on the evening of the third day they beheld the sun go down upon a
40 shoreless horizon, they broke forth into turbulent clamour. They exclaimed against this obstinacy in tempting fate by continuing on into a boundless sea. They insisted upon turning homeward, and abandoning the voyage as hopeless. Columbus endeavoured to pacify them by gentle words and promises of large rewards; but
45 finding that they only increased in clamour, he assumed a decided

tone. He told them it was useless to murmur, the expedition had been sent by the sovereigns to seek the Indies, and, happen what might, he was determined to persevere, until, by the blessing of God, he should accomplish the enterprise.

Columbus was now at open defiance with his crew, and his situation became desperate. Fortunately the manifestations of the vicinity of land were such on the following day as no longer to admit a doubt. Beside a quantity of fresh weeds, such as grow in rivers, they saw a green fish of a kind which keeps about rocks; then a branch of thorn with berries on it, and recently separated from the tree, floated by them; then they picked up a reed, a small board, and above all, a staff artificially carved. All gloom and mutiny now gave way to sanguine expectation; and throughout the day each one was eagerly on the watch, in hopes of being the first to discover the long-sought-for land. 15

In the evening, when, according to invariable custom on board of the admiral's ship, the mariners had sung the *salve regina*, or vesper hymn to the Virgin, he made an impressive address to his crew. He pointed out the goodness of God in thus conducting them by soft and favouring breezes across a tranquil ocean, cheering their hopes continually with fresh signs, increasing as their fears augmented, and thus leading and guiding them to a promised land. He now reminded them of the orders he had given on leaving the Canaries, that, after sailing westward seven hundred leagues, they should not make sail after midnight. Present appearances authorized such a precaution. He thought it probable they would make land that very night; he ordered, therefore, a vigilant lookout to be kept from the forecastle, promising to whomsoever should make the discovery, a doublet of velvet, in addition to the pension to be given by the sovereigns. 20 25 30

The breeze had been fresh all day, with more sea than usual, and they had made great progress. At sunset they had stood again to the west, and were ploughing the waves at a rapid rate, the Pinta keeping the lead, from her superior sailing. The greatest animation prevailed throughout the ships; not an eye was closed that night. As the evening darkened, Columbus took his station on the top of the castle or cabin on the high poop of his vessel, ranging his eye along the dusky horizon, and maintaining an intense and unremitting watch. About ten o'clock, he thought he beheld a light glimmering at a great distance. Fearing his eager hopes might deceive him, he called to Pedro Gutierrez, gentleman of the king's bed-chamber, and inquired whether he saw such a light; the latter replied in the affirmative. Doubtful whether it might not yet be some delusion of fancy, Columbus called Rodrigo Sanchez of Segovia, and made the same inquiry. By the time the latter 35 40 45

had ascended the round-house, the light had disappeared. They saw it once or twice afterwards in sudden and passing gleams; as if it were a torch in the bark of a fisherman, rising and sinking with the waves; or in the hand of some person on shore, borne
5 up and down as he walked from house to house. So transient and uncertain were these gleams, that few attached any importance to them; Columbus, however, considered them as certain signs of land, and, moreover, that the land was inhabited.

They continued their course until two in the morning, when
10 a gun from the Pinta gave the joyful signal of land. It was first described by a mariner named Rodrigo de Triana; but the reward was afterwards adjudged to the admiral, for having previously perceived the light. The land was now clearly seen about two leagues distant, whereupon they took in sail, and laid to, waiting
15 impatiently for the dawn.

The thoughts and feelings of Columbus in this little space of time must have been tumultuous and intense. At length, in spite of every difficulty and danger, he had accomplished his object. The great mystery of the ocean was revealed; his theory, which
20 had been the scoff of sages, was triumphantly established; he had secured to himself a glory durable as the world itself.

It is difficult to conceive the feelings of such a man, at such a moment; or the conjectures which must have thronged upon his mind, as to the land before him, covered with darkness. That it
25 was fruitful, was evident from the vegetables which floated from its shores. He thought, too, that he perceived the fragrance of aromatic groves. The moving light he had beheld proved it the residence of man. But what were its inhabitants? Were they like those of the other parts of the globe; or were they some
30 strange and monstrous race, such as the imagination was prone in those times to give to all remote and unknown regions? Had he come upon some wild island far in the Indian sea; or was this the famed Cipango itself, the object of his golden fancies? A thousand speculations of the kind must have swarmed upon him,
35 as, with his anxious crews, he waited for the night to pass away; wondering whether the morning light would reveal a savage wilderness, or dawn upon spicy groves, and glittering fanes, and gilded cities, and all the splendour of oriental civilization.

(Washington Irving.)

40 17. "NOCHE TRISTE," OR THE MELANCHOLY NIGHT AT MEXICO.

There was no longer any question as to the expediency of evacuating the capital. The only doubt was as to the time of

doing so, and the route. The Spanish commander called a council of officers to deliberate on these matters. It was his purpose to retreat on Tlascala, and in that capital to decide according to circumstances on his future operations. After some discussion, they agreed on the causeway of Tlacopan as the avenue by which 5 to leave the city. It would, indeed, take them back by a circuitous route, considerably longer than either of those by which they had approached the capital. But, for that reason, it would be less likely to be guarded, as least suspected; and the causeway itself, being shorter than either of the other entrances, would 10 sooner place the army in comparative security on the main road.

There was some difference of opinion in respect to the hour of departure. The day-time, it was argued by some, would be preferable, since it would enable them to see the nature and extent of their danger, and to provide against it. Darkness would 15 be much more likely to embarrass their own movements than those of the enemy, who were familiar with the ground. A thousand impediments would occur in the night, which might prevent their acting in concert, or obeying, or even ascertaining, the orders of the commander. But, on the other hand, it was urged, 20 that the night presented many obvious advantages in dealing with a foe who rarely carried his hostilities beyond the day. The late active operations of the Spaniards had thrown the Mexicans off their guard, and it was improbable they would anticipate so speedy a departure of their enemies. With celerity and caution, they 25 might succeed, therefore, in making their escape from the town, possibly over the causeway, before their retreat should be discovered; and, could they once get beyond that pass of peril, they felt little apprehension for the rest. At all events, it was decided to abandon the city that very night. 30

The general's first care was to provide for the safe transportation of the treasure. Many of the common soldiers had converted their share of the prize, into gold chains, collars, or other ornaments, which they easily carried about their persons. But the royal fifth, together with that of Cortes himself, and much of the 35 rich booty of the principal cavaliers, had been converted into bars and wedges of solid gold, and deposited in one of the strong apartments of the palace. Cortes delivered the share belonging to the Crown to the royal officers, assigning them one of the strongest horses, and a guard of Castilian soldiers, to transport 40 it. Still, much of the treasure, belonging both to the Crown and to individuals, was necessarily abandoned, from the want of adequate means of conveyance. The metal lay scattered in shining heaps along the floor, exciting the cupidity of the soldiers. "Take what you will of it," said Cortes to his men. "Better you should 45

have it, than these Mexican hounds. But be careful not to overload yourselves. He travels safest in the dark night who travels lightest." His own more wary followers took heed to his counsels, helping themselves to a few articles of least bulk, though, 5 it might be, of greatest value. But the troops of Narvaez, pining for riches, of which they had heard so much, and hitherto seen so little, showed no such discretion. To them it seemed as if the very mines of Mexico were turned up before them, and, rushing on the treacherous spoil, they greedily loaded themselves 10 with as much of it, not merely as they could accommodate about their persons, but as they could stow away in wallets, boxes, or any other mode of conveyance at their disposal.

Cortes next arranged the order of march. The van composed of two hundred Spanish foot, he placed under the command of 15 the valiant Gonzalo de Sandoval, supported by Diego de Ordaz, Francisco de Lujo, and about twenty other cavaliers. The rear-guard, constituting the strength of the infantry, was intrusted to Pedro de Alvarado, and Velasquez de Leon. The general himself took charge of the "battle," or centre, in which went the baggage, 20 some of the heavy guns, most of which, however, remained in the rear, the treasure, and the prisoners. These consisted of a son and two daughters of Montezuma, Cacama, the deposed lord of Tezcuco, and several other nobles, whom Cortes retained as important pledges in his future negotiations with the enemy. The 25 Tlascalans were distributed pretty equally among the three divisions; and Cortes had under his immediate command a hundred picked soldiers, his own veterans most attached to his service, who, with Christoyal de Olid, Francisco de Morla, Alonso de Avila, and two or three other cavaliers, formed a select corps, to act 30 wherever occasion might require.

The general had already superintended the construction of a portable bridge to be laid over the open canals in the causeway. This was given in charge to an officer named Magarino, with forty soldiers under his orders, all pledged to defend the passage to 35 the last extremity. The bridge was to be taken up when the entire army had crossed one of the breaches, and transported to the next. There were three of these openings in the causeway, and most fortunate would it have been for the expedition, if the foresight of the commander had provided the same number of bridges. 40 But the labour would have been great, and time was short.

At midnight the troops were under arms, in readiness for the march. Mass was performed by father Olmedo, who invoked the protection of the Almighty through the awful perils of the night. The gates were thrown open, and, on the first of July, 1520, the 45 Spaniards for the last time sallied forth from the walls of the

ancient fortress, the scene of so much suffering and such indomitable courage.

The night was cloudy, and a drizzling rain, which fell without intermission, added to the obscurity. The great square before the palace was deserted, as, indeed, it had been since the fall of 5 Montezuma. Steadily, and as noiselessly as possible, the Spaniards held their way along the great street of Tlacopan, which so lately had resounded to the tumult of battle. All was now hushed in silence; and they were only reminded of the past by the occasional presence of some solitary corpse, or a dark heap of the slain, which 10 too plainly told where the strife had been hottest. As they passed along the lanes and alleys which opened into the great street, or looked down the canals, whose polished surface gleamed with a sort of ebon lustre through the obscurity of night, they easily fancied that they discerned the shadowy forms of their foe lurking 15 in ambush, and ready to spring on them. But it was only fancy; and the city slept undisturbed even by the prolonged echoes of the tramp of the horses, and the hoarse rumbling of the artillery and baggage trains. At length a lighter space beyond the dusky line of buildings showed the van of the army that it was emerging 20 on the open causeway. They might well have congratulated themselves on having thus escaped the dangers of an assault in the city itself, and that a brief time would place them in comparative safety on the opposite shore. — But the Mexicans were not all asleep.

As the Spaniards drew near the spot where the street opened 25 on the causeway, and were preparing to lay the portable bridge across the uncovered breach, which now met their eyes, several Indian sentinels, who had been stationed at this, as at the other approaches to the city, took the alarm, and fled, rousing their countrymen by their cries. The priests, keeping their night watch 30 on the summit of the *teocallis*, instantly caught the tidings and sounded their shells, while the huge drum in the desolate temple of the war-god sent forth those solemn tones, which, heard only in seasons of calamity, vibrated through every corner of the capital. The Spaniards saw that no time was to be lost. The bridge 35 was brought forward and fitted with all possible expedition. Sandoval was the first to try its strength, and riding across, was followed by his little body of chivalry, his infantry, and Tlascalan allies, who formed the first division of the army. Then came Cortés and his squadrons, with the baggage, ammunition waggons, 40 and a part of the artillery. But before they had time to defile across the narrow passage, a gathering sound was heard, like that of a mighty forest agitated by the winds. It grew louder and louder, while on the dark waters of the lake was heard a plashing noise, as of many oars. Then came a few stones and 45

arrows striking at random among the hurrying troops. They fell every moment faster and more furious, till they thickened into a terrible tempest, while the very heavens were rent with the yells and war-cries of myriads of combatants, who seemed all at once
5 to be swarming over land and lake!

The Spaniards pushed steadily on through this arrowy sleet, though the barbarians, dashing their canoes against the sides of the causeway, clambered up and broke in upon their ranks. But the Christians, anxious only to make their escape, declined all
10 combat except for self-preservation. The cavaliers, spurring forward their steeds, shook off their assailants, and rode over their prostrate bodies, while the men on foot with their good swords or the butts of their pieces drove them headlong again down the sides of the dike.

15 But the advance of several thousand men, marching, probably, on a front of not more than fifteen or twenty abreast, necessarily required much time, and the leading files had already reached the second breach in the causeway before those in the rear had entirely traversed the first. Here they halted; as they had no means of
20 effecting a passage, smarting all the while under unintermitting volleys from the enemy, who were clustered thick on the waters around this second opening. Sorely distressed, the van-guard sent repeated messages to the rear to demand the portable bridge. At length the last of the army had crossed, and Magarino and his
25 sturdy followers endeavoured to raise the ponderous framework. But it stuck fast in the sides of the dike. In vain they strained every nerve. The weight of so many men and horses, and above all of the heavy artillery, had wedged the timbers so firmly in the stones and earth, that it was beyond their power to dislodge them. Still
30 they labored amidst a torrent of missiles, until, many of them slain, and all wounded, they were obliged to abandon the attempt.

The tidings soon spread from man to man, and no sooner was their dreadful import comprehended, than a cry of despair arose, which for a moment drowned all the noise of conflict. All
35 means of retreat were cut off. Scarcely hope was left. The only hope was in such desperate exertions as each could make for himself. Order and subordination were at an end. Intense danger produced intense selfishness. Each thought only of his own life. Pressing forward, he trampled down the weak and the wounded,
40 heedless, whether it were friend or foe. The leading files, urged on by the rear, were crowded on the brink of the gulf. Sandoval, Ordaz, and the other cavaliers dashed into the water. Some succeeded in swimming their horses across. Others failed, and some, who reached the opposite bank, being overturned in the ascent,
45 rolled headlong with their steeds into the lake. The infantry fol-

lowed pellmell, heaped promiscuously on one another, frequently pierced by the shafts, or struck down by the war-clubs of the Aztecs; while many an unfortunate victim was dragged half-stunned on board their canoes, to be reserved for a protracted, but more dreadful death.

The carnage raged fearfully along the length of the causeway. Its shadowy bulk presented a mark of sufficient distinctness for the enemy's missiles, which often prostrated their own countrymen in the blind fury of the tempest. Those nearest the dike, running their canoes alongside, with a force that shattered them to pieces, 10 leaped on the land, and grappled with the Christians, until both came rolling down the side of the causeway together. But the Aztec fell among his friends, while his antagonist was borne away in triumph to the sacrifice. The struggle was long and deadly. The Mexicans were recognised by their white cotton tunics, which 15 showed faint through the darkness. Above the combatants rose a wild and discordant clamor, in which horrid shouts of vengeance were mingled with groans of agony, with invocations of the saints and the blessed Virgin, and with the screams of women; for there were several women, both native and Spaniards, who had accom- 20 panied the Christian camp. Among these, one named Maria de Estrada is particularly noticed for the courage she displayed, battling with broadsword and target like the stanchest of the warriors.

The opening in the causeway, meanwhile, was filled up with the wreck of matter which had been forced into it, ammunition- 25 waggons, heavy guns, bales of rich stuffs scattered over the waters, chests of solid ingots, and bodies of men and horses, till over this dismal ruin a passage was gradually formed, by which those in the rear were enabled to clamber to the other side. Cortés, it is said, found a place that was fordable, where, halting, with the 30 water up to his saddle-girths, he endeavoured to check the confusion, and lead his followers by a safer path to the opposite bank. But his voice was lost in the wild uproar, and finally, hurrying on with the tide, he pressed forwards with a few trusty cavaliers, who remained near his person, to the van; but not before he had 35 seen his favorite page, Juan de Salazar, struck down, a corpse, by his side. Here he found Sandoval and his companions, halting before the third and last breach, endeavouring to cheer on their followers to surmount it. But their resolution faltered. It was wide and deep; though the passage was not so closely beset by 40 the enemy as the preceding ones. The cavaliers again set the example by plunging into the water. Horse and foot followed as they could, some swimming, others with dying grasp clinging to the manes and tails of the struggling animals. Those fared best, as the general had predicted, who travelled lightest; and many 45

were the unfortunate wretches, who, weighed down by the fatal gold which they loved so well, were buried with it in the salt floods of the lake. Cortés, with his gallant comrades, Olid, Morla, Sandoval, and some few others, still kept in the advance, leading
5 his broken remnant off the fatal causeway. The din of battle lessened in the distance; when the rumor reached them, that the rear-guard would be wholly overwhelmed without speedy relief. It seemed almost an act of desperation; but the generous hearts of the Spanish cavaliers did not stop to calculate danger, when the
10 cry for succour reached them. Turning their horses' bridles, they galloped back to the theatre of action, worked their way through the press, swam the canal, and placed themselves in the thick of the *mêlée* on the opposite bank.

The first grey of the morning was now coming over the waters.
15 It showed the hideous confusion of the scene which had been shrouded in the obscurity of night. The dark masses of combatants, stretching along the dike, were seen struggling for mastery, until the very causeway on which they stood, appeared to tremble, and reel to and fro, as if shaken by an earthquake; while the bosom
20 of the lake, as far as the eye could reach, was darkened by canoes crowded with warriors, whose spears and bludgeons, armed with blades of "volcanic glass," gleamed in the morning light.

The cavaliers found Alvarado unhorsed, and defending himself with a poor handful of followers against an overwhelming tide of
25 the enemy. His good steed, which had borne him through many a hard fight, had fallen under him. He was himself wounded in several places, and was striving in vain to rally his scattered column, which was driven to the verge of the canal by the fury of the enemy, then in possession of the whole rear of the causeway,
30 where they were reinforced every hour by fresh combatants from the city. The artillery in the earlier part of the engagement had not been idle, and its iron shower, sweeping along the dike, had mowed down the assailants by hundreds. But nothing could resist their impetuosity. The front ranks, pushed on by those behind,
35 were at length forced up to the pieces, and, pouring over them like a torrent, overthrew men and guns in one general ruin. The resolute charge of the Spanish cavaliers, who had now arrived, created a temporary check, and gave time for their countrymen to make a feeble rally. But they were speedily borne down by the
40 returning flood. Cortés and his companions were compelled to plunge again into the lake, — though all did not escape. Alvarado stood on the brink for a moment, hesitating what to do. Unhorsed as he was, to throw himself into the water in the face of the hostile canoes that now swarmed around the opening, afforded but a des-
45 perate chance of safety. He had but a second for thought. He was

a man of powerful frame, and despair gave him unnatural energy. Setting his long lance firmly on the wreck which strewed the bottom of the lake, he sprung forward with all his might, and cleared the wide gap at a leap! Aztecs and Tlascalans gazed in stupid amazement, exclaiming, as they beheld the incredible feat, "This 5 is truly the *Tonatiuh*, — the child of the Sun!" — The breadth of the opening is not given. But it was so great, that the valorous captain Diaz, who well remembered the place, says the leap was impossible to any man. Other contemporaries, however, do not discredit the story. It was, beyond doubt, matter of popular belief 10 at the time; it is to this day familiarly known to every inhabitant of the capital; and the name of the *Salto de Alvarado*, "Alvarado's Leap," given to the spot, still commemorates an exploit which rivalled those of the demigods of Grecian fable.

Cortés and his companions now rode forward to the front, 15 where the troops, in a loose, disorderly manner, were marching off the fatal causeway. A few only of the enemy hung on their rear, or annoyed them by occasional flights of arrows from the lake. The attention of the Aztecs was diverted by the rich spoil that strewed the battle-ground; fortunately for the Spaniards, who, had 20 their enemy pursued with the same ferocity with which he had fought, would, in their crippled condition, have been cut off, probably, to a man. But little molested, therefore, they were allowed to defile through the adjacent village, or suburbs, it might be called, of Popotla. 25

The Spanish commander there dismounted from his jaded steed, and, sitting down on the steps of an Indian temple, gazed mournfully on the broken files as they passed before him. What a spectacle did they present! The cavalry, most of them dismounted, were mingled with the infantry, who dragged their feeble 30 limbs along with difficulty; their shattered mail and tattered garments dripping with the salt ooze, showing through their rents many a bruise and ghastly wound; their bright arms soiled, their proud crests and banners gone, the baggage, artillery, all, in short, that constitutes the pride and panoply of glorious war, for ever lost. 35 Cortés, as he looked wistfully on their thinned and disordered ranks, sought in vain for many a familiar face, and missed more than one dear companion who had stood side by side with him through all the perils of the Conquest. Though accustomed to control his emotions, or, at least, to conceal them, the sight was too much for 40 him. He covered his face with his hands, and the tears, which trickled down, revealed too plainly the anguish of his soul.

The loss sustained by the Spaniards on this fatal night, like every other event in the history of the Conquest, is reported with the greatest discrepancy. If we believe Cortés' own letter, it did 45

not exceed one hundred and fifty Spaniards and two thousand Indians. But the general's bulletins, while they do full justice to the difficulties to be overcome, and the importance of the results, are less scrupulous in stating the extent either of his means or of his losses. Thoan Cano, one of the cavaliers present, estimates the slain at eleven hundred and seventy Spaniards, and eight thousand allies. But this is a greater number than we have allowed for the whole army. Perhaps we may come nearest the truth by taking the computation of Gomara, the chaplain of Cortés, who had free access, doubtless, not only to the general's papers, but to other authentic sources of information. According to him, the number of Christians killed and missing was four hundred and fifty, and that of natives for thousand. This, with the loss sustained in the conflicts of the previous week, may have reduced the former to something more than a third, and the latter to a fourth, or, perhaps, fifth, of the original force with which they entered the capital. The brunt of the action fell on the rear-guard, few of whom escaped. It was formed chiefly of the soldiers of Narvæz, who fell the victims in some measure of their cupidity. Forty-six of the cavalry were cut off, which with previous losses reduced the number in this branch of the service to twenty-three, and some of these in very poor condition. The greater part of the treasure, the baggage, the general's papers, including his accounts, and a minute diary of transactions since leaving Cuba, — which, to posterity, at least, would have been of more worth than the gold, — had been swallowed up by the waters. The ammunition, the beautiful little train of artillery, with which Cortés had entered the city, were all gone. Not a musket even remained, the men having thrown them away, eager to disencumber themselves of all that might retard their escape on that disastrous night. Nothing, in short, of their military apparatus was left, but their swords, their crippled cavalry, and a few damaged crossbows, to assert the superiority of the European over the barbarian.

Such were the disastrous results of this terrible passage of the causeway; more disastrous than those occasioned by any other reverse which has stained the Spanish arms in the New World; and which have branded the night on which it happened, in the national annals, with the name of the *noche triste*, "the sad or melancholy night."

(William Prescott.)

A N H A N G I.

FIFTY YEARS,

OR

THE ADVENTURES OF TWO SCHOOL-FELLOWS.

(An Allegorical Play in Six Acts.)

CHARACTERS.

The GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION.

The GENIUS OF URBANITY.

FIERVILLE, } fellow-students.
DENISART, }

BERMON, a school-master.

USBEC, a young usher.

DALBIN, a military officer.

MADAM DALBIN, his wife.

An under-clerk.

A slave.

Scholars.

Parents and relations of the scholars.

Turkish slaves of both sexes.

Scene partly in France, and partly at Bassora.

ACT I.

Scene I.

A play ground; scholars at their different amusements.

USBEC speaking while the scholars are amusing themselves.

USBEC. Oh Usbec! Usbec, unfortunate Usbec! son of a wealthy merchant of Bassora, to find yourself, at twenty years of age, far from your native country, and obliged to gain a hard livelihood in the humiliating situation of usher at a school! Ah! why did ambition and the desire of riches prompt me to undertake a voyage? But for that

I should not have suffered shipwreck and loss of fortune. Here I am in a foreign country; separated from friends and relations; without even the hope of seeing them again; for how can I ever obtain a sum sufficient to defray the expenses of such a voyage?

FIERVILLE and DENISART advance.

FIER. At last the day of triumph, the day that I have awaited with so much impatience, is arrived!

DEN. Do you then expect a prize, Fierville?

FIER. Who has a greater right to expect one? One did I say! have not I, though scarcely fifteen, gone twice through a course of rhetoric? Am not I perfect in greek, in algebra? have not I learned, in fact, all that it is possible to learn at college? Who then can dispute with me the highest honours? It is not *you*; for certainly if any one has fewer pretensions than another, you, my poor Denisart, are the boy.

DEN. Believe me, Fierville, I have no such ambition. Of the same age as you, I am placed in the school only to perfect myself in the knowledge of arithmetic, and of my native language; for the other branches of my education I am indebted to my kind father.

FIER. (*ironically*). Education indeed! yes, and a very homely one it is.

DEN. Yes, I have received from him such lessons as will, I hope, enable me to fulfil all social duties, and thus render me a useful and respectable member of whatever class my destiny may place me in.

FIER. You will never rise above the limits of the narrow sphere in which you now move. With your education, and your suburban views, you will vegetate all your life. Do you think that, because you bow humbly to your superiors; that you enter a drawing-room with such a modest air; that you are ever ready to undertake the most servile offices; do you imagine I say, that on that account you will obtain the palm of merit?

DEN. But if it be my wish to live peaceably and undistinguished?

FIER. Ambition worthy the son of a haberdasher.

DEN. Who has always filled his profession honourably, and can show his face anywhere.

FIER. So, my dear Denisart, you are content to pass your life in mediocrity; in oblivion I may say.

DEN. Willingly; and I leave to the learned Fierville the care and anxiety of transmitting his name to posterity.

FIER. And be assured he will do it. Instead of being satisfied, as you are, to be considered docile and agreeable, I will avail myself of the superiority I have acquired by the education my father has given me. To-day you will see me triumphantly carry off the first prizes; shortly I shall enter the military school, and thence I shall perhaps become a field-marshal: who knows how far genius and illustrious connexions may lead me? (*Turning towards Usbec*) I say, Usbec, if you will follow me, when I am an officer, I will give you an appointment in my personal suite.

USBEC. Sir

FIER. Come, come, no ceremony.

Enter BERMON.

DEN. (*to him*.) Good morning, sir.

BER. Good morning, my friends. (*To the scholars*) My dears, your parents will soon be here; go and prepare for the distribution of prizes.

Chorus of scholars.

The joyful day at length appears,
The day which all desire,
To crown our hopes, dispel our fears,
And teach us to aspire.

Remain Bermon, Denisart and Fierville.

BER. You are then the only one who will not bid me good morning?

FIER. Really I did not think . . . that is I was thinking . . . I am your very humble servant. (*Aside*) A bow more or less . . .

BER. Is never lost. I heard you, Fierville, and am sorry you imbibe and express such principles.

FIER. There it is! to please you I must forget my superiority, abandon my hopes of glory, and submit to the slavish customs and usages that fetter genius and would damp the noblest energy.

BER. Society exacts . . .

FIER. That I should sacrifice myself to it? No, no! wiser than others, I feel myself too much above them to be satisfied with remaining their equal, I must exalt myself; I must acquire celebrity, and not waste my time in puerilities. I leave that to the modest Denisart.

BER. How great is your error! Deprived, as you were in early infancy, of maternal care and solicitude, your father, under the mistaken idea of giving you a rank superior to his own, placed you very young at college . . . with good natural abilities . . .

FIER. You acknowledge it then?

BER. I own that, endowed with uncommon facility, you have made rapid progress.

FIER. Of which I am resolved to avail myself.

BER. Your natural abilities have unfortunately given you so much confidence and self-sufficiency that you have disdained to apply yourself to anything but the sciences. You have entirely neglected the inferior and useful branches of study; and though highly instructed you will go into the world ignorant of its manners, and without such an education as would render you capable of fulfilling your duties as a member of society.

FIER. Of what consequence is that to me? I mean to rise above the world: a man of talents succeeds every where. Do you think I shall not be sought when my talents become known, when my knowledge will render me useful, desirable, nay indispensable?

BER. Like an enormous and complicated machine which we contemplate at a distance, but fear to approach, you will perhaps be admired, but you will also be dreaded.

FIER. I understand you, Mr. Bermon; you talk thus to console poor Denisart; to prevent him from despairing when he sees me triumphantly bearing off the first prizes, which I no doubt shall do.

DEN. I have already told you, Fierville, that I have no pretensions. I don't aspire to such honours.

BER. (*to Den.*) You are perhaps right, my friend. Your career is marked out, you will follow it and thus avoid many dangers. (*To Fierville*) You, Fierville, I advise to wait patiently the distribution of prizes, and not to have too much confidence in yourself: there are among your school-fellows . . .

FIER. Ah! I see how it is, all settled no doubt. I am sacrificed; I shall not have the prizes I merit; some favourite scholar, convinced of his own inferiority and want of pretensions, has been intriguing.

BER. Who has told you so?

FIER. I suspect it.

BER. Your suspicions are offensive. Do you think your masters are unjust? No favour will be shown, every scholar will receive the reward he has merited. I tell you again your doubts are unfounded and offensive, a proof of the unhappy consequences of instruction without urbanity.

FIER. The old sermon always.

BER. In a few minutes you will know your destiny; till then you have the goodness to wait without murmuring. *(Exit.)*

Scene II.

FIERVILLE and DENISART.

DEN. Fierville, you have vexed our master seriously.

FIER. I ought to have the best prizes.

DEN. Who says the contrary?

FIER. His uncertain and ambiguous expressions.

DEN. Most of our disappointments arise from the indulgence of hopes too ardent, and often unreasonable.

FIER. What! is little Denisart turned philosopher?

DEN. No, but I have learned resignation.

FIER. And how far do you suppose that will carry you in the world?

DEN. Not to such a brilliant station as you may attain; but perhaps to a happier one.

FIER. That the event will prove. You are going humbly to the trade to which your father has destined you; while I more boldly commence a brilliant career. I shall enter the Polytechnic school, and shortly obtain fresh triumphs in the abstruse branches of science; I will then embrace the military profession, or perhaps that of the fine arts. The world will be obliged to acknowledge my merit; that alone will cause me to be sought and courted; and I shall know how to distinguish myself without submitting to the degrading and hypocritical forms of what is called politeness, and urbanity.

DEN. I hope, for your sake, you may find it so.

(The bell rings to assemble the scholars for the distribution.)

FIER. Hark! that is the signal for my first triumph; the prizes are about to be distributed; come and witness the accomplishment of my prophecy.

Enter USBEC.

USB. We only wait for these young gentlemen, to commence the distribution.

DEN. Come, let us go.

FIER. *(to Usbec).* You know what I have promised you: when I quit the Polytechnic school, I take you into my service.

USB. You are extremely kind, sir.

DEN. Poor Usbec! you should have some consideration for him and treat him kindly: he is so unfortunate in being thus separated from his native country.

FIER. Ay, ay, we shall see.

Scene III.

(*Music is heard. THE GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION descends.*)

GEN. of INSTR. I am however first at the appointed spot, notwithstanding the boasted politeness and exactitude of my dear Urbanity. (*Soft music at a distance.*) O here he is. He does not make me wait, he knows what is due to society.

(*THE GENIUS OF URBANITY descends and advances slowly and respectfully towards THE GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION.*)

GEN. of URB. Hail, Genius of Instruction!

GEN. of INSTR. No ceremonious speeches, I beg.

GEN. of URB. I know my duty.

GEN. of INSTR. No doubt: but a subject of much more importance than compliments requires your attention.

GEN. of URB. Have the goodness to communicate it.

GEN. of INSTR. Do not interrupt me.

GEN. of URB. Your wishes shall be complied with.

GEN. of INSTR. Without further preamble then, you cannot be ignorant that I have under my protection a youth named Fierville. I presided at his birth; and from that moment have never ceased watching over him with the utmost solicitude: I have directed his studies; and this very day he ought to receive the reward due to his great erudition. You however oppose me and endeavour to frustrate my designs.

GEN. of URB. I!!

GEN. of Instr. Yes; young Denisart!...

GEN. of URB. I understand you. Yes, like you I have here a *protégé*; the young Denisart whose steps I have directed since his birth; you appear to take umbrage at it.

GEN. of INSTR. You mistake: genius has nothing to fear; besides, your pupil without my assistance can have no pretensions; he has no instruction whatever.

GEN. of URB. It is true he has learned little more than good breeding; I have made him imbibe my principles; he is satisfied, and does not seek extensive knowledge, for he thinks that a man may very well make his way in the world without it.

GEN. of INSTR. Do you then mean to say that I lead to nothing?

GEN. of URB. I am very far from thinking so! but I maintain that extensive learning without the assistance of good breeding of — such urbanity as enables man to live agreeably with his fellow-creatures, and to render all men the respect and reverence that is due to them — to submit even to injustice — I repeat that without those qualities (whatever be a man's scientific knowledge), he can have no reasonable hopes to succeed in the world.

GEN. of INSTR. Instruction leads to honours and dignities.

GEN. of URB. And good breeding to peace and happiness.

GEN. of INSTR. Then you don't acknowledge my power, or the effects of my influence?

GEN. of URB. I don't deny your influence; but...

GEN. of INSTR. No more. Judge by the scene which is about to pass before your eyes.

(*THE GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION directs his mirror towards the back of the stage where some clouds are seen; they gradually disappear, leaving only a slight gauze curtain, through which is perceived*

the room where all is ready for the distribution of prizes. Plain-tive music is heard during the whole of the scene. THE GENII remain in front, THE MASTER, the PUPILS, PARENTS, etc. are behind the gauze.)

GEN. of INSTR. Whe shall now witness the distribution of prizes. Observe and profit by it.

BER. First prize of Greek is adjudged to Fierville.

(He is crowned.)

SCHOLARS. Bravo! Bravo! *(Clapping their hands.)*

GEN. of INSTR. It is ours.

GEN. of URB. Patience!

BER. First prize of rhetoric, Fierville. *(He is crowned.)*

SCHOL. Bravo! Bravo!

GEN. of INSTR. to URB. Well what do you think of it?

GEN. of URB. I wait with patience.

BER. First prize of algebra, Fierville. *(Crowned.)*

SCHOL. Bravo! Bravo!

GEN. of INSTR. You see the bravos are all for us.

GEN. of URB. Yes, but I remark that no one approaches Fierville to felicitate him; he has admirers, but I see no friend near him, to receive his trophies and share his pleasure.

GEN. of INSTR. He wants none: he is proud to be the bearer of his own honours.

GEN. of URB. What presumption!

BER. *Accessit* of French, Denisart.

(The scholars immediately crowd about DENISART and wish him joy.)

SCHOL. Bravo! Bravo! Bravo!

GEN. of URB. We have our bravos you hear, and all the scholars felicitate my protégé.

GEN. of INSTR. Mediocrity does not excite jealousy.

GEN. of URB. You are mistaken: it is because Denisart, by his amiable temper and condescending disposition, makes himself beloved by every body.

GEN. of INSTR. Enough! It is impossible to convince obstinacy even by the most evident proofs.

(THE GENIUS directs his mirror towards the back, the clouds descend and conceal the back scene.)

Scene IV.

THE TWO GENII.

GEN. of INSTR. Perpetual war must be declared between us.

GEN. of URB. And why so?

GEN. of INSTR. Petty, insignificant spirit, dread my wrath. I can annihilate thee by a single look.

GEN. of URB. Be calm; it is easy for us to be reconciled and to understand each other.

GEN. of INSTR. I know of no method.

GEN. of URB. You think it is possible to bring up youth without my assistance?

GEN. of INSTR. No question of it.

GEN. of URB. I am of the contrary opinion; let us put it to the test; the proof will be easily obtained: you have your *protégé*, I have mine; let us follow them in their career through life, and see which of the two becomes the best man in all respects, obtains most honour, and renders most service to mankind.

GEN. of INSTR. Useless.

GEN. of URB. Accept, I beg of you this means of conciliation.

GEN. of INSTR. Well, agree. But time moves slowly, and I am impatient to know the result, though I have not the smallest doubt.

GEN. of URB. It will be easy to satisfy your impatience; let us return to the celestial regions, implore Time to accelerate his march, and to display before our eyes fifty years of the lives of our two heroes. We shall soon know who is right.

GEN. of INSTR. Agreed, let us go immediately.

GEN. of URB. I follow you.

(They both enter the car in which INSTRUCTION descended, and ascend during soft music.)

ACT II.

FIERVILLE AND DENISART AT THE AGE OF TWENTY ONE.

Scene a public street.

(DENISART in a private dress, carrying a bag of money as a collecting clerk, notes in his hand.)

DEN. Another house stopped payment. No effects, no effects again, that's the most frequent answer now. Bad times for bankers. Poor Mr. Coutts, who calculated upon these bills for his payments on the 30th. I am truly sorry for him: so good a master! Well, let me see where is my next call.

Enter FIERVILLE in an officer's dress.

FIER. If I don't mistake, you are little Denisart.

DEN. Ah! Fierville, how are you?

FIER. Why, I am very well.

DEN. I am extremely glad of it.

FIER. And I also. But you are grown quite a man!

DEN. A few years at our age makes a great difference.

FIER. *(coldly.)* You are right.

DEN. Fierville, by your coldness you appear to have forgotten our ancient friendly intimacy; is it so?

FIER. Why indeed the familiar language of the schools should be forgotten when we quit them.

DEN. Dost thou think so?

FIER. Thou! thou! You must break yourself of that habit, my friend, it does not become you now.

DEN. It will always become me to like thee.

FIER. Well, what have you been doing these five years, for I don't think we've seen each other since we left school?

DEN. And thou?

FIER. Again thou!

DEN. I left school shortly after you.

FIER. I remember you never had much taste for study.

DEN. Some heavy losses which my father experienced in business obliged him to take me from school; and as he could not afford to keep me at home unemployed, I was placed at a banking house.

FIER. In what capacity?

DEN. At first as copying clerk; that is to copy the letters.

FIER. That must have been useful in forming your style.

DEN. I have now a more agreeable situation.

FIER. Well, as I have a few moments to lose, let me hear your story.

DEN. (*aside.*) What a haughty tone! but never mind, Denisart.

FIER. I suppose you are collecting clerk?

DEN. You are joking.

FIER. Not I indeed. Your bill case and money-bag . . .

DEN. Show that I know how to render myself useful. 'Tis to-day the twenty fifth; we have a great number of bills due, and our collecting clerks are very much harassed; so I have offered my service to assist them.

FIER. (*ironically.*) What devotion! But you don't ask how I am getting on.

DEN. True: but I see you are in the army; will you condescend to inform me?

FIER. Yes, in two words; a few months after leaving school I entered the Polytechnic. There, as every where else, I bore off the first prizes, and I have just obtained a sublieutenancy.

DEN. I congratulate you with all my heart.

Enter USBEC, in a livery.

USB. Sir, I have just delivered your letter to captain Dalbin. He says he will take the journey with you; and will be at the place of appointment in a few minutes.

FIER. Very well; I expect him here.

USB. (*to Den.*) Good morning, Mr. Denisart; I have the pleasure of seeing you in good health.

DEN. Ah! good morning, my friend.

USB. But how are you grown, sir!

FIER. (*angrily, to Usb.*) Will you have the goodness to hold your tongue, sir? Do you think I took you into my service to mix in my conversation?

USB. I beg pardon, sir.

FIER. Take care not to repeat it.

USB. Oh my country!

DEN. Indeed, Fierville, that unfortunate young man has some claims to consideration; his unhappy situation demands kindness; recollect he is far from his country, his friends; from all that is dear to him.

USB. (*aside.*) What an excellent young man!

FIER. All stuff! Kindness to a Turk! . . . Well, you have my history.

DEN. You could not have done better.

FIER. True! and I think you are very wrong not to follow my example: for without the classics you must not hope to succeed.

DEN. I own I have not much erudition.

FIER. (*laughing.*) Oh! you need not take the trouble to tell me so,

Enter CAPTAIN DALBIN.

FIER. But here comes the gentleman I am waiting for.

DALBIN. Have I the pleasure of addressing Mr. Fierville?

FIER. My name is Fierville, sir.

DALB. Captain Dalbin.

FIER. Ah! it is you, I expected you.

DALB. (*aside.*) What manners! (*to Fierville*) I congratulate you on being one of us.

FIER. Yes, I am among you, though perhaps for a short time, for I intend to make my way rapidly.

DALB. (*aside.*) No want of vanity or self sufficiency however. (*to Fierville*) You are extremely modest, sir.

FIER. I am frank. (*to Denisart*) My dear fellow, leave us, return to your work: we have something to say that is beyond your comprehension.

DALB. (*aside.*) Insolent puppy.

DEN. It is *you*, Fierville, that treat me in this manner?

FIER. Come, come, good morning; I shall see you again; (*aside*) he annoys me.

DEN. Well, I will leave you, sir: you shall no longer have to blush on *my* account perhaps however you will have reason to repent your conduct towards me. (*to Dalbin*) Sir, I am your most humble servant. (*to Usbec*) Good b'ye, my friend.

USB. Farewell, Mr. Denisart.

DALB. (*aside.*) How! Denisart can it be! (*Exit Denisart.*)

FIER. At last we are alone: now, sir, to the subject of our meeting.

DALB. Is not that young man, who has just left you, a clerk at Coutts the banker's?

FIER. You are right, he is.

DALB. (*aside*) Insupportable. (*to Fierville*) It appears to me that you have treated him in a very unbecoming manner.

FIER. O! he is a little fool.

DALB. Every body is not of your opinion.

FIER. Who the deuce will dare to dispute it?

DALB. Every body I tell you, and particularly I myself.

FIER. You?

DALB. Yes. I myself, sir.

USB. (*aside.*) He'll get himself into a scrape.

FIER. Enough! enough nonsense!

DALB. Not so much nonsense as you appear to imagine.

FIER. And by what right do you?

DALB. I'll tell you, sir, in two words. I have frequently heard that young man spoken of at his employer's, at Mr. Coutt's: his conduct, his industry, his modesty and urbanity have endeared him to that gentleman, and he prizes him extremely.

FIER. He has no instruction, no scientific knowledge.

DALB. Mr. Coutts knows, and appreciates his merit.

FIER. It is possible: tradesmen are generally blockheads.

DALB. You forget yourself strangely, sir.

FIER. Oh! you decidedly throw down the gauntlet and enter the lists as avowed champion of little Denisart.

DALB. To protect the weak against the powerful, I have ever considered as one of the first duties of my profession.

FIER. And why not say *our* profession?

DALB. I doubt much, sir, whether you will remain in the service: a soldier should know politeness.

FIER. How, sir?

DALB. And during our short acquaintance I cannot say much in favour of yours.

FIER. A German quarrel this truly.

USB. (*aside.*) Worse and worse.

DALB. Recollect yourself, sir. I arrive at the meeting according to your appointment; instead of receiving me with the customary politeness of a first interview, you did not even return my salute; but amused yourself by insulting, and wounding the feelings of a meritorious young man: in addition to that you express your contempt for that honourable and respectable body of men, the merchants and tradesmen of your own country.

FIER. Perhaps, sir, you are the son of a merchant?

USB. (*aside.*) He'll certainly make a bad business of it.

DALB. No, sir; but Mr. Coutts, *the blockhead of a banker* of whom you spoke just now, is my uncle.

FIER. Ah! there's the cloven foot, that's where the shoe pinches.

DALB. Insolent puppy! a greenhorn like you dare to insult an old soldier! You have my card; to morrow morning you shall receive a lesson that will perhaps be of more service to you than all your boasted science. You shall learn the necessity of being polite as well as instructed; of behaving yourself properly towards every body. You will let me know your time and place. (*Exit Dalbin.*)

FIER. (*walking furiously across the stage.*) Greenhorn! dare to call me a greenhorn!

USB. Pray, sir, be calm.

FIER. Hold your tongue; do you think I'll endure such an insult! I'm in a fury!

USB. Will you then meet him, sir?

FIER. Do you doubt it?

USB. Would it not be possible to avoid it?

FIER. No, there is no means; I have been insulted and will be revenged.

USB. It must be acknowledged, sir, that you gave some provocation.

FIER. (*taking USBEC by the collar.*) And by what right, sir, do you take the liberty to comment upon my actions?

USB. For your own welfare.

FIER. (*striking him with his cane.*) Silence!

USB. Do you dare then to strike me? God! if you were in my country!

FIER. Go about your business; I discharge you.

USB. I will spare you that trouble, for I have already resolved to quit a man who cannot control either his passions or his pride.

FIER. A valet!

USB. I was not always so; and you may perhaps live to learn that a livery does not vilify a man; as I have to-day learned that a uniform does not ennoble him . . . Adieu, we may possibly meet again. (*Exeunt.*)

ACT III.

FIERVILLE AT THE AGE OF THIRTY.

*Scene a garden.**(MADAM DALBIN enters, with a newspaper in her hand, reading the address on the envelope.)*

MAD. DALB. Yes, it is right: *Mr. Dalbin proprietor of the great cotton mill, Bolbee.* My dear Dalbin expects his paper with impatience. One is badly situated for news, in the country; and particularly my dear husband, who has been so much in the world. It is now ten years since he quitted the army, for the purpose of conducting this manufactory, which was all my marriage portion.

Dalbin calling from the wing.

DALB. Mad. Dalbin!

MAD. DALB. Here I am, my dear.

Enter DALBIN, in a frock-coat, wearing a decoration.

DALB. You are a long time, my dear, bringing the paper.

MAD. DALB. The post has but this moment come in.

DALB. You have it at last?

MAD. DALB. Here it is.

DALB. Give it to me, I'll read it in my closet.

MAD. DALB. You selfish creature, what! you'll go and read it alone! Do you think I don't wish to hear the news as much as you?

DALB. Well, my dear, come up stairs and we'll read it together.

MAD. DALB. Suppose we stay and read it under this arbour?

DALB. With all my heart.

MAD. DALB. We shall perhaps see, if this project is adopted.

*(They both sit down and read.)*DALB. Let us see if there is any talk of the famous canal that is to make a sea-port of Paris. *(Reading)* "The Giraffe was taken ill last night."

MAD. DALB. Poor beast! well?

DALB. "It is now clearly ascertained that the comet which appeared in the years 1818 and 1825 is the same; it is proved by the calculations of the celebrated astronomer *Olbers* that, in two hundred and sixteen millions of years, our globe, being in a direct line with the comet, will receive such a terrible shock as to cause its total destruction."

MAD. DALB. Fortunately we have sufficient time to prepare for it. Well, what next?

DALB. Ah! here we have it: "The canal system is the order of the day; it is not however yet known whether the project of rendering Paris a sea-port, will be authorized. The idea of this canal was suggested and submitted to government by Mr. Fierville, a young man about thirty."

MAD. DALB. But what of our petition?

DALB. "A petition for indemnification, presented in behalf of the persons whose property will be destroyed by the construction of the projected canal, has been referred to the minister. An answer is anxiously expected."

MAD. DALB. As usual, nothing new.

DALB. We shall succeed, I have no doubt. Being an old soldier, I have several friends who have some influence with the minister; they have spoken to him concerning the project, and also of Mr. Fierville's character. He is the same young spark to whom I gave a lesson of politeness about ten years ago: the marks of it will last for many years. He is a young man highly instructed, of great talent, and ought to have distinguished himself in the sciences. He has not however succeeded, for his manners are so rude and insolent, that he has never been able to make a friend among those who could have advanced him: his assurance and self-sufficiency render him insupportable. (*A bell is rung.*) Somebody rings at the gate.

MAD. DALB. I'll go and see who it is. (*Goes out.*)

DALB. My dear wife would be in despair at quitting our manufactory, and it is very natural. It was here she passed her infancy, her childhood, her youth; she has in fact scarcely quitted its roof; no wonder then she is almost inseparably attached to it.

(*Re-enter MADAM DALBIN introducing FIERVILLE who is in the uniform of a royal engineer.*)

MAD. DALB. This way, sir; (*to her husband*) a gentleman who wishes to speak with you, Mr. Dalbin.

DALB. Sir, you are extremely welcome; (*aside*) it is my man.

FIER. (*without saluting.*) Mr. Dalbin, I believe?

DALB. It is I, sir; what can I do for you?

FIER. I am engineer and inspector of bridges and highways. My name is Fierville. An important project brings me into your part of the country.

DALB. Well, sir, in what does your project concern me?

FIER. I am not accustomed to talk of business before ladies.

MAD. DALB. (*aside.*) Impertinent scoundrel; not talk of business before ladies indeed!

DALB. My dear, will you do me the pleasure to retire for a few moments?

MAD. DALB. (*to her husband.*) Whatever may be his business, don't put up with any impertinence; let him know who, and what you are.

DALB. Depend on it.

FIER. (*aside.*) It is certainly the same Dalbin with whom I had an affair of honour ten years ago.

DALB. Will you have the goodness to take a seat, sir?

FIER. Unnecessary.

DALB. Well, then we will talk standing.

FIER. Exactly so.

DALB. (*aside.*) He is still the same. (*To Fierville*) If I mistake not, I have already had the honour of seeing you, sir, somewhere or other.

FIER. It is possible. But to business. An extensive project that I have conceived, and of which the execution is confided to me....

DALB. The great canal: I believe you will have many difficulties to encounter in the execution of your project.

FIER. I shall vanquish them; genius knows none. And pray what are those obstacles?

DALB. Your proposed canal is to pass through my property, and I refuse to give up my factory.

FIER. You will be indemnified.

DALB. Who will indemnify the workmen and their poor families? Your vast project is cruel: if you deprive them of their bread, give them at least some other means of procuring it.

FIER. Let them seek employment somewhere else.

DALB. I will never give my consent to it.

FIER. Your motives are easily seen. You know that our canal must pass through your estate, you wish to turn it to your advantage, and to make us pay an enormous price. You proprietors are all alike.

DALB. This manufactory is an heir-loom in our family, it comes to us from our ancestors.

FIER. That is no concern of ours.

DALB. But it concerns me, and materially.

FIER. Come, come, to the point; we have no time to waste in idle discussion!

DALB. (*aside.*) Impertinent jackanapes!

FIER. With money and talent every thing is practicable in France. We propose then to take a part of your park with your piece of water.

DALB. How, sir! my fishpond and fish?

FIER. Oh! if you are fond of fishing, the canal will pass before your door, and you can fish at your ease.

DALB. My fish-pond! don't flatter yourself.

FIER. Then we shall cut down the little wood on the left.

DALB. Destroy my wood! and what is to become of the game?

FIER. You have a superb forest about five leagues off.

DALB. It is abominable! Private property ought to be respected.

FIER. That is not my business.

DALB. No, sir, but it is mine, I tell you.

FIER. Public good must be considered before private interest; we should be philanthropic.... Our works will then cut through your dwelling-house and a part of your manufactory.

DALB. And pray, sir, where am I to live?

FIER. Where you please.

DALB. (*angrily.*) I will not submit to such an act of injustice.

FIER. Don't be angry, sir. You will find you must submit to superior force; your damages will be paid you, and there will be an end of the affair.

Enter MADAM DALBIN and delivers a letter to her husband.

MAD. DALB. Here is a letter for you, my dear; arrived this moment by express.

DALB. From Paris, I perceive; let us see its contents; (*to Fierville*) with your permission, sir. (*Breaks the seal and reads*) The day is ours. This concerns you, Mr. Engineer; (*reads to him*) "In consequence of the numerous and just claims for indemnification, presented to the council; and considering the great difficulties to overcome in carrying into execution the plan for a new canal, submitted by Mr. Fierville, an engineer of great talents; it has been, and is decided, that the project be abandoned. The council having also learned the vexatious and arbitrary conduct of the said engineer towards the proprietors of different estates, has further decided, that he be requested to accept his dismissal, the council having no farther occasion to avail itself of his distinguished abilities."

FIER. It is a piece of treachery! I will maintain my project.

DALB. (*ironically.*) "That is no concern of ours."

FIER. Accept my dismissal!

DALB. "That is not my business."

FIER. I, who was about to distinguish and elevate myself so far above the petty grovelling geniuses of the day.

DALB. "We should be philanthropic."

FIER. What is to be done now?

DALB. "What you please."

FIER. I will return immediately to Paris where, I have no doubt, I shall soon overcome all the difficulties raised by cabal and ignorance.

(FIERVILLE is going, but DALBIN stops him.)

DALB. A word or two before you go, young man. (*To his wife*) You had better retire, my dear; this gentleman, you know, is not accustomed to talk of business before ladies... (*to Fierville*) If, by chance, you should take a fancy to fishing, I have yet a fine piece of water exceedingly well stocked: should you prefer shooting, I have still a little wood, on the left, abounding with game: or if you should wish to pursue the pleasures of the chase upon a more extensive scale, I have a superb forest about five leagues off.

FIER. Good day, sir.

DALB. Oh sir! permit me, sir, to see you to the door, 'tis only *puerile* civility and politeness; but as I am accustomed to those forms...

FIER. I want none of your politeness, sir; I despise it as I do your sneers, which you may perhaps have occasion to repent.

(*Exeunt omnes.*)

ACT IV.

FIERVILLE AND DENISART AT THE AGE OF FORTY.

Scene a banker's private counting house; a table covered with a green cloth, books, papers, etc., etc.

DENISART *in a morning-coat; his hair a little gray; he speaks to a clerk.*

DEN. You know what you have to do, Mr... let it be done with care, see that nothing be omitted. In the absence of Mr. Coutts we should be doubly zealous in order that, at his return, he may be convinced of our attachment to him and to his interest... go, my friend, and tell the servant to show Mr. Usbec in, as soon as he comes. (*Exit clerk.*)

DEN. (*alone*). How truly I love Mr. Coutts! is it possible not to love him? I have now been twenty years with him, during which time he has never ceased to treat me with the greatest kindness. I will remember his parting words when setting off for his journey. "Denisart, said he, I leave my house entirely under your direction; and as an acknowledgement for your long and faithful services I give you, from this moment, a fourth share in our profits; it is time you should have an establishment; and as you have passed the prime of life in my service, it is but just to offer you some means of enjoying the remainder of it:" he then put into my hand a pocket-book containing bank-notes to the amount of three hundred pounds, saying: "There is your first share of the profits." Certainly if all servants were faithful, few would fail meeting their reward; and instead of censuring the meanness of their employers, we should hear them praising their generosity. Profiting by the example of Mr. Coutts, I have determined to do something for poor Usbec: I have sent for him; but I hardly know how to make him the offer with sufficient delicacy; happily however in such a circumstance a little falsehood may be permitted.

Enter USBEC in a plain dress.

USBEC (*modestly*.) I believe, Mr. Denisart, you requested to see me.

DEN. Ah! my dear friend, is it you?

USB. Yes, sir.

DEN. I have long wished to see you, why did not you come?

USB. I dared not take the liberty.

DEN. (*giving his hand*.) It is however a great pleasure to see our old friends.

USB. Indeed it is, sir!

DEN. (*aside*.) I don't know how to introduce the subject. (*To Usbec*) It is a long time, Usbec, since you saw your native country.

USB. Yes, sir, and you know not how cruelly I regret it.

DEN. Suppose you were enabled to return to it?

USB. I think I should die of joy.

DEN. I should think it would produce the contrary effect.

USB. What do you mean, Mr. Denisart?

DEN. Listen, Usbec, and don't die of pleasure, for that would deprive me of a great deal.

USB. (*with great anxiety*.) Do, pray, sir, ease my suspense; what are you going to tell me?

DEN. I have several times had occasion to speak of you to Mr. Coutts, and he has taken great interest in your misfortunes; he has but courage, Usbec, courage!

USB. Speak, I beseech you, sir; I shall have fortitude to hear whatever you have to say.

DEN. Well then, before setting out on his last journey he put into my hand a pocket-book containing three hundred pounds, requesting me to deliver it to you.

USB. To me, sir?

DEN. Yes, my friend. He thinks that this sum will enable you to return to your native country and console your parents.

USB. Good heaven, is it possible?

DEN. Will you accept it?

USB. Accept it! Oh, sir, can I refuse so much happiness?

DEN. (*giving the pocket-book*) Take it then and be happy.

USB. Ah! sir, it is to you that I am indebted for so much beneficence, and without having done anything to merit it.

DEN. My friend, if *you* have forgotten the pains that you took at school to instruct me, *I* have not. I don't however pretend to *recompense* you for your cares by offering a paltry sum of vile metal; your precepts have contributed to *my* happiness, let me now endeavour to contribute to *yours*.

USB. If all, like you, sir, knew how to appreciate the cares of their teachers . . . but how can I show my gratitude for so much kindness?

DEN. By continuing to love me.

USB. Oh! for ever, for ever.

DEN. Don't lose any time: go and prepare every thing for your departure; and then come and bid me adieu.

USB. (*much affected*.) How shall I be able to leave you now?

DEN. Calm yourself, my friend; I should also regret the separation. did I not reflect that you go to your native country, where I hope much happiness is in store for you. (*Exit Usbec.*)

DEN. (*alone*.) Poor Usbec, what pleasure it gave me to witness the joy he felt at the idea of being able to return to his country and relations: I sincerely hope he may find every thing according to his wishes after so long an absence I could not have better employed the

money: to procure the happiness of others is certainly preparing our own. (*Hearing Fierville speak very loudly at the wing*) What is that noise?

FIER. (*aloud at the wing.*) I can't wait, I tell you.

DEN. Who is that importunate person?

Enter FIERVILLE in a travelling dress; his hair a little gray.

FIER. Mr. Coutts?

DEN. He is absent, sir, but I can answer for him; what is your business?

FIER. In that case

DEN. (*offering a chair.*) Have the kindness to sit down a moment; the post is just going off, I must fold up and seal this letter.

FIER. Be as quick as possible, for I'm in haste.

DEN. I am at your service in a moment.

FIER. I have no time to lose.

Enter the CASHIER.

CASH. Mr. Denisart, the stock broker is come.

FIER. (*aside.*) Denisart!

DEN. Ask him to wait a moment.

FIER. (*aside.*) A strange meeting this!

DEN. (*to the cashier.*) Here are the letters for the post. (*To Fierville*) Now, sir, I am at your service.

FIER. At last then Mr Fierville, the engineer, has obtained an audience! fortunate enough!

DEN. (*aside.*) Fierville! (*to Fierville*) I beg a thousand pardons.

FIER. You say then that I can communicate to you the affair that brings me here?

DEN. Yes, sir, but I beg pardon, I think I have already had the honour of seeing you.

FIER. (*aside.*) Shall I recollect him? No faith: I am in a hurry; it would make me lose time. (*To Denisart*) I don't remember it.

DEN. Were not you at the college of Henry the fourth?

FIER. It is possible.

DEN. Have you no recollection of my face?

FIER. (*aside.*) What a bore! I have seen so many people, and been so much in the world since the time you mention! I have not passed my life in doing nothing.

DEN. (*aside.*) He won't own that he recollects me; (*to Fierville*) so you have not the least remembrance of me?

FIER. Sir, I am in a great hurry, my postchaise is waiting for me. My name ought to have informed you that I am the celebrated engineer and agriculturist.

DEN. (*aside.*) No change in him, I see.

FIER. I am general agent of a company established under my auspices. We are going to colonise the isles. To grub up forests, and fertilise a desert, are but small difficulties in the eyes of genius.

DEN. It is a bold enterprise.

FIER. To conquer without peril is to triumph without glory.

DEN. Those enterprises are very useful when they succeed.

FIER. I am not come here, sir, to ask your advice.

DEN. I shall take great care not to offer you any.

FIER. You will do very right, for I don't want any. 'Tis money that I want.

DEN. The capital to be employed in that undertaking, has been paid into the hands of Mr. Coutts, my partner.

FIER. (*aside.*) His partner! . . . That fool has perhaps made a fortune, while I, a man of genius, am seeking one. (*to Denisart*) I have a check on your house, for a hundred thousand francs; it will scarcely be sufficient to pay the workmen that I shall take to my colony.

DEN. You are then going to take away our mechanics; think, sir, first of your own country and her wants, do not deprive her at once of your talents and of the assistance of her artisans.

FIER. But we are wandering from the point in question, the bill.

DEN. True, the check, the hundred thousand francs, I believe that is what you wish.

FIER. I believe it is (*giving him the check*),

DEN. But I see it is not due till to-morrow.

FIER. (*aside.*) Perhaps he'll refuse payment; I was wrong not to recollect him. (*To Denisart*) I thought that Mr. Coutts would have advanced the sum, and I hope that in his absence . . .

DEN. It is irregular; but never mind, have the goodness to follow me.

FIER. (*aside.*) It is all right; (*to Denisart*) come then.

(*Denisart brings him to the front of the stage.*)

DEN. Really then you have no recollection of the college of Henry the fourth?

FIER. I believe your cashier's office is that way, (*pointing*) is it not?

DEN. Yes, it is, come with me. (*Exeunt.*)

ACT V.

FIERVILLE AT THE AGE OF FIFTY.

Scene an Asiatic garden; Turkish slaves occupied in decorating the garden for a festival.

USBEC, caliph of Bassora; slaves at the back.

USB. (*advances.*) Fierville, the imperious Fierville, has been my slave these ten years, and I have but this moment learned it! What unaccountable destiny brings us once more together? But for the generosity of the kindhearted Denisart I should still be in France, sighing for my native land. There I was servant to this Fierville, then a young man of twenty years, full of instruction, and possessing great talent. Now, at the age of fifty, that same Fierville is my slave. My slave! and one word of mine would be sufficient to save, or to destroy him. Who could have imagined that during my exile, my father would become caliph of Bassora, or that I should return and succeed to that dignity? Fierville's misfortunes are perhaps nearly terminated: the cadî has informed me that, during his slavery, he has occupied himself in the construction of a steamboat, with which he assures me I shall be able to navigate against the current of the most rapid and dangerous rivers. This enterprise ought, if it succeeds, to procure him his liberty. I have ordered a festival to be prepared, during which I will make a trial of the boat; but I must first have an interview with my former master. (*To the slaves.*) Bring the slave Fierville before me. (*To other slaves.*) Let all be ready for the festival. (*Exeunt slaves.*) I am now going to receive the man who once had the insolence and temerity to give me a blow.

Enter FIERVILLE dressed as a Turkish slave. Two slaves bring him before USBEC.

USB. Approach, slave!

FIER. (*at the back of the stage*). Insupportable insult!

USB. Approach, Frenchman, I want to ask you some questions.

FIER. (*haughtily*). What do you want?

USB. No one, in my presence, is permitted to speak in a tone of authority. Approach in a respectful manner; learn to submit to the customs of the country.

FIER. What! prostrate myself at the feet of a man?

USB. Your fate has ordained it.

FIER. I defy fate. I can brave it.

USB. Your manners and discourse surprise me: misfortune ought to have rendered you more flexible.

FIER. Your chains may bind, they cannot bend me.

USB. Do you know that I can make you repent your insolence?

FIER. I know you cannot.

USB. I can severely punish it.

FIER. Who prevents you?

USB. The recollection that I have preserved of *your* country, of France. Do you remember a young Turk who was an usher at the college where you received your instruction, and who afterwards became your servant?

FIER. Well, and what then? what of him?

USB. Why, that Turk, that usher, that servant, that Usbec in a word, is now before you; he is the caliph of Bassora; and you are his slave.

FIER. What! am I, Fierville, the slave of Usbec?

USB. While fate, or justice was throwing you prisoner into the hands of corsairs, who sold you as a slave to my father, it was acting much more favourably to me; I was enabled to return to my country; and if I did not remember with pleasure the kindness and hospitality of your countrymen in general, I might feel disposed to revenge myself for the treatment I received from you individually. I might inflict on you a punishment which is customary in *my* country, and that you would have introduced into *yours*.

FIER. Who prevents you?

USB. The respect that I owe to myself, and my pity for your misfortunes.

FIER. I am much more wounded by your pity, than alarmed by your menaces of punishment.

USB. Then you don't acknowledge my power?

FIER. Nor you *my* merit. A man of genius, as I am, may fall into slavery; but prostrate himself! crawl at the feet of a mussulman! never!

USB. Take him away! his insolence may perhaps provoke me to use the power he defies, and thus overstep the bounds that humanity prescribes to me.

FIER. (*disdainfully*.) That is the calm, the placid Usbec. (*To the slaves*.) I follow.

USB. A moment! you have constructed a machine which, I am told, will resist the rapidity of our rivers, and enable us to navigate against their streams.

FIER. They have told you the truth, a rare thing at an eastern court.

USB. Your hopes of liberty are founded, I hear, on this invention?

FIER. True again.

USB. Let the machine be tried on this canal during the festival; if it succeeds, your wishes shall be accomplished.

FIER. And what recompense do you offer?

USB. Your liberty; is not that sufficient? You shall be permitted to return to your own country.

FIER. And what should I do there now? No, I will be free and remain at Bassora; give me honours here, give me a palace, give me slaves.

USB. You ask impossibilities; the laws of my country expressly forbid it; no foreigner can acquire authority at Bassora; ask something else.

FIER. That is what I ask, and unless you grant it, you shall not know my invention.

USB. I cannot; you set a price beyond...

FIER. What! would you bargain for the fruits of my talent, as for merchandise? well, I have changed my determination, I will accept no obligation, I will owe you nothing.

USB. But I must and will know the merits of this machine.

FIER. You will! you will! and how will you, if I refuse to communicate them?

USB. Slaves, see that he executes my will. (*To Fierville.*) I will be obeyed.

FIER. Don't flatter yourself: you will be deceived.

Some slaves take FIERVILLE off.

USB. He will reflect and comply; (*to the slaves*) let the gardens be thrown open, and the festival commence. (*He seats himself upon his throne.*)

(Turks throng into the garden on all sides, a Turkish band performs military music. All the amusements of an Asiatic festival are seen in different parts of the garden. Towards the close of the festival a violent explosion is heard.)

USB. (*descending from his throne.*) What noise is that?

A SLAVE (*entering with an air of terror*). Your Highness... the slave Fierville... according to your Majesty's just and merciful orders, has just been conducted on board his machine and ordered to put it in action... scarcely had it begun to move, when the slave, approaching the machinery, cried out "Better die than yield;" immediately touching a part of it, the whole machine was blown into a thousand pieces.

USB. And what is become of Fierville?

SLAVE. He is miraculously saved, he is not even wounded.

USB. Such are the effects of his incorrigible pride! He prefers slavery, and even death, to the idea of becoming docile. (*To a slave.*) Let Fierville be restored to liberty; let him be conducted to the frontiers of my empire, and let him thus learn that Usbec the caliph of Bassora does not revenge the injuries of Usbec the servant of Fierville at Paris.

End of the fifth act.

ACT VI.

FIERVILLE AND DENISART AT THE AGE OF SIXTY FIVE.

Scene in the country; on the right is seen an iron gate opening to a country seat at the bottom of a hill.

DALBIN and DENISART.

(DENISART is dressed as a rich farmer: his long white hair falls on his shoulders and covers also a part of his face. In his button hole he has a riband. DALBIN appears to be about seventy; he wears an old military frock. They both come down the hill talking.)

DEN. Yes, my old friend, I confess my regret at not having studied more deeply in my youth.

DALB. Such is human nature! never contented. Have not you made your way in the world?

DEN. It is true that through the kindness of Mr. Coutts I have been able to realize a pretty good fortune.

DALB. Which you now enjoy in the most agreeable manner.

DEN. Why, yes, pretty well... but...

DALB. Your prudence and economy have enabled you to purchase this fine estate, and your benevolence and affability make you beloved by all the inhabitants of the neighbouring country.

DEN. Is that alone sufficient to make me happy? I am now sixty five years old, and time frequently hangs heavy on my hands, I...

DALB. How could you employ it better than you do? true happiness is to be beloved by our fellow creatures.

DEN. Your observations are very just; and yet... what shall I leave behind me?

DALB. A name justly respected and revered.

DEN. Say rather I shall be forgotten; or my inferiority only remembered. I own that I feel regret at not being able to transmit to posterity a name celebrated by some great and meritorious act.

DALB. Can it be possible that, with fortune smiling on you — that after having fulfilled your social and commercial duties with exemplary honour and probity — you should, in your old age, aspire to a great name? Your ambition comes a little too late.

DEN. I am not ambitious; but a little honour is very agreeable.

DALB. True, that of being, as you are, mayor of the district, and this decoration that was given you as a recompense for your improvements in the useful arts; they are, I should think, sufficient.

DEN. Certainly; but....

DALB. Believe me, that mark of confidence and esteem is a valuable acquisition.

DEN. I acknowledge it; I am far from undervaluing it; but there is nothing to vary the monotonous uniformity of my existence. 'Tis true that you come every year and pass some weeks with me; but the rest of the year I pass alone a prey to ennui.

DALB. You are really become incomprehensible; you who were always so reasonable, so contented, so simple in your manners!

DEN. True, but I feel that the sciences, are necessary for the consolation, and for the honour of old age.

DALB. Really you surprise me.

DEN. I well remember what Fierville, one of my fellow-students, said to me at college.

DALB. And I well remember, and shall not easily forget, his insolent conduct to me upon certain occasions.

DEN. You must acknowledge he was extremely clever and well instructed.

DALB. Yes; he knew it also, and was like many well-instructed young men, too fond of showing his instruction; but he had not the least urbanity, no manners, full of pride and vanity; in fact his learning served but to render him insupportable, and to disgust his best friends.

DEN. Come, come, he had merit.

DALB. I am much mistaken if his haughty disposition has not prevented him from profiting by it.

DEN. You have a pique against him ever since you wounded him in the duel.

DALB. No, not I indeed.

DEN. I have reason also to owe him a grudge; he disowned acquaintance with me at a certain time: but never mind, don't let us think of that. Let us return to breakfast, I dare say it is ready, and the walk has given me an appetite; besides my public functions call me to the town-house.

DALB. (*offering his arm.*) Come, my ambitious young gentleman, I shall have some trouble to keep you within bounds.

DEN. Well, no more on that head.

DALB. That's right, keep to that, or I shall scold you.

(*They enter the iron gate.*)

Enter FIERVILLE in a miserable ragged dress, his whole appearance bespeaks beggary.

FIER. Oh Fierville! Fierville! The once gay and proud Fierville, reduced to travel from country to country, begging his bread! Death is a thousand times preferable. Wandering without a name, disowned by every body, despised, I have not a friend to console me... indeed how should I have any? I accuse fate, 'tis in vain; experience undeceives me when it is too late to retrace my steps, and I am condemned, after having boasted of being the most important among mankind, to feel that I am the vilest of them.

(*He sits down on a bench.*)

Enter DENISART from the side, speaking.

DEN. I will be with you in a moment. (*He advances and perceives FIERVILLE.*) What do you want, my friend?

FIER. (*aside.*) Another humiliation! is there to be no end to them? (*To Denisart*) Overcome by the weight of years and misery, I am compelled to ask charity of the benevolent, to prolong a wretched existence. (*He approaches DENISART.*)

DEN. (*tenderly.*) Poor unfortunate man! how old are you, my friend?

FIER. Sixty five, sir.

DEN. The same age as myself. What has reduced you to such misery.

FIER. My story is too long to relate to you.

DEN. (*aside.*) His age and his misery plead for him, and interest me in his favour; (*to Fierville*) but a trifling alms would be of little service to you; come with me, and you shall receive the attention and assistance your situation requires.

FIER. Have I then found a generous soul?

DEN. Yes, yes, my friend, come along with me.

FIER. You are perhaps too ready to assist me, you do not know me.

DEN. You are unfortunate, and that is sufficient.

FIER. (*giving him some papers.*) These papers will inform you that I am not, perhaps, quite unworthy of your pity.

DEN. I will examine them since you desire it. (*After having read he looks attentively at Fierville.*) Do not my eyes deceive me!

FIER. What do you mean?

DEN. It is Fierville who stands before me?

FIER. It is himself; but who are you?

DEN. Your old friend and companion.

FIER. What is your name?

DEN. Denisart.

FIER. (*with horror.*) Denisart! God! where shall I hide myself! (*quitting him precipitately.*) Let me fly, let me fly from you. This blow only was wanting.

DEN. Stay, Fierville, stay; listen to me.

FIER. No! no! let me hide myself from shame and dreadful humiliation.

DEN. Return, Fierville, come back, I beseech you.

FIER. I ought to fly from your presence. My past conduct, my disdain... I dare not hold up my head in your presence.

DEN. Your expressions afflict me; come, come, let us forget old times, or if we remember anything, let it be only our friendship.

FIER. Can you then forgive my ill treatment of you when we were at school?

DEN. Yes, yes, from my heart I forgive it.

FIER. And when I met you in the street with your bill-case and money-bag?

DEN. Say no more about it. Let us remember only that we were school-fellows, and show to the youth of the present day the necessity of cultivating friendship, and of not considering as their inferiors those who do not make such rapid progress as themselves, but rather to endeavour mildly to excite them to emulation. Come, come, my old friend, take my arm.

FIER. Is it possible you can feel such benevolent sentiments for one who has treated you so vilely; who has despised, and meanly disowned you?

DEN. You were then young and inexperienced; besides where is the man who in the course of his life has not committed a fault?

FIER. I was indeed very culpable, very culpable.

DEN. Say very thoughtless.

FIER. No, my eyes are now opened, I can see all the enormity of my conduct, and I feel that my wretched fate is the consequence of it.

DEN. Fortune has been unfavourable to you.

FIER. You mistake; blame not fortune; never was a more brilliant prospect; every thing seemed to smile on me: endowed with wonderful facility I learned, almost without an effort, the most abstruse sciences; nothing in fact resisted me: but deprived, as I had been in infancy, of maternal cares and attentions, abandoned entirely to study, I never learned the art of offering my opinions with humility or of supporting them with modest confidence and inoffensive language. Indeed I was completely void of manners. A foolish pride took possession of me, I became insupportable to society: the finest projects, the most promising inventions, all failed in consequence of my repulsive behaviour; every thing in fact was sacrificed to my unbounded vanity, and to a haughtiness which has caused all men to shun me, and I am now left miserable and alone on the earth.

DEN. No, Fierville. say not so: you have still a friend, who has once more found, and will not again lose you. You shall quit me no more.

FIER. You will then?

DEN. Yes, I insist on your staying with me, I will share my fortune with you, we will live as brothers: and the knowledge that you now despise shall contribute to my happiness: you shall entertain me with the sciences that you have acquired, you shall give me some notions of them, and I shall perhaps die wiser than I have lived.

FILR. Your generosity overcomes me. I can scarcely support the idea of such unlooked-for happiness.

(Denisart is leading him off, when their attention is attracted by the sound of music. THE GENIUS OF URBANITY and THE GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION descend together in a celestial car. DENISART and FIERVILLE contemplate them.)

GEN. of URB. to GEN. of INSTR. You now see that each wants the assistance of the other.

GEN. of INSTR. It is true; I acknowledge my error. Henceforth we must be inseparable. You must teach our youth how to live agreeably with mankind; and later, I will instruct them how to raise themselves above the vulgar; for as a man void of instruction is without consideration in the world, so is a man without good breeding incapable of society. *(To Fierville and Denisart, who have remained silent.)* Fierville, Denisart, we have caused time to accelerate the march of the events which were to mark your existence: let all that you have seen serve as a lesson; and let experience teach you to walk in the path that Urbanity and Instruction have jointly traced for you. A new career is about to open before you.

(The GENIUS OF INSTRUCTION directs the rays of his mirror on FIERVILLE and DENISART, whose dresses immediately change, and they appear as in the first scene at the college.)

SCENE THE LAST.

The celestial car with the GENII rises slowly and discovers the scene of the distribution of prizes exactly as before.

FIER. Denisart!

DEN. Fierville!

(They throw themselves into each other's arms. MR. BERMON advances and crowns both of them.)

Chorus of scholars, etc.

If you follow with ardour your studies at college,
And *modestly* strive to excel in such knowledge,
You'll ensure much esteem and avoid many woes;
You'll have all men for friends, and who would have foes?

(P. Sadler.)

ANHANG II.

Mischte Gedichte.

1. GOD SAVE THE QUEEN.

God save our gracious Queen,
Long live our noble Queen,

God save the Queen.

Send her victorious,
Happy and glorious,
Long to reign over us,

God save the Queen.

O Lord, our God, arise,
Scatter her enemies,

And let them fall!

Confound their politics,
Frustrate their knavish tricks!

On her our hope we fix:

God save us all.

Thy choicest gifts in store,
On her be pleased to pour,

Long may she reign!

May she defend our laws,

And ever give us cause,

To sing, with heart and voice,

God save the Queen!

O grant her long to see
Friendship and amity

Always increase!

May she her sceptre sway,

All loyal souls obey,

Join heart and voice, Huzza!

God save the Queen.

2. RULE BRITANNIA.

When Britain first at Heav'n's com-
mand

Arose from out the azure main,

This was the charter of the land,
And guardian Angels sung this strain:

Rule Britannia, Britannia rule the
waves!

Britons never shall be slaves!

The nations not so blest as thee,
Must, in their turns, to tyrants fall!
While thou shalt flourish, great and
free,

The dread and envy of them all.

Rule Britannia, etc.

Still more majestic shalt thou rise,
More dreadful from each foreign
stroke;

As the loud blast, that tears the skies,
Serves but to root thy native oak.

Rule Britannia, etc.

Thee haughty tyrants ne'er shall
tame:

All their attempts to bend thee down,
Will but arouse thy gen'rous flame,
But work their woe and thy renown.

Rule Britannia, etc.

To thee belongs the rural reign;
Thy cities shall with commerce shine:
All thine shall be the subject main,
And every shore it circles, thine.

Rule Britannia, etc.

The Muses, still with freedom found,
Shall to thy happy coasts repair,
Blest Isle! with matchless beauties
crown'd,

And manly hearts to guard the fair.

Rule Britannia, etc.

(James Thomson.)

3. SEA SONG.

Ye Mariners of England!
 That guard our native seas;
 Whose flag has braved, a thousand
 years,
 The battle and the breeze!
 Your glorious standard launch again
 To match another foe!
 And sweep through the deep,
 While the stormy winds do blow;
 While the battle rages loud and long,
 And the stormy winds do blow.

The spirits of your fathers
 Shall start from every wave! —
 For the deck it was their field of fame,
 And Ocean was their grave:
 Where Blake and mighty Nelson fell,
 Your manly hearts shall glow,
 As ye sweep through the deep,
 While the stormy winds do blow &c.

Britannia needs no bulwarks,
 No towers along the steep:
 Her march is o'er the mountain-waves,
 Her home is on the deep:
 With thunders from her native oak,
 She quells the floods below, —
 As they roar on the shore,
 When the stormy winds do blow;
 When the battle rages etc. etc.

The meteor flag of England
 Shall yet terrific burn;
 Till danger's troubled night depart,
 And the star of peace return.
 Then, then, ye ocean-warriors!
 Our song and feast shall flow
 To the fame of your name,
 When the storm has ceased to blow;
 When the fiery fight is heard no more,
 And the storm has ceased to blow.
 (Thomas Campbell.)

4. THE MINSTREL-BOY.

The Minstrel-boy to the war is gone,
 In the ranks of death you'll find him;
 His father's sword he has girded on,
 And his wild harp slung behind him.
 "Land of song!" said the warrior-bard,
 "Though all the world betrays thee,
 One sword, at least, thy right shall
 guard,
 One faithful harp shall praise thee!"

The Minstrel fell! — but the foe-
 man's chain [under;
 Could not bring that proud soul
 The harp he loved ne'er spoke again,
 For he tore its chords asunder;
 And said, "No chains shall sully thee,
 Thou soul of love and bravery!
 Thy songs were made for the pure
 and free,
 They shall never sound in slavery."
 (Thomas Moore.)

5. THE BURIAL OF SIR JOHN MOORE.

Not a drum was heard, not a funeral
 note, [ried;
 As his corse to the rampart we hur-
 Not a soldier discharged his farewell
 shot [buried.
 O'er the grave where our hero we
 We buried him darkly at dead of night,
 The sods with our bayonets turning, —
 By the struggling moonbeam's misty
 light,
 And the lantern dimly burning.

No useless coffin enclosed his breast,
 Not in sheet nor in shroud we wound
 him; [rest,
 But he lay like a warrior taking his
 With his martial cloak around him.

Few and short were the prayers we said,
 And we spoke not a word of sorrow,
 But we stedfastly gazed on the face
 that was dead,
 And we bitterly thought of the morrow.

We thought as we hollow'd his nar-
 row bed,
 And smooth'd down his lonely pillow,
 That the foe and the stranger would
 tread o'er his head,
 And we far away on the billow.

Lightly they'll talk of the spirit that's
 gone,
 And o'er his cold ashes upbraid him; —
 But little he'll reck, if they let him
 sleep on [him.
 In the grave where a Briton has laid
 But half our heavy task was done,
 When the clock struck the hour for
 retiring; [dom gun,
 And we heard the distant and ran-
 That the foe was suddenly firing.

Lend me horses, and serving-men,
and your apparel,
And I'll ride to London to answer
your quarrel.

Nay frown not, if it hath been told
unto me. [be:
I am like your lordship, as ever may
And if you will but lend me your gown,
There is none shall know us in fair
London town."

"Now horses, and serving-men thou
shalt have,
With sumptuous array most gallant
and brave;
With crozier, and mitre, and rochet,
and cope,
Fit to appear fore our father the pope."

"Now welcome, sir abbot," the king
he did say, [thy day;
"This well thou'rt come back to keep
For and if thou canst answer my
questions three, [be.
Thy life and thy living both saved shall

And first, when thou seest me here in
this stead, [my head,
With my crown of gold so fair on
Among all my liege-men so noble of
birth, [worth."
Tell me to one penny what I am

"For thirty pence our Saviour was sold
Among the false Jews, as I have
been told:
And twenty-nine is the worth of thee,
For I think, thou art one penny
worse than he,"

The king he laughed, and swore by
St. Bittel, [little!
"I did not think I had been worth so
— Now secondly tell me, without
any doubt, [about."
How soon I may ride this whole world

"You must rise with the sun, and ride
with the same,
Until the next morning he riseth again;
And then your grace need not make
any doubt, [it about."
But in twenty-four hours you'll ride

The king he laughed, and swore by
St. John, [soon!
"I did not think, it could be gone so
— Now from the third question thou
must not shrink,
But tell me truly what I do think."

"Yea, that shall I do, and make your
grace merry: [bury;
You think, I'm the abbot of Canter-
But I'm his poor shepherd, as plain
you may see,
That am come to beg pardon for him
and for me."

The king he laughed and swore by
the mass, [his place!"
"I'll make thee lord abbot this day in
"Now nay, my liege, be not in such
speed, [read."
For alack! I can neither write, nor

"Four nobles a week then I will give
thee, [unto me;
For this merry jest thou hast shown
And tell the old abbot when thou
comest home.
Thou hast brought him a pardon from
good King John."
(*Old English Ballad.*)

7. THE NEGRO'S COMPLAINT.

Forced from home and all its pleasures,
Afric's coast I left forlorn:
To increase a stranger's treasures,
O'er the raging billows borne.
Men from England bought and sold me,
Paid my price in paltry gold;
But, though slave they have en-
roll'd me,
Minds are never to be sold.

Still in thought as free as ever,
What are England's rights, I ask,
Me from my delights to sever,
— Me to torture, me to task?
Fleecy locks and black complexion
Cannot forfeit nature's claim;
Skins may differ, but affection
Dwells in white and black the same.

Why did all-creating Nature
Make the plant for which we toil?

Sighs must fan it, tears must water,
Sweat of ours must dress the soil.
Think, ye masters iron-hearted,
Lolling at your jovial boards;
Think how many backs have smarted
For the sweets your cane affords!

Is there, as ye sometimes tell us,
Is there one, who reigns on high?
Has he bid you buy and sell us,
Speaking from his throne, the sky?
Ask him, if your knotted scourges,
Matches, blood extorting screws,
Are the means that duty urges,
Agents of his will to use?

Hark! he answers—wild tornadoes,
Strewing yonder sea with wrecks,
Wasting towns, plantations, meadows,
Are the voice with which he speaks.
He, foreseeing what vexations
Afric's sons should undergo,
Fix'd their tyrants' habitations
Where his whirlwinds answer—No!

By our blood in Afric wasted,
Ere our necks received the chain;
By the miseries that we tasted,
Crossing in your barks the main;
By our sufferings, since ye brought us
To the man-degrading mart;
All sustain'd by patience, taught us
Only by a broken heart.

Deem our nation brutes no longer,
Till some reason ye shall find
Worthier of regard and stronger
Than the colour of our kind.
Slaves of gold, whose sordid dealings
Tarnish all your boasted powers,
Prove that you have human feelings,
Ere you proudly question ours!
(William Cowper.)

8. THE DIVERTING HISTORY OF JOHN GILPIN.

*Showing how he went farther than he
intended, and came safe home again.*

John Gilpin was a citizen
Of credit and renown,
A train-band captain eke was he
Of famous London town.

John Gilpin's spouse said to her dear,
Though wedded we have been

These twice ten tedious years, yet we
No holiday have seen.

To-morrow is our wedding-day,
And we will then repair
Unto the bell at Edmonton,
All in a chaise and pair.

My sister, and my sister's child,
Myself, and children three,
Will fill the chaise; so you must ride
On horseback after we.

He soon replied, I do admire
Of womankind but one,
And you are she, my dearest dear,
Therefore it shall be done.

I am a linen-draper bold,
As all the world doth know.
And my good friend the calender
Will lend his horse to go.

Quoth Mrs. Gilpin, That's well said;
And for that wine is dear,
We will be furnish'd with our own,
Which is both bright and clear.

John Gilpin kiss'd his loving wife;
O'erjoy'd was he to find,
That though on pleasure she was bent,
She had a frugal mind.

The morning came, the chaise was
brought,
But yet was not allow'd
To drive up to the door, lest all
Should say that she was proud.

So three doors off the chaise was
stay'd,
Where they did all get in;
Six precious souls, and all agog
To dash through thick and thin.

Smack went the whip, round went
the wheels,
Were never folks so glad.
The stones did rattle underneath,
As if Cheapside were mad.

John Gilpin at his horse's side
Seized fast the flowing mane,
And up he got, in haste to ride,
But soon came down again;

For saddle-tree scarce reach'd had he,
His journey to begin,
When turning round his head he saw
Three customers come in.

So down he came; for loss of time,
Although it grieved him sore;
Yet loss of pence, full well he knew
Would trouble him much more.

'Twas long before the customers
Were suited to their mind,
When Betty screaming came down
stairs,

"The wine is left behind!"

Good lack! quoth he—yet bring it me,
My leathern belt likewise,
In which I bear my trusty sword,
When I do exercise.

Now mistress Gilpin (careful soul!)
Had two stone bottles found,
To hold the liquor that she loved,
And keep it safe and sound.

Each bottle had a curling ear,
Through which the belt he drew,
And hung a bottle on each side,
To make his balance true.

Then over all, that he might be
Equipp'd from top to toe,
His long red cloak, well brush'd and
neat,

He manfully did throw.

Now see him mounted once again
Upon his nimble steed,
Full slowly pacing o'er the stones,
With caution and good heed.

But finding soon a smoother road
Beneath his well-shod feet,
The snorting beast began to trot,
Which gall'd him in his seat.

So, fair and softly! John he cried,
But John he cried in vain;
That trot became a galop soon,
In spite of curb and rein.

So stooping down, as needs he must
Who cannot sit upright,
He grasp'd the mane with both his
hands,

And eke with all his might.

His horse, who never in that sort
Had handled been before,
What thing upon his back had got
Did wonder more and more.

Away went Gilpin, neck or nought:
Away went hat and wig;
He little dreamt, when he set out,
Of running such a rig.

The wind did blow, the cloak did fly,
Like streamer long and gay,
Till, loop and button failing both,
At last it flew away.

Then might all people well discern
The bottles he had slung;
A bottle swinging at each side,
As hath been said or sung.

The dogs did bark, the children
scream'd,
Up flew the windows all;
And every soul cried out, well done!
As loud as he could bawl.

Away went Gilpin— who but he?
His fame soon spread around,
He carries weight! he rides a race!
'Tis for a thousand pound!

And still, as fast as he drew near,
'Twas wonderful to view,
How in a trice the turnpike men
Their gates wide open threw.

And now, as he went bowing down
His reeking head full low,
The bottles twain behind his back
Were shatter'd at a blow.

Down ran the wine into the road,
Most piteous to be seen,
Which made his horse's flanks to
smoke
As they had basted been.

But still he seem'd to carry weight,
With leathern girdle braced;
For all might see the bottle-necks
Still dangling at his waist.

Thus all through merry Islington
These gambols he did play,
Until he came unto the Wash
Of Edmonton so gay;

And there he threw the wash about
On both sides of the way,
Just like unto a trundling-mop,
Or a wild goose at play.

At Edmonton his loving wife
From the balcony spied
Her tender husband, wondering much
To see how he did ride.

Stop, stop, John Gilpin! — Here's
the house —

They all at once did cry;
The dinner waits, and we are tired;
Said Gilpin — So am I!

But yet his horse was not a whit
Inclined to tarry there!
For why? — his owner had a house
Full ten miles off, at Ware.

So like an arrow swift he flew,
Shot by an archer strong;
So did he fly—which brings me to
The middle of my song.

Away went Gilpin out of breath,
And sore against his will,
Till at his friend the calender's
His horse at last stood still.

The calender, amazed to see
His neighbour in such trim,
Laid down his pipe, flew to the gate,
And thus accosted him:

What news? what news? your tid-
ings tell!

Tell me you must and shall —
Say why bareheaded you are come,
Or why you come at all?

Now Gilpin had a pleasant wit,
And loved a timely joke;
And thus unto the calender
In merry guise he spoke:

I came because your horse would
And, if I well forebode, [come
My hat and wig will soon be here,
They are upon the road.

The calender, right glad to find
His friend in merry pin,
Return'd him not a single word,
But to the house went in;

Whence straight he came with hat
and wig:

A wig that flow'd behind,
A hat not much the worse for wear,
Each comely in its kind.

He held them up, and in his turn
Thus show'd his ready wit,
My head is twice as big as yours,
They therefore needs must fit.

But let me scrape the dirt away,
That hangs upon your face;
And stop and eat, for well you may
Be in a hungry case.

Said John, It is my wedding-day,
And all the world would stare,
If wife should dine at Edmonton,
And I should dine at Ware.

So turning to his horse, he said,
I am in haste to dine;
'Twas for your pleasure, you came
here,

You shall go back for mine.

Ah! luckless speech, and bootless
boast!

For which he paid full dear;
For, while he spake, a braying ass
Did sing most loud and clear;

Whereat his horse did snort, as he
Had heard a lion roar,
And gallop'd off with all his might,
As he had done before.

Away went Gilpin, and away
Went Gilpin's hat and wig;
He lost them sooner than at first,
For why?—They were too big.

Now mistress Gilpin, when she saw
Her husband posting down
Into the country far away,
She pull'd out half-a-crown;

And thus unto the youth she said
That drove them to the Bell,
This shall be yours, when you bring
back

My husband safe and well.

The youth did ride, and soon did meet
John coming back amain:
Whom in a trice he tried to stop,
By catching at his rein;

But not performing what he meant,
And gladly would have done,
The frightened steed he frightened more,
And made him faster run.

Away went Gilpin, and away
Went postboy at his heels,
The postboy's horse right glad to miss
The lumbering of the wheels.

Six gentlemen upon the road,
Thus seeing Gilpin fly,
With postboy scampering in the rear,
They raised the hue and cry: —

Stop thief! stop thief! — a high-
wayman!

Not one of them was mute:
And all and each that pass'd that way
Did join in the pursuit.

And now the turnpike-gates again
Flew open in short space;

The toll-men thinking as before,
That Gilpin rode a race.

And so he did, and won it too,
For he got first to town;
Nor stopp'd till where he had got up,
He did again get down.

Now let us sing, long live the king,
And Gilpin, long live he;
And, when he next doth ride abroad,
May I be there to see!

(*William Cowper.*)

9. THE PAUPER'S DEATHBED.

Tread softly—bow the head—
In reverent silence bow—
No passing bell doth toll—
Yet an immortal soul
Is passing now.

Stranger! however great,
With lowly reverence bow;
There's one in that poor shed—
One by that paltry bed—
Greater than thou.

Beneath that beggar's roof,
Lo! Death doth keep his state:
Enter—no crowds attend—
Enter—no guards defend—
This palace gate.

That pavement damp and cold
No smiling courtiers tread;
One silent woman stands
Lifting with meagre hands
A dying head.

No mingling voices sound—
An infant wails alone;
A sob suppressed—again
That short deep gasp, and then
The parting groan.

Oh! change—oh! wondrous change—
Burst are the prison bars—
This moment there so low,
So agonised, and now
Beyond the stars!

Oh! change—stupendous change!
There lies the soulless clod:
The sun eternal breaks—
The new immortal wakes—
Wakes with his God.

(*Mrs. Southey.*)

10. THE MONKEY.

(*From Sketches of Natural History.*)

Monkey, little merry fellow,
Thou art Nature's Punchinello;
Full of fun as Puck could be—
Harlequin might learn of thee!

In the very ark, no doubt,
You went frolicking about;
Never keeping in your mind
Drowned monkeys left behind!

Have you no traditions—none,
Of the court of Solomon?
No memorial how ye went
With Prince Hiram's armament?

Look now at him!—slyly peep!
He pretends he is asleep;
Fast asleep upon his bed,
With his arm beneath his head.

Now that posture is not right,
And he is not settled quite;
There! that's better than before—
And the knave pretends to snore.

Ha! he is not half asleep;
See, he slyly takes a peep.
Monkey, though your eyes were shut,
You could see this little nut.

You shall have it, pigmy brother!
What, another! and another!
Nay your cheeks are like a sack—
Sit down, and begin to crack.

There the little ancient man
Cracks as fast as crack he can!
Now good-bye, you merry fellow,
Nature's primest Punchinello.

(*Mary Howitt.*)

11. THE ORPHAN BOY'S TALE.

Stay, lady, stay, for mercy's sake,
And hear a helpless orphan's tale,
Ah! sure my looks must pity wake,
'Tis want that makes my cheek so
pale.

Yet I was once a mother's pride,
And my brave father's hope and joy;
But in the Nile's proud fight he died,
And I am now an orphan boy.

Poor foolish child! how pleased was I
 When news of Nelson's victory came,
 Along the crowded streets to fly,
 And see the lighted windows flame!
 To force me home my mother sought,
 She could not bear to see my joy;
 For with my father's life 'twas bought,
 And made me a poor orphan boy.

The people's shouts were long and
 loud, [ears;

My mother, shuddering, closed her
 "Rejoice! rejoice!" still cried the
 crowd;

My mother answered with her tears.
 "Why are you crying thus," said I,
 "While others laugh and shout
 with joy?"

She kissed me—and with such a sigh!
 She called me her poor orphan boy.

"What is an orphan boy?" I cried,
 As in her face I looked, and smiled;
 My mother through her tears replied,
 "You'll know too soon, ill-fated
 child!" [knell,

And now they've tolled my mother's
 And I'm no more a parent's joy;
 O lady, I have learned too well
 What 'tis to be an orphan boy!

Oh! were I by your bounty fed!
 Nay, gentle lady, do not chide—
 Trust me, I mean to earn my bread;
 The sailor's orphan boy has pride.
 Lady you weep!—ha?—this to me?
 You'll give me clothing, food, em-
 ploy! [see

Look down, dear parents! look and
 Your happy orphan boy!

(Mrs. Opie.)

12. ODE TO THE GERMANS. (1812.)

The spirit of Britannia
 Invokes, across the main,
 Her sister Allemannia
 To burst the Tyrant's chain:
 By our kindred blood, she cries,
 Rise, Allemannians, rise,
 And hallow'd thrice the band
 Of our kindred hearts shall be,
 When your land shall be the land
 Of the free — of the free!

With Freedom's lion-banner
 Britannia rules the waves;
 Whilst your "Broad Stone of Honour"
 Is still the camp of slaves.
 For shame, for glory's sake,
 Wake, Allemannians, wake,
 And thy tyrants now that whelm
 Half the world shall quail and flee,
 When your realm shall be the realm
 Of the free — of the free.

Mars owes to you his thunder
 That shakes the battle-field,
 Yet to break your bonds asunder
 No martial bolt has peal'd.
 Shall the laurell'd land of art
 Wear shackles on her heart?
 No! the clock ye framed to tell
 By its sound, the march of time;
 Let it clang oppression's knell
 O'er your clime—oe'r your clime!

The press's magic letters,
 That blessing ye brought forth, —
 Behold! it lies in fetters
 On the soil that gave it birth:
 But the trumpet must be heard,
 And the charger must be spurr'd;
 For your father Armin's Spirit
 Calls down from heaven, that ye
 Shall gird you for the fight,
 And be free! — and be free!
 (Thomas Campbell.)

13. WE ARE SEVEN.

A simple child, dear brother Jim,
 That lightly draws its breath,
 And feels its life in every limb,
 What should it know of death?

I met a little cottage-girl:
 She was eight years old, she said;
 Her hair was thick with many a curl
 That clustered round her head.

She had a rustic woodland-air
 And she was wildly clad;
 Her eyes were fair, and very fair;
 Her beauty made me glad.

"Sisters and brothers, little maid,
 How many may you be?"
 "How many? Seven in all," she said,
 And wondering looked at me.

"And where are they? I pray you tell?
She answered," Seven are we,
And two of us at Conway dwell,
And two are gone to sea.

Two of us in the church-yard lie,
My sister and my brother,
And in the church-yard cottage, I
Dwell near them with my mother."

"You say that two at Conway dwell,
And two are gone to sea,
Yet ye are seven! — I pray you tell,
Sweet maid, how this may be?"

Then did the little maid reply
"Seven boys and girls are we,
Two of us in the churchyard lie,
Beneath the churchyard tree."

"You run about, my little maid,
Your limbs they are alive;
If two are in the churchyard laid,
Then ye are only five."

"Their graves are green, they may
be seen,"
The little maid replied,
"Twelve steps or more from my
mother's door,
And they are side by side.

My stockings there I often knit,
My kerchief there I hem,
And there upon the ground I sit —
I sit and sing to them.

And often after sun-set, sir,
When it is light and fair,
I take my little porringer,
And eat my supper there.

The first that died was little Jane,
In bed she moaning lay,
Till God released her of her pain;
And then she went away.

So in the churchyard she was laid;
And all the summer dry,
Together round her grave we played,
My brother John and I.

And when the ground was white
with snow,
And I could run and slide,
My brother John was forced to go,
And he lies by her side."

"How many are you then," said I,
"If they two are in Heaven?"
"The little maiden did reply,
"O master! we are seven."

"But they are dead, those two are
dead!

Their spirits are in Heaven!"

'Twas throwing words away: for still
The little maid would have her will,
And said, "Nay, we are Seven!"

(William Wordsworth.)

14. THE GRAVES OF A HOUSEHOLD.

They grew in beauty, side by side,
They filled one house with glee —
Their graves are severed far and wide
By mount, and stream, and sea!

The same fond mother bent at night
O'er each fair sleeping brow,
She had each folded flower in sight, —
Where are those dreamers now?

One midst the forests of the west
By a dark stream is laid;
The Indian knows his place of rest,
Far in the cedar's shade.

The sea, the blue lone sea, hath one,
He lies where pearls lie deep;
He was the lov'd of all, yet none
O'er his low bed may weep.

One sleeps where southern vines
are dress'd
Above the noble slain;
He wrapt his colours round his breast,
On a blood red field of Spain.

And one, o'er her the myrtle showers
Its leaves by soft winds fann'd;
She faded 'midst Italian flowers,
The last of that bright band.

And parted thus, *they* rest who
play'd

Beneath the same green tree,
Whose voices mingled as they pray'd
Around one Parent knee!

They that with smiles lit up the hall,
And cheer'd with song the Hearth —
Alas for love, if *thou* wert all,
And nought beyond — oh Earth!

(Mrs. Hemans.)

15. THE HOUR OF PRAYER.

Child, amidst the flowers at play,
While the red light fades away;
Mother with thine earnest eye,
Ever following silently;
Father, by the breeze of eve,
Call'd thy harvest work to leave;
Pray! — ere yet the dark hours be,
Lift the heart and bend the knee.

Traveller, in the stranger's land,
Far from thine own household band;
Mourner, haunted by the tone
Of a voice from this world gone!
Captive, in whose narrow cell
Sunshine hath not leave to dwell,
Sailor, on the darkening sea,
Lift the heart and bend the knee.

Warrior, that from battle won
Breathest now at set of sun;
Woman, o'er the lowly slain
Weeping on his burial plain;
Ye that triumph, ye that sigh,
Kindred by one holy tie;
Heaven's first star alike ye see —
Lift the heart and bend the knee.
(Mrs. Hemans.)

16. THE STAR.

Oft I wonder if yon star
Be a shining world afar;
Or a proud and glorious sun
Blessing all it smiles upon;
Whether peopled with a race
Treading o'er its azure face,
Subject unto change as we,
Heirs of Immortality!

Have they raptures, hopes and fears,
Warm regrets and bitter tears,
Cares, afflictions such as ours,
Friendship's charms — affection's
powers?

Can they joy and sorrow feel
For each other's woe or weal,
Do their weary spirits crave
Refuge in the silent grave!

Spring and summer, do they shed
Beauty, fragrance o'er the mead,
When the sun-beam bursts the flowers
Wreath'd around the shaded bowers?
— 'Tis impossible to tell
What within its orb doth dwell,

Seated far, oh far too high,
For its voices to reply.

Now, as through a glass we see
Darkly and imperfectly,
Infinite must be the dream,
To encompass such a theme;
When the shades of death are cast,
When the throb of life is past,
Then the secrets of the skies,
To our knowledge shall arise.

(Anon.)

17. THE CAPTIVE KNIGHT.

'Twas a trumpet's pealing sound!
And the knight look'd down from
the Paynim's tower,
And a Christian host, in its pride
and power, [wound.
Through the pass beneath him
Cease awhile, clarion! clarion wild
and shrill,
Cease! let them hear the captive's
voice, — be still!

"I knew 'twas a trumpet's note!
And I see my brethren's lances gleam,
And their pennons wave, by the
mountain stream,
And their plumes to the glad
wind float!

Cease awhile! clarion! clarion wild
and shrill,
Cease! let them hear the captive's
voice, — be still!

"I am here, with my heavy chain!
And I look on a torrent sweeping by,
And an eagle, rushing to the sky,
And a host, to its battle plain!
Cease awhile, clarion! clarion wild
and shrill,
Cease! let them hear the captive's
voice, — be still!

"Must I pine in my fetters here?
With the wild wave's foam, and the
free bird's flight,
And the tall spears glancing on my
sight.

And the trumpet in mine ear?
Cease awhile, clarion! clarion wild
and shrill,
Cease! let them hear the captive's
voice, — be still!

"They are gone! they have all
pass'd by! [my part,
They in whose wars I had borne
They that I loved with a brother's
heart,

They have left me here to die!
Sound again, clarion! clarion, pour
thy blast!

Sound! for the captive's dream of
hope is past!"

(Mrs. Hemans.)

18. LOVE OF COUNTRY.

Breathes there the man, with soul
so dead,

Who never to himself hath said,
This is my own, my native land:
Whose heart hath ne'er within him
burn'd,

As home his footsteps he hath turn'd;
From wandering on a foreign strand!

If such there breathe, go mark him
well:

For him no minstrel raptures swell;
High though his titles, proud his name,
Boundless his wealth as wish can
claim;

Despite those titles, power, and pelf,
The wretch, concentr'd all in self,
Living, shall forfeit fair renown,
And doubly dying, shall go down
To the vile dust from whence he
sprung,

Unwept, unhonour'd, and unsung.

O Caledonia! stern and wild,
Meet nurse for a poetic child!
Land of brown heath and shaggy
wood,

Land of the mountain and the flood,
Land of my sires! what mortal hand
Can e'er untie the filial band,
That knits me to thy rugged strand!
Still, as I view each well-known
scene, [been,

Think what is now, and what hath
Seems as to me, of all bereft,
Sole friends thy woods and streams
were left;

And thus I love them better still,
Even in extremity of ill.

By Yarrow's stream still let me stray,
Though none should guide my feeble
way;

Still feel the breeze down Ettrick
break,

Although it chill my wither'd cheek;
Still lay my head by Teviot stone,
Though there, forgotten and alone,
The bard may draw his parting groan.

(Sir Walter Scott.)

19. THE WARRIOR'S DEATH SONG.

"Away, away! your care is vain;
No leech could aid me now;
The chill of death is at my heart,
Its damp upon my brow.

Weep not — I shame to see such tears
Within a warrior's eyes;
Away! how can ye weep for him
Who in the battle dies? —

If I had died with idle head
Upon my lady's knee, —
Had Fate stood by my silken bed,
Then might ye weep for me.

But I lie on my own proud deck
Before the sea and sky;
The wind that sweeps my gallant sails
Will have my latest sigh.

My banner floats among the clouds,
Another droops below;
Well with my heart's best blood is
paid
Such purchase of a foe.

Go ye and seek my halls, there dwells
A fair-hair'd boy of mine;
Give him my sword, while yet the
blood
Darkens that falchion's shine.

Tell him that only other blood
Should wash such stains away;
And if he be his father's child,
There needs no more to say.

Farewell, my bark! farewell my
friends!

Now fling me on the wave;
One cup of wine, and one of blood,
Pour on my bounding grave."

(Miss Landon.)

20. AS SLOW OUR SHIP.

As slow our ship her foamy track
Against the wind was cleaving,
Her trembling pennant still looked
back

To that dear isle 'twas leaving.
So loath we part from all we love,
From all the links that bind us;
So turn our hearts, where'er we rove,
To those we've left behind us!

When, round the bowl, of vanished
years

We talk with joyous seeming, —
With smiles that might as well be
tears,

So faint, so sad their beaming;
While memory brings us back again
Each early tie that twin'd us,
Oh, sweet's the cup that circles then
To those we've left behind us!

And when in other climes we meet
Some isle or vale enchanting,
Where all looks flowery, wild and
sweet,

And nought but love is wanting;
We think how great had been our
bliss

If Heav'n had but assign'd us
To live and die in scenes like this,
With some we've left behind us!

As trav'lers oft look back, at eve,
When eastward darkly going,
To gaze upon that light they leave
Still faint behind them glowing, —
So, when the close of pleasure's day
To gloom hath near consign'd us,
We turn to catch one fading ray
Of joy that's left behind us.

(Thomas Moore.)

21. THE OLD FAMILIAR FACES.

I have had playmates, I have had
companions,
In my days of childhood, in my joy-
ful schooldays,
All, all are gone, the old familiar faces.

I have been laughing, I have been
carousing,

Drinking late, sitting late, with my
bosom-cronies,

All, all are gone, the old familiar faces.

I loved a love once, fairest among
women!

Closed are her doors on me, I must
not see her —

All, all are gone, the old familiar faces

I have a friend, a kinder friend has
no man; [abruptly;
Like an ingrate, I left my friend
Left him, to muse on the old fami-
liar faces.

Ghost-like I paced round the haunts
of my childhood;

Earth seemed a desert I was bound
to traverse,

Seeking to find the old familiar faces.

Friend of my bosom, thou more
than a brother,

Why wert not thou born in my father's
dwelling? [faces.

So might we talk of the old familiar

How some they have died, and some
they have left me,

And some are taken from me; all
are departed;

All, all are gone, the old familiar faces.
(Charles Lamb.)

22. THE SEVEN SISTERS.

Seven daughters had Lord Archibald,
All children of one mother;

I could not say in one short day

What love they bore each other.

A garland of seven lilies wrought!

Seven sisters that together dwell;

But he, bold knight as ever fought,

Their father, took of them no thought,

He loved the wars so well.

Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully,

The solitude of Binnorie!

Fresh blows the wind, a western wind,
And from the shores of Erin,

Across the wave, a rover brave

To Binnorie is steering;

Right onward to the Scottish strand

The gallant ship is borne;

The warriors leap upon the land,

And hark! the leader of the band

Has blown his buglehorn.

Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully,

The solitude of Binnorie!

Beside a grotto of their own
 With boughs above them closing,
 The seven are laid, and in the shade
 They lie like fawns reposing,
 But now upstarting with affright
 At noise of man and steed,
 Away they fly to left, to right —
 Of your fair household, Father Knight,
 Methinks you take small heed!
 Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully
 The solitude of Binnorie!

Away the seven fair Campbells fly,
 And over hill and hollow
 With menace proud, and insult loud,
 The youthful rovers follow,
 Cried they, "Your father loves to
 roam:

Enough for him to find [home;
 The empty house when he comes
 For us your yellow ringlets comb,
 For us be fair and kind!"

Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully,
 The solitude of Binnorie!

Some close behind, some side by side,
 Like clouds in stormy weather,
 They run, and cry, "Nay let us die,
 And let us die together."
 A lake was near; the shore was steep;
 There never foot had been;
 They ran, and with a desperate leap
 Together plunged into the deep,
 Nor ever more were seen.

Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully,
 The solitude of Binnorie!

The stream that flows out of the lake,
 As through the glen it rambles,
 Repeats a moan o'er moss and stone,
 For those seven lovely Campbells,
 Seven little islands, green and bare,
 Have risen from out the deep:
 The fishers say, those sisters fair
 By fairies are all buried there,
 And there together sleep.

Sing mournfully, oh! mournfully,
 The solitude of Binnorie!

(W. Wordsworth.)

23. THE PALMER.

O open the door, some pity to show,
 Keen blows the northern wind;
 The glen is white with the drifted snow,
 And the path is hard to find.

No Outlaw seeks your castle gate,
 From chasing the King's deer,
 Though even an Outlaw's wretched
 state
 Might claim compassion here.

A weary palmer, worn and weak,
 I wander for my sin!
 O open for our Lady's sake;
 A pilgrim's blessing win!

I'll give you pardons from the pope,
 And reliques from o'er the sea, —
 Or if for these you will not ope,
 Yet open for charity.

The hare is crouching in her form,
 The hart beside the hind;
 An aged man, amid the storm,
 No shelter can I find.

You hear the Ettrick's sullen roar,
 Dark, deep and strong is he,
 And I must ford the Ettrick o'er,
 Unless you pity me.

The iron gate is bolted hard,
 At which I knock in vain;
 The owner's heart is closer barr'd,
 Who hears me thus complain.

Farewell! Farewell! and Mary grant,
 When old and frail you be,
 You never may the shelter want
 That's now denied to me.

The Ranger on his couch lay warm,
 And heard him plead in vain;
 But oft amid December's storm,
 He'll hear that voice again:

For lo! when through the vapours
 dank,
 Morn shone on Ettrick fair,
 A corpse amid the alders rank,
 The palmer welter'd there.

(Sir Walter Scott.)

24. THE UNIVERSAL PRAYER.

Father of all! in every age,
 In every clime adored,
 By saint, by savage, and by sage,
 Jehovah, Jove, or Lord!

Thou great first cause, least understood,

Who all my sense confined

To know but this, that Thou art good,
And that myself am blind;

Yet gave me, in this dark estate,
To see the good from ill;
And binding nature fast in fate,
Left free the human will.

What conscience dictates to be done,
Or warns me not to do,
This, teach me more than hell to shun,
That, more than heaven pursue.

What blessings thy free bounty gives,
Let me not cast away;
For God is paid when man receives,
To enjoy is to obey.

Yet not to earth's contracted span
Thy goodness let me bound,
Or think thee Lord alone of man,
When thousand worlds are round:

Let not this weak, unknowing hand
Presume they bolts to throw,
And deal damnation round the land
On each I judge thy foe.

If I am right, thy grace impart,
Still in the right to stay;
If I am wrong, oh teach my heart
To find that better way!

Save me alike from foolish pride,
Or impious discontent,
At aught thy wisdom has denied,
Or aught thy goodness lent.

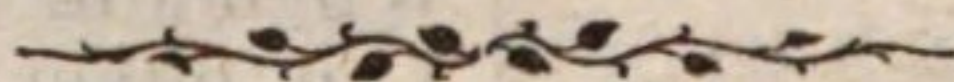
Teach me to feel another's woe,
To bide the fault I see;
That mercy I to others show,
That mercy show to me.

Mean though I am, not wholly so,
Since quicken'd by thy breath;
Oh lead me wheresoe'er I go,
Through this day's life or death!

This day, be bread and peace my lot:
All else beneath the sun,
Thou know'st if best bestow'd or not,
And let Thy will be done.

To thee, whose temple is all space,
Whose altar, earth, sea, skies!
One chorus let all Being raise!
All Nature's incense rise!

(Alexander Pope.)



Wörterverzeichnis und Bemerkungen.

Abkürzungen.

ags. oder angf. = angel-
sächsisch,
ahd. = althochdeutsch,
et. = etymologisch,
fam. = familiär,

frk. = fränkisch,
frz. = französisch,
it. = italienisch,
mhd. = mittelhochdeutsch,
lat. = lateinisch,

griech. = griechisch,
schwz. = schweizerisch.
prov. = provinziell,
zus. ges. = zusammengesetzt,
verw. = verwandt.

irr. bedeutet irregular, unregelmäßig.

ERSTER ABSCHNITT.

Lesestücke für Anfänger.

1) Menschliche Wesen. — Die Sinne.

1. Seite Zeile 2. I walk,
ich gehe, wandle.
upright, aufrecht.
I do, (irr.) ich thue, (I did,
ich that, I have done, ich
habe gethan).
3. the same, dasselbe.
other, ander.
face, Gesicht.
towards, (zuwärtß) gerich-
tet gegen.
4. leg, Bein, Fuß.
also, auch.
6. I see, (irr.) ich sehe (I
saw, ich sah, I have seen,
ich habe gesehen).
I hear, ich höre (I heard,
I have heard).
I feel, ich fühle (I felt,
I have felt).
to taste, schmecken.
to smell, riechen.
7. to call, nennen, rufen.
8. the eye, das Auge.
the ear, das Ohr.

9. the tongue, die Zunge.
the nose, die Nase.
the pain, der Schmerz.
10. any, irgend ein.
the body, der Körper.
12. to hurt, verletzen, wehe
thun.
joy, Freude.
13. sorrow, Kummer.
fear, Furcht.
the dog, der Hund.
14. pleased, zufrieden.
15. uneasy, unruhig.
to threaten, drohen.
16. a whip, eine Peitsche.
17. I can, ich kann (I could,
ich konnte).
I speak, (irr.) ich spreche
(spoke, spoken).
to express, ausdrücken
18. to utter, (äußern) von
sich geben.
but, aber.
they cannot, (zus. gez. aus
can not) sie können nicht.

19. by, durch.
to bark, bellen.
to howl, heulen.
a look, ein Blick.
20. to hang, (irr.) hängen,
hängen lassen (I hung,
hung).
down, hinunter.
tail, Schwanz.
between, zwischen.
22. I think, (irr.) ich denke.
(I thought, thought.)
23. the gift, die Gabe.
almighty, allmächtig.
great, groß.
goodness, Güte.
24. to bestow on, verleihen.
I give, (irr.) ich gebe (I
gave, given).
25. animals, Geschöpfe.
26. without, ohne.
brute, unvernünftiges Thier.
27. I understand, (irr.) ich
 verstehe (I understod, un-
derstod).

- why, warum.
 the window, das Fenster.
 the door, die Thüre.
 28. the chimney, das Kamin.
 a stove, ein Ofen.
 I make, (irr.) ich mache
 (I made, made).
 wood, Holz (Wald).
 2. 1. a pitcher, ein Wasserkrug.
 a handle, (eine Handhabe)
 ein Henkel.
 the blade, die Klinge.
 a knife, ein Messer.
 2. edge, Rand.
 the shoe, der Schuh.
 leather, Leder.
 tin, Zinn.
 3. cloth, Tuch.
 4. neither — nor, weder
 — noch.
 a cat, eine Kage.
 I know, (irr.) ich weiß, ich
 kenne, I knew, known).
 this, dieser, these, (Plur.)
 diese.
5. always, immer.
 I am permitted, man er-
 laubt mir.
 6. I please, ich gefalle.
 I do what I please, ich
 thue was mir gefällt.
 I ought, ich soll, ich sollte, I
 ought to do, ich sollte thun,
 I ought to be, ich sollte seyn.
 parents, Eltern.
 the teacher, der Lehrer.
 7. I desire, ich wünsche.
 obedient, gehorsam.
 diligent, fleißig.
 attentive, aufmerksam.
 8. I observe, ich bemerke.
 like, gleich, ähnlich.
 the carnation, (von Fleisch-
 farbe) die Gartennelke.
 both, beide.
 9. the flower, die Blume.
 the smell, der Geruch.
 fine, schön.
 10. a root, eine Wurzel
 (vgl. ausreuten).
- the leave, (et. Laub) das
 Blatt.
 the stem, (et. Stamm) der
 Stengel.
 I grow, (irr.) wachsen, v. frz.
 croître (I grew, grown).
 from, von, aus.
 a bud, eine Knospe, vom
 frz. bouton.
 I come (irr.), ich komme
 (I came, come).
 11. into, in (mit dem Accu-
 sativ).
 for a short time, auf eine
 kurze Zeit.
 then, dann.
 to fade, verwelken.
 12. unlike, ungleich.
 to differ, verschieden seyn.
 13. for, (als Conjunction)
 denn, (als Präposition) für.
 the kind, die Art.
 14. the thorn, der Dorn
 15. to compare, vergleichen.
 to distinguish, unterscheiden.

2) Eintheilung der Zeit. — Die Jahreszeiten.

19. how many, wie viele
 (how much, wie viel).
 the year, das Jahr.
 the month, der Monat.
 21. taught, von I teach
 (irr.), ich lehre (I taught,
 taught), vom lat. doceo.
 the time, (franz. temps)
 die Zeit.
 the day, der Tag.
 20. a week, eine Woche.
 21. half a year, ein halbes
 Jahr.
 22. a quarter of a year,
 ein Vierteljahr.
 26. thirty, dreißig.
 28. alone, allein, bloß.
 29. all the rest, alle Ueb-
 rigen.
 30. there are, (da sind) es
 giebt (ebenso there is, das
 frz. il y a).
 32. past, vergangen, vor-
 über.
 to be at an end, zu Ende
 seyn.
 33. a new one, ein neues
 (das one steht statt der
 Wiederholung von year).
- I begin, (irr.) ich beginne
 (I began, begun).
 the first, (et. Fürst) der
 erste.
 34. that, jener (Plur.
 those, jene).
 the neighbour, der Nachbar.
 the friend, der Freund.
 relations, Verwandte.
 to wish, wünschen.
 35. each other, einander
 (each, jeder).
 health, Gesundheit (et. Heil).
 happiness, Glück.
 36. a century, ein Jahr-
 hundert.
 to count, zählen.
 the birth, die Geburt.
 Lord, Herr.
 38. Saviour, (frz. Sauveur
 Retter) Heiland.
 now, nun, jetzt.
 more than, mehr als.
 39. since, seit, seitdem.
 blessed, gesegnet, gepriesen,
 our blessed Lord, unser
 Heiland.
 upon, auf.
 40. the last, der letzte.
41. the weather, das
 Wetter.
 often, oft.
 very cold, sehr kalt.
 the snow, der Schnee.
 I fall, (irr.) ich falle (I fell,
 fallen).
 water, Wasser.
 frozen von to freeze, (irr.)
 gefrieren (it freezes, it
 froze, frozen).
 42. into ice, zu Eis.
 3. 1. after, nach.
 not quite, (Adverb) nicht
 ganz.
 2. to melt, schmelzen.
 it snows, es schneit.
 little, (Adverb) wenig (als
 Adject.) klein.
 seldom, selten.
 the tree, der Baum.
 3. the blossom, die Blüthe.
 the swallow, die Schwalbe.
 they make their appear-
 ance, sie erscheinen, kom-
 men zum Vorschein.
 4. some flowers, einige
 Blumen.
 especially, besonders.

the snowdrop, das Schneeglöcklein.
the violet, das Veilchen.
the primrose, die Primel, Schlüsselblume.
5. the bloom, das Blühen, die Blüthe.
pleasant, angenehm, lieblich.
spring, (et. von entspringen) der Frühling.
6. the sun, die Sonne.
hot, heiß.
7. to cut down, abschneiden (irr. I cut, ich schneide, I cut, ich schnitt, cut, geschnitten).
to make into hay, zu Heu machen.
to dry, trocknen.
8. the heat, die Hitze.
to ripen, zur Reife bringen.
useful, nützlich.
9. such as, (solche wie) zum Beispiel.
the strawberry, (wörtl. Strohbeere) die Erdbeere.
the currant, (die Korinthe) die Johannisbeere.
gooseberry, (wörtl. Gansbeere) Stachelbeere.

peach, Pfirsich.
10. plum, Pflaume.
cherry, Kirsche.
apple, Apfel.
pear, Birne.
11. orchard, (entstanden aus aqf. ortgeard) Obstgarten.
12. the produce, die Erzeugnisse.
13. to gather, sammeln (verw. mit dem deutschen gatten, vereinigen).
farmer, (franz. fermier) Pächter, Landmann.
14. the harvest, (et. Herbst) die Ernte.
sickle, Sichel.
scythe, Sense.
I bind, (irr.) ich binde (I bound, bound).
up, auf, to bind up, zusammen binden.
large, groß (dem Umfange nach).
15. sheaf, Garbe.
to carry, tragen (fortschaffen).
the barn, die Scheune.
where, wo.
16. to thresh, dreschen.

17. I put, (irr.) ich lege (I put, put). to put into, hineinlegen, hineinthun.
I sell, (irr.) ich verkaufe (I sold, sold), vergl. das deutsche Sold.
18. the miller, der Müller.
ground, gemahlen (von I grind, (irr.) ich mahle (I ground, ground)).
flour, Mehl (feineres Mehl, zum Unterschied von meal, grobes Mehl).
to clear, (et. klar machen) reinigen, säubern.
19. to plough, pflügen.
seed, Samen.
20. the owner, der Eigenthümer, Besitzer, von own, eigen.
such as, solche, welche.
21. to want, brauchen, nöthig haben, he does not want, er braucht nicht.
I take, (irr.) ich nehme (I took, taken).
the market, der Markt.
23. thus, auf diese Art, so (aus this entstanden).

3) Unsere Heimath.

26. I live, ich lebe, wohne.
different, verschieden.
floor, (vergl. Flur) Fußboden, Stockwerk.
27. level (frz. niveau) eben.
again, wieder, wiederum.
above, oberhalb, über.
29. the ground floor, Stock zu ebener Erde, Parterre.
I say, (I said, said) ich sage.
the house is said to have, man sagt, daß das Haus habe.
as many — as, eben so viele — als.
story, Stockwerk (verw. mit stair, Treppe).
30. beneath, (von neath, nieder) unterhalb, unter.
the cellar, der Keller.
31. each, jeder.
to consist, bestehen.
room, (von Raum) Zimmer.
high, hoch, higher, highest.

32. generally, gewöhnlich.
the garrets, Dachstube, die Bühne (verw. mit Warte).
the attics, Dachkammer (urspr. ein flaches Dach im griechischen [attischen] Style).
to cook, kochen.
33. to boil, (frz. bouillir) kochen.
to roast, (frz. rôtir, vergl. rösten) braten.
meat, das zur Speise bestimmte Fleisch (von frz. mets, Speise, Gericht), es unterscheidet sich wie das frz. viande von flesh, frz. la chaire, das Fleisch der Thiere im Allgemeinen.
food, (Futter) Speise.
34. kitchen, Küche.
I sleep, (irr.) ich schlafe (I slept, slept).
35. bed-room, Schlafzimmer, Schlafzimmer.

I sit, (irr.) ich sitze (I sat, sat).
to sit in a room, sich in einem Zimmer aufhalten.
parlour, Wohnstube (wörtl. vom frz. parler, Sprechzimmer).
36. poor, (frz. pauvre) arm.
thankful, dankbar.
even, (et. eben) sogar, selbst.
37. to serve for, dienen zu.
sitting-room, Wohnzimmer.
38. those who, diejenigen welche.
enough, genug.
39. to keep, (irr.) halten (I kept, kept).
coals, Steinkohlen.
40. every, jeder.
home, Heimath, Haus.
41. to belong, gehören.
the landlord, der Hausbesitzer (auch Wirth, Gutsbesitzer).

- sometimes, manchmal.
 42. a lodging, (frz. logis)
 Wohnung.
 to pay, bezahlen.
 money, Geld.
 4. 1. permission, Erlaubniß.

2. rent, Hauszins.
 several, mehrere.
 6. duty, Pflicht.
 7. to honour, ehren.
 to obey, gehorchen.
 to love, lieben.

8. kind, gütig.
 9. to order, befehlen.
 to help, helfen.
 10. claim, Anspruch.
 12. power, Kraft, Macht.

4) Pflanzen.

15. pea, Erbse.
 16. bean, Bohne.
 cucumber, Gurke.
 radish, Rettig.
 parsley, Petersilie.
 celery, Sellerie.
 17. weeds, Unkraut.
 18. small, klein.
 19. upon, auf.
 raspberry, Himbeere.
 20. walnut, Walnuß.
 21. fit, tauglich.
 I eat, (irr.) ich esse (I ate,
 eaten).
 wholesome, gesund.
 24. wheat, Weizen.
 barley, Gerste.
 oats, Hafer.
 rye, Roggen.
 vetch, die Wicke.
 25. turnip, Rübe (weiße).
 potatoe, Kartoffel.
 26. therefore, deswegen.
 crops, Früchte (crop verw.
 mit rupfen, das Abgerupfte).

27. to supply, versehen.
 to delight, ergötzen.
 28. white, weiß.
 pink, blaßroth.
 to refresh, erfrischen.
 29. the shade, der Schatten.
 30. I stand, (irr.) ich stehe
 (I stood, stood).
 firm, fest.
 because, weil.
 deep, tief.
 32. trunk, Stamm.
 I rise, (irr.) ich erhebe mich,
 steige auf (I rose, risen).
 33. to clothe, bekleiden.
 bark, Rinde (et. das Berg-
 ende).
 coat, Rock, Kleid.
 branch, Ast.
 to spread forth, sich aus-
 breiten.
 34. twig, Zweig.
 35. but, nur,
 thick, dick.
 36. slender, dünn.

38. buds are to be seen,
 Knospen sind zu sehen.
 to open, sich öffnen.
 by degrees, (Grad) stufen-
 weise, allmählig.
 40. to adorn, schmücken.
 to screen from, schützen vor
 (et. screen, ein Schrein,
 Schrank).
 41. to burn, brennen.
 I lose, (irr.) ich verliere
 (I lost, lost).
 before, ehe, bevor.
 42. to wither, (et. verwit-
 tern) verwelken.
 to dry up, austrocknen, aus-
 trocknen.
 5. 1. to injure, beschädigen.
 I become, (irr.) ich werde
 (frz. devenir) (I became,
 become).
 sickly, fränzlich, von sick
 et. fiedh, frank.
 2. to die, sterben.

5) Thiere.

5. shape, Gestalt (et. to
 shape, schaffen, gestalten).
 6. a sparrow, ein Sperling.
 a frog, ein Frosch.
 7. a spider, eine Spinne.
 a snail, eine Schnecke.
 8. quadruped, vierfüßig.
 9. to mean, (et. meinen)
 bedeuten.
 foot, Fuß, feet, Füße.
 10. only, bloß, nur.
 wing, (Schwinge) Flügel.
 11. feather, Feder.
 to lay, legen (I laid, laid),
 the egg, das Ei.
 12. bird, Vogel (et. brüten).
 13. hair, Haar.
 but, nach einer Negation,
 sondern.
 to cover, bedecken.

15. scale, Schuppe (et.
 scale, Scala, Leiter, leiter-
 artig aufgelegt).
 I fly, (irr.) fliegen (I flew,
 flown).
 16. to move, sich bewegen.
 17. purpose, Zweck.
 fin, Finne, Flossfeder.
 20. its hind legs, seine hin-
 teren Beine.
 21. more useful, nützlicher.
 to move about, sich umher-
 bewegen.
 22. to leap, (et. laufen)
 hüpfen.
 both — and, sowohl —
 als auch.
 26. red, roth.
 whitish, weißlicht.
 28. to creep, kriechen.

30. almost, beinahe.
 peculiar, besonders, eigen-
 thümlich.
 voice, (frz. voix), Stimme.
 the lark, die Lerche.
 31. the nightingale, die
 Nachtigal.
 I sing, (irr.) ich singe (I
 sang, sung).
 the magpie, die Elster.
 to chatter, schwätzen.
 the cock, der Hahn.
 to crow, krähen.
 the peacock, der Pfau.
 32. to scream, freischen,
 schreien.
 the goose, die Gans.
 to hiss, zischen.
 the owl, die Eule.
 to hoot, freischen, heulen.

- to bark, bellen.
 33. to snarl, fnurren, murren.
 the ass, der Esel.
 to bray, schreien.
 the goat, (et. Gais) die Ziege.
 the sheep, das Schaf.
 to bleat, blöken.
 34. the pig, das Schwein.
 to squeak, quieken.
 the horse, das Pferd.
 to neigh, wiehern.
 the cow, die Kuh.
 to low, (spr. lau) brüllen, blöken.
 to roar, brüllen.
 35. to mew, miauen, to croak, quacken.
 the cricket, die Grille, das Heimgchen.
 to chirp, zirpen.
 36. to seem, scheinen.
 37. to provide, versehen.
 38. bristles, Borsten.
 39. shell, Schaale, Muschel.
 40. tame, zahm.
 41. I seek, ich suche (I sought, sought).
 to kill, tödten.
 42. beasts of prey, Raubthiere.
 to devour, (frz. dévorer) verschlingen.
 6. 1. the herb, das Kraut.
 2. grain, Korn, Kernen.
 to poison, vergiften.
 4. fowl, (zus. gez. aus Vogel) Huhn.
 fowls, überhaupt Geflügel.
 barley, Gerste.
 5. kind, Art.
 the bee, die Biene.
 to live on, leben von.
 the juice, der Saft.
 caterpillar, Raupe.
 7. the ape, der Affe.
 the snake, (et. Schnecke) die Schlange.
 11. feelers, Fühlhörner.
 12. I draw, (irr.) ich ziehe (I drew, drawn).
 I thrust, ich stoße (I thrust, thrust).
 13. tired, müde.
 14. the hare, der Hasse.
 for instance, zum Beispiel.
 16. to hunt, (et. hunzen) jagen.
 17. bat, Fledermaus.
 dormouse, das Murrelthier, die Haselmaus (et. von dormir, schlafen, die schlafende Maus).
 18. whole, ganz.
 to wake, wachen.
 till, bis.
 20. I defend myself, ich vertheidige mich.
 against, gegen.
 21. muddy, fothig, trübe, von mud, Roth (et. Moder).
 22. to pursue, (frz. poursuivre) verfolgen.
 the flounder, die Butte, der Fländer, der Plattfisch.
 I drive, (irr.) ich treibe (I drove, driven).
 the weasel, das Wiesel.
 the pole-cat, der Iltis.
 25. the mole, der Maulwurf.

6) Vortheile, die wir von den Thieren erhalten.

29. cow, Kuh.
 30. clothes, (spr. flohs) Kleider.
 31. mutton, Hammelfleisch.
 32. beef, Ochsenfleisch, Rindfleisch.
 roastbeef, Rindsbraten.
 33. the hide, (et. die Haut) das Fell.
 the skin, die Haut (vergl. schinden, die Haut abziehen).
 34. to tan, gerben.
 shoe, (spr. schuh) Schuh.
 boot, Stiefel.
 35. I draw, (irr.) ich ziehe (I drew, drawn).
 the plough, der Pflug.
 36. I give, (irr.) ich gebe (I gave, given).
 cheese, Käse.
 37. I ride, (irr.) ich reite, fahre (I rode, rode).
 carriage, Wagen.
 38. the ass, der Esel.
 strong, stark.
 39. a heavy load, eine schwere Ladung, Last.
 swift-footed, (von swift, schnell) schnellfüßig, behend.
 40. the rein-deer, (man schreibt auch rane-deer) das Rennthier (oder besser Rebnthier).
 the sledge, der Schlitten.
 7. 2. the song, der Gesang.
 3. to fill, füllen.
 to destroy, (frz. détruire) zerstören.
 4. vermin, Ungeziefer, Gewürm.
 5. lizard, Eidechse.
 6. I keep, (irr.) ich halte, behalte (I kept, kept).
 poultry-yard, Geflügelhof, Hühnerhof, von poultry, Geflügel, frz. poule, das Huhn und yard, (et. Garten) Hof.
 6. water-fowl, Wasservogel.
 7. duck, die Ente (et. von to duck, tauchen).
 pond, (wahrsch. wie griech. πόντος, Meer) Teich.
 8. bull finch, der Blutfink.
 9. cage, Käfig.
 the eagle, (frz. aigle) der Adler.
 vulture, Geier.
 hawk, Habicht.
 10. to come within the reach of, in den Bereich kommen von.
 11. the country, (frz. la contrée) das Land.
 12. all the year round, das ganze Jahr (herum) hindurch.
 to live upon, leben von.
 13. to render a service, einen Dienst leisten.
 weeds, Unkraut.
 to consume, verzehren.
 14. the carcass, (vom it. carcasso, Gerippe) der todte Körper eines Thieres, das Aas.
 dead, todt.
 15. unwholesome, ungesund.
 the bee, die Biene.
 16. to store, aufhäufen

(von store, Vorrathskammer, Fruchtboden, vermdt. mit story, Stockwerk).
 bee-hive, Bienenkorb, Bienenstock (hive aus dem ags. hyfe).
 17. shell-fish, Schaalthier. eatable, eßbar.
 the oyster, die Auster.
 18. the lobster, der Hummer (großer Seefrebs).
 the crab, die Krabbe, der kleine Seefrebs, der Strandrebs.
 mother-of-pearl, Perlenmutter.
 19. the handle of a pen-knife, das Heft eines Federmessers.
 sometimes, manchmal.

21. sponge, (frz. éponge) Schwamm.
 22. rock, (frz. roc, rocher) Fels.
 the hole, (et. hohl) das Loch.
 24. the leech, der Blutegel. a sort, eine Art.
 25. sick, (et. siech) krank. to suck, saugen.
 26. the hog, das Schwein. deer, Rothwild, Hirsch, Reh.
 29. harness, (et. Harnisch) Pferdgeschirr.
 trunk, Truhe, Kiste, Koffer (et. v. frz. tronc, Stamm).
 31. the seal, (et. norddeutsch. Seehund) der Seehund.
 32. the oil, das Del. to burn, brennen.
 33. the whale, der Wallfisch.

34. thickly, Adverb von thick, dick.
 35. soft, sanft, weich. downy, flaumig (von down, die Dune, der Flaum).
 fur, Pelz, vom frz. fourrure, Pelzwerk.
 short, (frz. court) kurz.
 36. to scrape off, (et. schrapen) abschaben.
 the hat, der Hut.
 38. the hare, der Hase. the rabbit, das Kaninchen.
 the turkey, das Truthuhn (et. türkisches Huhn).
 39. the partridge, (franz. perdrix) Rebhuhn.
 the pheasant, der Fasan.

7) Erde — Steine — Metalle.

41. marl, Mergel.
 clay, Lehm, Thonerde.
 chalk, (et. Kalk) Kreide.
 8. 1. bricklayer, Maurer (von brick, frz. brique, Backstein und to lay, legen).
 to mix, vermischen.
 lime, (et. Lehm) Kalk.
 2. mortar, Mörtel.
 to sprinkle, (et. sprengeln, besprengen) streuen.
 wet, (prov. wätschnaß) naß.
 the writing, das Schreiben, die Schrift.
 to prevent, (frz. prévenir, zuvorkommen) verhindern.
 3. to blot, auslöschen, beflecken, Tintenflecke machen.
 to strew, streuen.
 4. the potter, der Töpfer (vom frz. pot, Topf).
 to build, (et. bilden) bauen.
 oven, Backofen (stove, Stubenofen).
 the wall, (et. Wall) die Mauer, die Wand.
 5. cottage, (frz.) Hütte.
 6. to beat, (irr.) schlagen (I beat, [spr. biht] ich schlage, I beat, [spr. bet] ich schlug, beaten [spr. bihten] geschlagen.)
 7. wrought, von to work, arbeiten, verarbeiten (I

work, I wrought, wrought).
 plate, (Platte) Teller.
 dish, Schüssel, Gericht
 Speise (et. Tisch, das Aufgetische).
 jug, der Krug.
 cup, (frz. coupe) Tasse, Obertasse.
 saucers, Untertasse (et. Sancegefäß).
 8. earthen ware, irdene Waare.
 11. rough, roh, rauh, grob. drawing, Zeichnen, Zeichnung.
 13. shape, Gestalt.
 to grind corn, Korn mahlen.
 to grind knives, Messer schleifen.
 15. scissors, (auch scissars) Scheere.
 the hatchet, das Beil.
 grindstone, Schleifstein.
 16. free-stone, (wörtl. freier Stein) ein feiner Sandstein zum Bauen.
 chiefly, hauptsächlich.
 17. church, Kirche. castle, Schloß.
 bridge, Brücke.
 public hall, öffentliche Halle, öffentl. Gebäude.
 marble, Marmor.

18. chimney-piece, (wörtl. Kaminstück), Kamingesims.
 19. the bust, die Büste.
 20. flint, (Flintenstein) Kiesel, Feuerstein.
 pavement, Pflaster.
 21. street, Straße in der Stadt.
 road, Straße, Landstraße.
 24. chalk-flint, Kiesel-erde.
 25. slate, Schiefer (et. von to slit, schligen, was sich leicht schligen läßt).
 27. the roof, das Dach.
 28. I write, (irr.) ich schreibe (I wrote, written).
 29. costly, kostbar. beautiful, schön.
 30. precious stone, Edelstein.
 32. the glazier, der Glaser.
 33. emerald, Smaragd. ruby, Rubin.
 34. yellow, gelb. violet, veilschenblau.
 35. the turquoise, (spr. türkiß) der ächte persische Türkiß.
 light blue, hellblau.
 36. rock-salt, Steinsalz. brimstone, (entstanden aus Brennstein) der Schwefel.

8) Städte — Dörfer — Land.

40. City, große Stadt, Stadt mit Bischoffssitz.
town, (et. Zaun, umzäunter Ort) Stadt im Allgemeinen.
9. 4. shop, (et. Schuppen) Laden (Verkaufslocal).
6. king, König, kingdom, Königreich.
metropolis, (Mutterstadt) Hauptstadt (besonders eines Reiches, das mehrere Hauptstädte hat).
10. building, Gebäude.
11. to live, leben, wohnen.
12. between, (von two, zwei) zwischen.
meadow, (et. Matte) Wiese.
14. to rear cattle, Viehzucht treiben.
15. to dwell, (et. weilen, verweilen) wohnen.
16. outside, (Außenseite) außerhalb.
17. to sow, (sowed, sown) säen.
grain, Korn.
18. arable land, Ackerland.
clover, Klee (et. Klebefraut).
19. it is suffered to grow, man läßt es wachsen.
to cut, (cut, cut) schneiden.
21. to eat off, abfressen.
a pasture, eine Weide.
24. to enclose, einschließen.
a fence, (von defence, Verteidigung) ein Zaun.
27. brambles, Buschwerk, Gestrüppe.
a heath, eine Heide.
28. a tract of land, ein Strich Landes.
29. soft, (et. sauft) weich.
to endeavour, (et. frz. devoir, Pflicht) sich etwas zur Pflicht machen, sich bemühen.
30. bog, Sumpf, Moor.
31. a spot, ein Ort.
32. a swamp, (et. schwemmen, ein überschwemmtes Land) ein Morast.
a pool, (et. Pfuhl) Pfütze.
33. to frequent, besuchen.
34. crane, Kranich.
heron, Reiher.
snipe, Schnepfe.
plover, (vom lat. pluvia, Regen) der Regenpfeifer.
moor-hen, Wasserhuhn.
thence, daher.
36. rush, (frz. roseau, lat. ruscum) Binse.
37. basket-maker, Korbmacher.
the lake, (lat. lacus) der See.
38. the swan, der Schwan.
39. to subsist on, leben von.
to abound, (frz. abonder) im Ueberflusse vorhanden seyn.
41. to gush, (et. gießen) hervorspringen.
42. spring, Quelle.
43. to give rise, Ursprung geben.
rivulet, (diminut. von river, Fluß) ein Flüschen, Bach.

9) Vom Reisen und von Nationen.

10. 1. to travel, reisen (von travail, Mühe, Arbeit, mit der es vor Alters verbunden war).
2. broad, breit.
3. high-road, Hochstraße, Landstraße.
narrow, enge.
to branch from, (wie ein Zweig) ausgehen von etwas.
to lead, (led, led) führen (et. leiten).
4. by-road, Nebenstraße.
cross-road, Kreuzstraße, Feldweg.
5. mode, Art.
to get, (got, got) gelangen.
6. on horseback, zu Pferd (wörtl. auf des Pferdes Rücken).
by means of, vermittelst.
7. carriage, (et. Karren) Wagen.
to sail in a ship, auf einem Schiffe fahren (segeln).
business, (spr. bissineß) Geschäft (vom frz. besogne, besoin).
9. coach, Kutsche.
to drive, (drove, driven) treiben, einen Wagen führen.
10. stage-coach, (wörtl. Stationskutsche) Postkutsche.
to set off, abfahren.
daily, täglich.
11. to carry, tragen.
baggage, Gepäck.
12. parcel, Paket, Päckchen.
14. mail-coaches, königl. Postwagen.
to deliver, abgeben.
15. bag, Sack (abgefürzt von baggage, et. Pack).
16. the guard, der Wächter, Conducteur.
to take care of, etwas hüten, Sorge tragen für.
17. a journey, eine Landreise (eigentl. Tagreise, vom frz. journée).
19. steam-vessel, Dampfschiff.
20. seldom, selten.
22. world, Welt.
whoever, (wer immer,) wer je.
to perform, ausführen.
23. at least, wenigstens.
24. a great deal, sehr viel.
25. to become acquainted, bekannt werden.
27. native country, Heimatland, Vaterland.
35. but, nur.
vast, (ungeheuer) groß.
whole, ganz.
37. that is to say, das heißt.
38. moon, Mond.
star, Stern.
bright, (et. prächtig) glänzend.
to glisten, funkeln.
39. to belong, gehören.
40. a thousand times, tausendmal.

10) Handel — Gewerbe.

11. 1. trade, Handel, (vom frz. traire, handeln, vgl. auch Trödel).
 2. wherein, (worin) in welcher.
 to carry on trade, Handel treiben.
 4. the bank of a river, das Ufer eines Flusses.
 5. convenient, bequem.
 6. sale, Verkauf (von to sell, verkaufen).
 7. commodities, Lebensbedürfnisse.
 8. to keep, (kept, kept) aufbewahren.
 9. to sell, (sold, sold) verkaufen.
 10. measure, (frz. mesure) Maaß.
 weight, Gewicht.
 number, Zahl.
 12. linen, Leinwand.
 cloth, Tuch.
 cotton, Baumwolle.
 silk, Seide.
 13. yard, (et. Gerte) Elle.
 14. inch, Zoll (als Maaß).

18. liquid, Flüssigkeit.
 ale, engl. goldgelbes Bier.
 beer, geringeres Bier.
 19. gallon, ein Maaß von vier Quart.
 a quart, ein Maaß von zwei Pinten.
 a pint, eine Pinte, Schoppen.
 solids, feste Körper.
 20. cheese, Käse.
 scales, Waagschaale.
 21. pound, Pfund.
 ounce, Unze (zwei Loth).
 23. chaldron, ein Kohlenmaß von 36 Scheffeln oder 2000 Pfund.
 ton, Tonne, Gewicht von 20 Centnern.
 25. fruit, Früchte, Obst.
 27. quarter, Viertelscentner.
 bushel, Scheffel.
 peck, der vierte Theil eines bushel, engl. Mäße.
 29. he earns his living, er verdient seinen Lebensunterhalt.
 30. painter, Maler.
 sculptor, Bildhauer.

- engraver, Graveur, Kupferstecher.
 31. cabinet maker, Tischler, Schreiner.
 turner, Dreher.
 32. mechanic, artisan, Handwerker.
 34. a manufacturer, ein Fabrikant.
 38. a retail-dealer, ein Kleinhändler (Detailhändler).
 to buy, (bought, bought), kaufen.
 39. shop keeper, (der einen Laden hält) Krämer.
 41. foreign countries, fremde Länder.
 laden, beladen.
 42. to bring back, zurückbringen.
 1. brought, von to bring, bringen.
 5. across the sea, über das Meer.
 even, sogar.
 plums, Rosinen.

11) Bedürfnisse des Menschen — Kleidung.

7. want, Bedürfniß (Mangel).
 clothing, Kleidung.
 8. wherever, wo immer, wo auch.
 wisdom, Weisheit.
 9. to ordain, anordnen.
 11. to cast, werfen.
 15. infant, Kind (wird nur von ganz kleinen Kindern gebraucht, sonst sagt man child).
 16. clean, rein, reinlich.
 17. to perish, zu Grunde gehen.
 shelter, Obdach.
 19. accordingly, demnach, demgemäß.
 21. nor, auch nicht.
 to require, nöthig haben.
 23. though, obgleich.
 24. comfort, Bequemlichkeit.
 enjoyment, Genuß.

25. tired, müde.
 to sleep soundly, fest schlafen.
 26. a bed of down, ein Flaumbett.
 a chair, ein Sessel.
 a cushion, ein Kissen, Polster.
 27. a seat, ein Sitz.
 to rest, (et. rasten) ausruhen (nicht wie im frz. reposer, bleiben).
 sufficiently, hinlänglich.
 a plain bench, eine einfache Bank.
 28. a coat, (et. Kutte) ein Rock.
 coarse, grob.
 to protect from, schützen vor.
 29. superfine, äußerst fein.
 it looks better, es sieht besser aus.

30. a cushioned chair, ein gepolsterter Sessel.
 among, (et. in der Menge) zwischen, unter.
 32. enough, genug.
 33. decent, anständig.
 let us be, laßt uns seyn.
 dress, Kleidung.
 34. to follow a business, ein Geschäft treiben.
 36. tradesman, Handelsmann.
 37. countryman, Landmann.
 the townsman, der Städter.
 38. butcher, Metzger.
 40. horse-soldier, ein Soldat zu Pferd, ein Cavallerist.
 41. a serjeant, (man schreibt auch sergeant) ein Sergeant, Unteroffizier.
 a drummer, ein Trommler.

12) Von einigen Fähigkeiten des Geistes.

13. 1. some, einige.
faculty, Fähigkeit.
2. to name, nennen.
4. a shirt, (et. Schürze
ein Hemd.
stockings, Strümpfe.
6. black, schwarz.
felt, Filz.
worn, getragen, von to
wear, (am Körper) tragen,
(wore, worn).
7. to plait, (lat. plecto)
flechten.
10. to understand, (under-
stood, understood) ver-
stehen.
11. to rise, (rose, risen)
aufsteigen.
to set, (set, set) untergehen.
12. evening, Abend.
while, während, so lange.
13. darkness, Finsterniß.
to depart, scheiden.
18. shape, Gestalt.
19. to lose, (lost, lost)
verlieren.
20. to die, sterben, ver-
welken.

21. to put forth, treiben.
22. to sprout, sprossen.
23. to cause, verursachen.
heat, Hitze.
most beautiful, äußerst
schön.
25. hops, Hopfen.
to gather, einsammeln.
26. to decay, (vom latein.
cado, fallen, abfallen) ver-
welken.
27. to think about, nach-
denken über.
29. I remember, ich er-
innere mich.
prayer, Gebet.
30. to attend to, auf-
merken auf.
31. to behave, sich betragen.
37. bat, Fledermaus.
39. to crack, (frachen)
klatschen.
a whip, eine Peitsche.
to neigh, wiehern, (Pferd.)
40. to murmur, murmeln.
41. to tick, ticken (von
einer Uhr.)
watch, Taschenuhr.

- the bark, das Bellen.
42. the report of a gun,
der Schuß eines Geweh-
res (einer Kanone).
43. the bell, die Glocke.
2. smooth, glatt.
6. the scent, der Geruch.
7. the dislike, der Wider-
willen.
14. 1 a story, (abgef. von hi-
story) eine kleine Ge-
schichte, Erzählung.
9. some time since, vor
einiger Zeit.
10. a stranger (frz. étran-
ger) ein Fremder.
13. to cipher, (et. beziffern)
rechnen, (in der einfachen
Arithmetik).
15. figure, Zahl.
17. teacher, Lehrer.
19. to undergo punish-
ment, Strafe erleiden.
20. taught, s. 2, 21.
to try, versuchen.
21. to answer, beantworten.

13. Ueber Geographie.

24. lesson, (lat. lectio)
Stück zum Vorlesen, Auf-
gabe zum Lernen, Lektion.
25. surface, (lat. supra
und facies) Oberfläche.
continent, (lat. das Zusam-
menhaltende), Festland.
26. island, (isle land, In-
selland), Insel; griechisch
ἐνάλιος, im Meer befind-
lich; lat. in und salum,
Meer; it. isola; fr. île, île.
peninsula, (lat. paene,
beinahe), Halbinsel.
28. quite, völlig, ganz;
vom frz. quite, bezahlt, frei.
to join, (lat. jungere, frz.
joindre) verbinden.
29. main, (lat. magnus)
das größte, vornehmste,
wichtigste.

- main land, Hauptland, Fest-
land.
the main, das weite Meer,
die offene See.
isthmus, ἰσθμὸς), Erd-
zunge, Erdenge.
narrow (von near, nahe),
eng (vgl. frk. nährlich =
kaum, schwäb. nährig =
geizig).
strip, Streifen.
connect (lat.), verknüpfen.
30. together, zusammen,
von to gather versammeln;
urspr. angl. gatherian;
prov. gattern = versam-
meln; vgl. auch gatten =
verbinden.
cape, (lat. caput) Haupt,
Vorgebirge.

- promontory, (lat.) Vor-
gebirg.
to jut, (vom frz. jeter,
lat. jacio, werfen; nach
Andern von to shoot,
schießen, demnach auf-
schießen) hervorragen, to
jut out, hinausragen.
32. literally, (lat.) buch-
stäblich, wörtlich.
head, (angelsäch. heafod)
Haupt, headland, ein wie
ein Haupt sich erhebendes
Land.
33. coast, Küste (lat. costa,
Rippe, Seite).
shore, Meeres- u. Flußufer,
Gestade; frz. écore, steiles
Ufer; στεγρός, festes Land,
trockenes Land, Ufer.
whether, ob. ¹⁾

¹⁾ Eigentlich welches von beiden; das damit verwandte deutsche weder wurde ehemals auch indirekt fragend und vergleichend gebraucht; vgl. auch lat. uter, wer von beiden, utrum, ob; sodann engl. either, einer von beiden, entweder, neither, keiner von beiden, weder.

rock, Fels; frz. roc, ital. rocca, lat. rupes, ῥωγή, Spalt, Rluft.

35. hill, (zusammengez.) Hügel; mit high, hoch, verwandt; hill wird aber auch für höhere Berge gebraucht, z. B. Cheviot Hills.

36. plenty, (lat. plenus) die Fülle, sehr viel.

other, (ἕτερος, lat. alter, frz. autre), der andere.

world, (eigentlich das Währende, prov. Werld) Welt.

37. little, (schwz. lügel = klein), klein, gering.

top, (nordd. Top für Zopf, Zipfel) Gipfel.

38. to dare, θαρρόω, dreist, muthig sein und handeln; altd. tharren, u. Thurst = kühne That; daher dürfen = etwas wagen; I dare say, ich darf wohl sagen, wahrscheinlich.

mount, Berg, wird meistens vor Namen gebraucht, z. B. Mount Aetna, Mount St. Bernhard.

40. instance, Stand, Lage, Fall, Beispiel, in most instances, in den meisten Fällen.

stream, (Strom) im engl. nur als kleiner Fluß gebraucht.

41. flat, platt, flach.

space, (latein. spatium), Strecke, Raum.

to extend, (lat.) ausbreiten. distance, (lat.) Entfernung.

42. to consist (latein.) bestehen.

undulating, (lat. unda, Welle) wellenförmig.

15. 1. downs, Dünen¹⁾.

to mean (μενοῦναι, denken, lat. meminī, von mens, Geist), meinen, heißen, bedeuten.

2. Table Mountain, der Tafelberg, bildet das Vorgebirge der guten Hoffnung; er ist 4180' hoch.

3. to raise, erheben, verwandt to rise, sich erheben; vgl. der Riese, das Reisen; das Reis = Schößling.

above, über.

4. country, Gegend.²⁾

5. tree, Baum.³⁾

6. wood, (zusammengez.) Wald, Holz; dagegen holt, altengl. für Holz, Gehölz, Wald; noch heißen in Norfolk Kirchenwälder, cherry holtes.

desert, (lat. desero) verlassener Ort, Einöde, Wüste.

8. to intersperse, (latein. spargo, spersus) einstreuen, untermengen.

9. park, et. Pferch, umschlossener Raum, latein. parcus, Wildgarten.

lawn, (alte Schreibart launde, frz. lande, Heide) freier Rasenplatz in einem Gehölze.

10. sand-bank, bank, allgemeiner Name für Erhöhung, daher Ufer, Sandbank, Erhöhungen im Boden u.

heap, Haufen, (vgl. leap, laufen).

tide, Fluth⁴⁾.

to blow, (irr. blew, blown) blasen, wehen.

14. hid, von to hide (irr. hid, hid oder hidden), verbergen, (et. hut, Hütte), to heed, hüten.

dangerous, (frz. danger, Gefahr, latein. damnum, Schaden), gefährlich.

ship, (frz. esquif, latein. scapha) Schiff.

16. ravine, Hohlweg, Rluft, zu unterscheiden von ravin, Raub, Fraß; frz. ravin, ravine, Waldstrom, ursprünglich latein. rapere, rauben, reißen.

defile, (fr. défilé, von fil, Faden, Pfad durchs Gebirg) Hohlweg.

term, Wort, Ausdruck, sonst wie das Wort Termin.

18. cliff, Klippe, von flippen = hauen, spalten, auch steiles Felsenufer überhaupt, z. B. Dover Cliffs.

20. to bear, (irr. bore, borne) tragen, φέρειν, lat. ferre, altd. bāren = tragen, vgl. Bahre, engl. bier, u. gebären.

mind, (lat. mens) Geist, to bear in mind, im

¹⁾ Dieses Wort bezeichnete früher eine Höhe überhaupt, besonders ausgebreitete Ebenen auf der Höhe von Hügeln oder Bergen, (so ist es hier zu nehmen). Die engere Bedeutung ist Sandhügel an der Meeresküste (woher Dünkirchen), oder über dem Wasser erhabene Sandbänke wie The Downs an der Küste von Kent. Vgl. auch Lugdunum Bat., die Stadt Leyden. Daher auch down, eine Bewegung von oben nach unten, nieder, hinunter. ²⁾ frz. contrée, vom lat. contra, gegen; das, was dem Blick entgegen liegt, wie auch Gegend von gegen abstammt; im Engl. country, auch ein ganzes Land. ³⁾ ῥοῦς, latein. trabs, Balken, prov. der Tram = Balken; auf ähnliche Weise ist das engl. beam, boom, Balken, aus Baum entsprungen. ⁴⁾ Etym. Zeit, hauptsächlich einzelne Theile von Zeit, z. B. Whitsuntide, Pfingsten; dann die Zeit, wo die Ebbe und Fluth eintritt, daher die Ebbe und Fluth selbst. ⁵⁾ but, abgekürzt von nothing but, nichts als. But hat zweierlei Ursprung, daher auch seine zweifache Bedeutung von außer, und aber, nämlich 1) vom angels. beutan, to be out, außerhalb sein, daher but = without, unless, außer, lat. extra, praeter; also nach der Negation = als, nichts als, nichts außer. 2) vom angels. botan, hinzufügen, daher

- Geiſte tragen, nicht ver-
geſſen.
21. to take, (irr. took,
taken) nehmen, to take
up, einnehmen.
- room, Raum, Platz, Zimmer.
23. very, beim Superl.,
allergrößte.
24. The Pacific, das Stille
Meer.¹⁾
28. freshwater, wört. Friſch-
waſſer, Süßwaſſer; fresh,
(lat. frigidus, it. fresco,
frz. frais) friſch.
29. to take for, für etwas
nehmen, halten.
30. gulf, (κόλπος, Bu-
ſen) Golf, Meerbuſen; bay,
Bucht (et. von biegen).
- as to, was betrifft.
- much the ſame thing, faſt
einerlei; much wird manch-
mal für ziemlich ge-
braucht, alſo: ſo ziemlich
daſſelbe.
- to look, (provinz Iugen)
ſchauen, ſehen; to look
for, ſuchen.
34. map, Landkarte²⁾.
36. strait, (it. stretto, frz.
étroit. lat. strictus) enge;
a strait, eine Meerenge,
nicht zu verwechſeln mit
- straight, gerade, von ſtraß,
ſtrecken.
- neck, (Nacken, Hals.
37. channel, natürlicher
Kanal, Meerkanal, Fluß-
beet u. dgl.; canal, künst-
licher Waſſergang, Kunst-
ſtrom.
38. wide, weit, breit.
39. creek, (von crack, der
Riß, die Spalten, daher
ein Riß an der Küſte) eine
kleine Bucht, Schlupfhafen,
eine Kreek, Schiffslände.
- deal, Theil, a great deal,
um ein Bedeutendes.
41. road, road-ſtead, die
Reede, Rhede, Ankerplatz
im Meere in der Nähe der
Küſte.³⁾
42. anchor, ἄγκυρα,
Anker; Grundbedeutung,
frumm gebogen, to ride
at anchor, vor Anker liegen.
42. kind, Gattung, Art⁴⁾.
Yarmouth, wörtl. Mund,
Mündung des Fluſſes Yar,
deſgl. Portsmouth, Ex-
mouth, Plymouth &c.
- haven, Hafen, Seehafen;
frz. havre, vom deutſchen
haben, enthalten.
- harbour, (et. Herberge (it.
- albergo, frz. auberge),
auch in dieſer Bedeutung
früher im Engl. gebraucht,
jezt mehr für Schiffsberge)
Hafen.
44. frith, (ſprich firth)
ſchottiſcher Name für breite
Fluſzmündungen.⁵⁾
- 16.1. sound, ſeichte Meerenge⁶⁾.
shallow, (ſchal) ſeicht; shal-
lows, Untieſen, ſeichte
Stellen.
- bottom, Boden.
- 2 plummet, (vom frz.
plomb, lat. plumbum,
Blei) Senkblei.
- current, (franz. courant)
Strömung.
3. to empty, (lat. demo,
wegnehmen) ausleeren.
5. mile, eine engliſche Meile
von 5280 Fuß oder 1760
Yards; 69 $\frac{1}{8}$ engl. Meil.
gehen auf einen Aequa-
torgrad.
- church, (κυριακή, das
Haus des Herrn, ſchott.
kirk) Kirche.
- dock, Docke, künstlicher
Hafen oder Baſſin neben
dem eigentlichen Hafen,

die Bedeutung von überdieß, aber, das auch von über herkommt, wie im frz. mais, und it. ma, vom lat. magis, mehr. In dieſer Bedeutung wurde but früher zum Unterſchied bot geſchrieben.

¹⁾ body, angeliſ. bodig, die Höhe, Statur eines Menſchen, der Körper, der Hauptbe-
ſtandtheil, die Maſſe: verwandt damit ſind die Wörter: Butte, Bottich, Büttrich, und ähnliche
Namen für Gefäße; oberpfälz. der Becht = Körper; bair. der Bottich, (engl. bodice,) das
Schnürleibchen. ²⁾ wie im frz. mappemonde, nach ihrer Aehnlichkeit mit einem zuſammen-
gelegten Tiſchtuch, vom lat. mappa; chart, Seekarte, card, Spiel- und Adreſſenkarte, char-
ter (frz. chartre), Freiheitsbrief, Verfaſſungsurkunde, wie die Magna charta. ³⁾ Das deutſche
Wort wird von Schwenk vom angeliſ. raed, bereit, abgeleitet, kommt aber wahrſcheinlicher
vom angeliſ. ridan, engl. to ride, reiten, her, das früher im Deutſchen und jezt noch im
Engl. den allgemeinen Begriff des Fahrens, Fortgetragenwerdens auf einem Wagen, Schiff,
Thier, Waſſer &c. hatte; daher road-ſtead = eine Stätte for riding at anchor. Von dieſem
allgemeinen Begriff kommt auch road, frz. route, und wohl nicht nach Hilpert vom Ausreiten des
Geſtrüpps. ⁴⁾ urſprüngl. γένειν, lat. genere, angeliſ. cennan, zeugen, wachſen, keimen;
daher wie genus, Geſchlecht, im Engl. kind, gebraucht wird; verwandt damit iſt engl. kin,
kindred, Verwandtſchaft, das deutſche Wort Kind, und die zweite Bedeutung vom engl. kind
= gütig. ⁵⁾ Er wird von Johnson, Hilpert u. A. vom lat. fretum abgeleitet, das aber
mehr Meerenge, Canal, bedeutet; wahrſcheinlicher kommt der Name, wie das engl. ford und
ſkandinaviſche fiord, von Furt her, das nicht bloß eine ſeichte Uebergangsstelle bedeutet, ſondern
im D. D. auch das Bett eines Fluſſes. ⁶⁾ von to sound (frz. sonder), mit dem Senkblei
erforſchen; urſpr. wohl von Sand, der ſich an dem Fett beſtrichenen Senkblei anhängen muß.

zum Ausladen und Ausbessern der Schiffe ¹⁾).

light-house, Leuchthaus, Leuchtturm.

raft, Floß, (nach Johnson vom lat. ratis, doch eher griechisch. Ursprungs, von ὀροφῆ, Sparrwerk, Dach; angl. hrof, Balken, woher auch das engl. rafter, Sparren, roof, Dach, und das deutsche Roff, ehemals eine Rippe, herrühren.

14. skin, Haut (vgl. schinden = die Haut abziehen).

15. to wear, (irr. wore, worn) φέρω, andere engl.

form to bear, tragen; und zwar to wear, am Leibe tragen, wie Kleider, Krone, Schwert; to bear, eine Last tragen, ertragen. food, Futter, Speise, von to feed, füttern.

16. knowledge, Kenntniß.

19. black, schwarz ²⁾).

20. king, König, altd. chunni, Geschlecht, also Geschlechtsherr, Stammherr.

representatives, Stellvertreter.

people, (latein. populus) Volk, Leute.

21. climate, Klima. ³⁾

22. waste, (angels. watan, it. guastare, frz. gâter) wüste.

23. to worhsip, anbeten; vom angels. weorthscype = Werthschaft; daher als Ehrentitel der Magistratspersonen jetzt noch your worship, und als Anbetung.

24. to bow down, sich niederbeugen — bow (spr. bau) Verbeugung, bow, (spr. boh) der Bogen. stocks, Stock, Baumstamm. Block.

14) England.

25. England, mlat. Anglia, frz. Angleterre, ital. Inghilterra, das Land der Angelsachsen.

26. powerful, mächtig, power (frz. pouvoir, ital. potere, lat. posse, können). modern, neu (latein. modernus, von modo, vor Kurzem).

27. speck, Flecken; urspr. ist auch das deutsche Wort Speck = Stück, Fleck.

29. territory, Ländergebiet.

30. oak, Eiche.

to strike, (streichen) schlagen.

21. lofty, erhaben, von to lift, in die Höhe heben, daher schott. lift = die Luft.

35. her power, Länder u. große Städte werden im Engl. oft weiblich behandelt.

36. square, (it. quadrato) Quadrat.

40. both — and, sowohl — als auch.

41. to acknowledge, anerkennen.

17. 3. piety, Frömmigkeit, (pity, Mitleiden).

5. whole, ganz, ὅλος, altd. heil = ganz, unverfehrt; im Engl. in Zusammensetzungen, z. B. wholesome, heilsam, gesund.

7. to be fond of, etwas gerne haben, gerne thun ⁴⁾).

8. to seem, (frz. sembler, latein. simulare, ähnlich machen), scheinen.

to conjure up, heraufbeschwören, hervorrufen.

9. as it were, gleichsam.

deed, That.

ancestors, (lat. ancestor, Vorgänger) Vorfahren.

10. empire, (lat. imperium) Kaiserreich, großes Reich.

11. size, Umfang (et. zweifelhaft, vielleicht altfrz. assise, bestimmtes Maß; dann das deutsche Saß, festgesetzte Größe.

unbounded, grenzenlos.

amazing, erstaunlich (von maze, Labyrinth, Verwirrung).

12. Manchester, die Endung chester und cester in engl. Städten kommt vom lat. castrum, Kastell, Festung her, Winchester, Worcester. M. liegt in Lancashire ⁵⁾, d. h. Grafschaft Lancaster.

¹⁾ Gewöhnlich sind um die Bassins große Waarenlager errichtet; man unterscheidet dry-dock, trockene D., mit Fluthüren zum Einlassen und Absperren der Flut; wet-dock, nasse D., offen, ohne Fluthüren. ²⁾ vom angels. bleo, Farbe im Allgemeinen; daher die Wörter blue, blau, dän. blaa, dunkelblau und schwarz, sodann blaß, bleich, deren Ursprung in blicken, glänzen, zu suchen ist. ³⁾ κλίμα, wörtl. Neigung, daher Neigung der Erde gegen den Pol zu von dem Aequator an, und die nach dem Grade dieser Neigung sich richtende Wärme und Bitterung, Klima. ⁴⁾ fond, (schott. fon) heißt wörtl. thöricht, albern, und ist verwandt mit fun, Albernheit, Spaß. Wir sagen auch in etwas vernarrt sein. Johnson sagt, er habe die Etymologie dieses Wortes nicht finden können, Hilpert leitet es vom latein. vanus, und dem deutschen Wahn ab. ⁵⁾ Das Wort shire, Grafschaft, kommt vom angels. sceran, schneiden, theilen, her, von dem die deutschen Wörter Schere, Scharfe, Schur, scharf, und das franz. dé-

- wealthy, wohlhabend¹⁾.
 13. cotton, (syr. cot, arab. alcoton) rohe Baumwolle, daher der daraus bereitete Zeug, Kattun.
 Bristol, in Gloucestershire, am Avon, der sich in die Mündung des Severn ergießt.
 seaport, Seehafen²⁾.
 Birmingham, (die Endung ham = heim), liegt in Warwickshire.
 Sheffield, field = feld, in Yorkshire, berühmte Stahlfabriken.
 15. hardwares, (harte Waaren) Eisen-, Stahl-Metallwaaren.
 Leeds und Bradford, beide in Yorkshire.
 Coventry, von Convent, Kloster, liegt in Warwickshire.
 10. riband, Band, (franz. ruban, altfr. rubent, eigtl. rothes Band.)
 Kidderminster, minster = Münster, von kirch. lat. monasterium, liegt in Gloucestershire.
 17. equal, gleich, (frz. égal, it. uguale, lat. aequus).
 carpet, Fußteppich³⁾.
 18. porcelain, Porzellan⁴⁾.
 potteries, Töpferwaaren, von pot, Topf, mit Botte, Butte verwandt.
 18. remember, (it. rimembrare, rimemorare, vom lat. memor) sich erinnern.
 on account of. wegen.
 20. Oxford, (ford = furt).
 Cambridge, (Brücke über den Fluß Cam).
 Canterbury, (bury aus borough, Burg) liegt in Kent.
 22. Cathedral, von καθεδρα, Sitz, Kirche, welche der Sitz eines Bischofs ist.
 Archbishopric, Erzbis-
 thum, von arch, αρχι, Erz, desgl. archfiend, Erzfeind.
 Woolwich, (die Endung wich, vom lt. vicus, Dorf).
 23. arsenal, Zeughaus⁵⁾.
 24. dock-yard, Schiffsbauhof, Seemagazin.
 25. bomb, Bombe, von βόμβος, dumpfer Ton, daher noch im ital. rim-bombo, Wiederhall.
 mortar, (frz. mortier, lat. mortarium) Mörtel.
 cannon, Kanone, (ital. ca-
 none, d. h. große canna, große Röhre).
 Chatham, Stadt in Kent.
 27. Sheerness, unterhalb Chatham, auf der Isle of Sheppey.
 Portsmouth, in Hampshire, der bedeutendste Kriegshafen Englands, mit der Rhede Spithead.
 Plymouth, in Devonshire, mit dem berühmten Breakwater (Wasserbrecher), Hafendamm.
 28. Chelsea, s. w. gelegene Vorstadt Londons.
 29. Greenwich, Stadt, 4 englische Meilen unterhalb London, an der Themse, mit Herschels Sternwarte, durch die die Engländer den ersten Meridian ziehen.
 30. disabled, (unfähig, von able, lat. habilis, franz. abile) für den Dienst untauglich.
 31. to yield, weichen, nachstehen⁶⁾.
 32. sky, Himmel⁷⁾.
 council, Rathversammlung, counsel, der gegebene Rath, Rathgeber, lat. concilium oder consilium.
 brave, tapfer⁸⁾.

chirer herkommen; daher shire = Abschnitt, Theil eines Landes; steht es allein, wird es sch eir gesprochen, angehängt ganz kurz schir; den folgenden engl. Grafschaften wird es nicht angehängt: Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, Sussex, Kent, Surrey, Cornwall, Westmoreland, Cumberland, Durham, Northumberland.

¹⁾ von wealth, vom angels. valdan, deutsch walten, daher Gewalt, Reichthum; nach Andern von weal, Wohl, das aus well, und wie das deutsche wohl, urspr. von wollen, abgeleitet wird. ²⁾ port wird statt harbour hauptsächlich gebraucht, wenn die Stadt damit bezeichnet wird; auch für Flußhafen, z. B. port of London, port of Bristol. ³⁾ it. carpetta, von der Stadt Cairo, wo sie ursprüngh. verfertigt wurden. ⁴⁾ vom portug. porcella, Schale, porca, Venusmuschel, deren Glätte Veranlassung zum Namen Porzellan gab. Eine merkwürdige Ableitung gibt Johnson — von pour cent années, weil es über hundert Jahre lang dauere! ⁵⁾ Nach Einigen vom latein. ars, Kunst, das im Mittelalter auch Kriegsmaschine bedeutet, nach Andern von arcus, Bogen, aber nach Diez kommt es vom arab. darcenah, Platz für die Galeeren. ⁶⁾ vom angels. gildan, bezahlen; diese Bedeutung hat gelten noch in den Wörtern entgelten, vergelten; daher die Idee des Weggebens, Lieferns, (the tree yields fruit), des Nachgebens. ⁷⁾ ursprgh. σκιά, Schatten, das aber eigentlich Decke, Hülle bedeutet; altengl. skie, heißt auch Schatten, Wolke; jetzt wird sky für das Himmelsgewölbe gebraucht; der Himmel als Wohnort der Seligen, heißt heaven. ⁸⁾ it. bravo, vielleicht von rauh abzuleiten, wie bronco, Klotz, von rünk, Strunk; überhaupt sind aus den Zeiten der Hohenstaufen her viele deutsche Kriegsausdrücke ins Ital. und dadurch ins Franz. und Engl. übergegangen, z. B. it. guerra, frz. guerre, engl. war, von Wirre; it. arnese, Harnisch; it. guastare, frz. gâter, engl. waste, verwüsten; ital. spada, frz. épée, Spaten, Schwert u.

33. pursuit, (frz. poursuite, von suivre, ital. seguire, lat. sequi), Verfolgung, Betreibung¹⁾.
 37. though, (doch, jedoch) obgleich²⁾.
 38. formidable, (lat.) fürchterlich, grausenhaft.
 fox, Fuchs³⁾.
 badger, (altfranz. bedour) Dachs.
 otter, Otter, vierfüßiges Wasserthier, zu unterscheiden von Otter = kleine Schlange, die im Engl. adder heißt.
 30. polecat, (polnische Rake) Iltis. (Mustela putorius L.)
 40. too, (zu, allzu, noch dazu) gleichfalls.
 41. bull-dog, (der Bullen-hund) Bullenbeißer⁴⁾.
 game cock, Kampfhahn, 18.1. von game, Spiel, angl. gaming, Scherz, prov. Gämel = Muthwille, und der Gammel = Lust, Ritzel.
 42. sport, Spiel, (wie das ital. diporto, für jede Belustigung im Freien, Jagd, Fischerei, Wettrennen, Hahnenkampf u. dgl.)
 bull-baiting, Stierhegen⁵⁾.
 fight, fechten.
 45. timber, Bauholz, urspr. hieß Zimmer der Stoff zum Bauen, daher Zimmermann, zimmern.
 elm, Ulme, Ulme; franz. orme, lat. ulmus.
 1. ash, Esche, von der aschgrauen Farbe.
 2. beech, Buche; lat. fagus, φηγός, Eßbeiche.
 grain, (lat. granum) Korn, Samenkorn; grain of the ground, Getraide.
 6. mines, Bergwerke, Mine; vom frz. mener, führen, also eigentlich Gang in dem Bergwerk.
 7. quarry, Steinbruch⁶⁾.
 fog, (isl. fug, dän. fog = Sturm), dicker Nebel.
 healthy, heilsam, gesund.

15) Fürstenthum Wales⁷⁾.

11. gushing, gießend; gushing stream, Gießbach.
 12. nook, (it nuca, franz. nuque, Genick), Ecke, Winkel.
 14. peace, (lat pax) Friede.
 16. tourists, Lustreisende.
 18. camp-stool, Feldstuhl.
 19. goodly, schön.
 20. to sketch, eine Skizze zeichnen.
 23. Milford Haven, in der Grafschaft Pembroke, an der Südküste von Wales.
 it matters not, es thut nichts.
 24. to sail, segeln, im Schiff fahren.

¹⁾ Das franz. pour ist in Zusammensetzungen im Engl. pur geworden, par hingegen per — z. B. purvey von pourvoir, purchase vom altfrz. pourchasser, purport von pourporte, dagegen perfume von parfume, perforce von par force und ähnl. ²⁾ Horne Tooke leitet es vom angl. thafan, zugeben, ab; es ist aber augenscheinlich unser doch, es wird auch im Engl. nicht bloß als Conj., sondern auch als Adv. gebraucht, z. B. 'tis dangerous though to treat me in this sort (Dryden), es ist jedoch gefährlich, mich so zu behandeln. Though wird thoh gesprochen; über die Aussprache des ough merke man sich folgenden Vers, wo es auf siebenerelei Art lautet:

Though (dho) the tough (toff) cough (foaff) and hiccough (hiffoy)
 plough (plau) me through (thruh)

O'er life's dark lough (loach) my course I still pursue.

d. h. obgleich der zähe Husten und das Aufstoßen mich durchpflügen, so verfolge ich doch meinen Lauf über des Lebens dunklen See. ³⁾ Lächerlich ist die von einem Gelehrten aufgestellte Etymologie dieses ursprünglich angelsächsischen Wortes; er leitet es von ἀλώπηξ (griech. alopex Fuchs) ab, und läßt es folgende Veränderungen erleiden: alopex, lopex, opex, pex, pax, pox, fox — Fuchs!! ⁴⁾ bull, der Bulle, Stier, von bullen, brummen; daher Brummochs im Deutschen; steer, bedeutet im Engl. nur einen jungen Ochsen, Rind. ⁵⁾ to bait, baizen, d. h. beißen machen, daher hegen, jagen, jetzt im Deutschen nur noch vom Jagen mit Stoßvögeln üblich. ⁶⁾ frz. carrière, vom lat. quadra, Viereck, Grundstein, Platte, daher auch im Deutschen Quaderstein, also ein Ort, wo Quadern erhalten werden, Steinbruch. Weitgesucht sind daher die Ableitungen vom irischen carrig, und wallis. carn, Namen für Stein. ⁷⁾ Wales, wie das schweiz. Valais, Wallis, Thalland; das ist die gewöhnliche Ableitung; Hilpert hingegen weist auf das Wort welsch hin, das urspr. gaelisch, gallisch, celtisch, und jetzt überhaupt Alles, was in Europa nicht teutonisch, nicht slavisch, nicht finnisch und nicht türkisch ist, bedeutet; daher im Franz. Wales noch Pays de Galles heißt. Die Einwohner von Wales nennt der Engländer Welshmen.

25. this is saying a great deal, das will viel heißen.
 26. to ride, vor Anker liegen.
 27. Aberystwith, in Cardiganshire, Westküste von Wales.
 Swansea, Südküste von Wales.
 29. flannel, (wallis. gwlanan, von gwlan, Wolle; lat. lana).

30. to make for, den Weg nehmen nach.
 31. Holyhead, westl. Spitze der Insel Anglesey.
 to cross, (wörtl. kreuzen, durchkreuzen) über einen Fluß, über's Meer fahren.
 33. to conquer, erobern, (lt. conquirere, zus. suchen, zus. treiben.)

34. subdue, (latein. subdo, unterwerfen).
 35. to defeat, (franz. défaire, von dis und facio) besiegen, schlagen.
 Llewellyn, das ll im Anfang der Silbe wird im Wallisischen wie dl gesprochen.

16) Schottland.

- 19.1. Scotland, gewöhnliche Ableitung von σκότος, Dunkelheit, Nebelland, oder von σκύθης, Scythe, roher Mensch; ist übrigens celt. Ursprungs, nämlich scuite = Wanderer.
 2. hardly, mit Mühe, schwerlich, kaum.
 3. chief, (latein. caput) Oberhaupt, Häuptling.
 plaid, Mantel der Bergschotten, von groß- und buntquarrrtem Wollenzug.
 philibeg, auch filibeg (gael.) eine Art Schürze, die die Bergschotten statt der Beinkleider tragen.
 petticoat, Unterrock, von petty (frz. petit), klein, und coat (et. Kutte), Rock.
 4. to forget, vergessen; in diesem Worte haben wir noch das dem engl. get entsprechende gessen, (angels. getan, erreichen).
 bonnet, (frz., vielleicht vom deutschen Bund, Binde), Mütze.
 5. cap, (von caput) Kopfbedeckung, Mütze, Kappe, auch Haube (von Haupt).
 6. steep, steil (verwandt mit dem deutschen Stausen = steiler Berg).
 crag, (kornisch Karak, gael. creag) Klippe.

- to scream, (andere Form von scream und screech) freischen, schreien
 eagle. Adler, vom latein. aquila.
 to fly, (irr. flew, flown) fliegen.
 7 to rush, (et. herausrauschen), stürzen.
 8. moor, das Moor, meistens hochgelegenes, sumpfiges Land, Moorland, Marschland, Gegenden für die mittlere oder niedere Jagd, Heidegeflügel.
 deer, Rothwild, red deer, Hirsch (et. Thier, in diesem Sinne gebraucht es noch Shaks.).
 11. Lowlands, Niederland, (low, niedrig, von to lie, liegen).
 level, (frz. niveau, von libella, Wasserrüge), wasserrecht, eben, flach.
 12. crop of corn, Getraideernte (von to crop, et. rupfen, abkippen, abhauen).
 19. waves, Wogen¹⁾.
 22. Edinburgh, wird gewöhnlich Edinboro' gesprochen und manchmal auch so geschrieben.
 24. Holyrood, (wörtl. das heilige Kreuz) Palast der schottischen Könige am Fuße des Arthur Seat zu Edinb.

25. Glasgow, wörtl. das Glasgäu.
 28. gloves, Handschuh, stockings, Strümpfe.
 31. Loch, schott. Name für lake, das ch wird als starker Guttural ausgespr.
 Ben, schott. Name für Berg.
 Ben Nevis, wörtlich der Schneeberg.
 25. to allow, erlauben; hier: man gibt allgemein zu.
 hardy, hart, stark, kühn, muthig.
 30. cheap, wohlfeil, (etym. Kauf, kaufbar); daher Cheapside, die große Kaufstraße in London).
 20.1. to pave, (frz. paver) pflastern.
 to grind, (altdeutsch grinzen = mahlen) zerreiben.
 2. dust, Staub.
 mud, (et. Mudder, Moder), nasser Roth.
 4. Staffa, Basalt-Insel in dem breiten westl. Busen der Insel Mull an der Westküste Schottlands.
 6. coin, Münze; (auch als archit. Ausdruck, wie das frz. coin, die Ecke, aber nur die einer Mauer, sonst heißt die Ecke corner).
 7. druidical, von druid, Priester der celt. Völker, von druid, Baum, weil sie in dunklen Hainen ihre

¹⁾ vom altdeutsch. weben, emporheben und schwingen, daher das Webeopfer (4 Mos. 11), welches emporgehoben und gegen die vier Weltgegenden geschwungen wurde.

feierlichen Gebräuche ausübten.

10. James, aus it. Giacomo, Jakob.

12. act of Parliament, die Parlamentsakte ¹⁾.

17) Irland.

19. peep, neugieriger, verthöhlener Blick ²⁾.

shelter, Schutz ³⁾.

slate, Schiefer, von to slit, schlügen, was sich leicht schleigen läßt.

20. big, groß; vielleicht von biegen, bauchig, etw. herausgehobenes und dadurch großgewordenes.

25. Connaught, westliche, Munster, südliche Provinz Irlands.

34. linen, (spr. linnen) Leinwand, lat. linum.

21. to lie, liegen (irr. lay, lain).

27. flock, (eine Menge bei einander befindlicher lebender Geschöpfe) die Heerde.

37. Lord lieutenant, Lord Statthalter.

23. lost, von to lose (irr. lost, lost), verlieren, altd. verliesen, daher das Verließ, ein Ort, indem man verloren ist.

28. to feed, (irr. fed, fed) füttern.

41. handsome, schön ⁵⁾.

24. for the want of, aus Mangel an.

beef, Ochsenfleisch ⁴⁾.

21. 1. reckless, sorglos, unbekümmert, vom altengl. to reck, rechnen, in Anschlag bringen, sich um etwas bekümmern.

29. pig, junges Schwein, Ferkel, prov. Brigge.

2. excitement, Aufregung.
3. prodigal, verschwenderisch.

ought, sollte, (urspr. Imperf. von to owe, schuldig sein).

18) Charakter der verschiedenen Nationen Europas.

8. sceptical, skeptisch, zweifelhaftig.

fearless, furchtlos.

23. easy, (leicht) gewandt.

devout, fromm.

15. precipitate, übereilt.

24. proud, stolz.

9. zealous, eifrig.

nice, genau.

26. to conceal, verbergen.

10. a bigot, ein Frömmel.

16. circumspect, behutsam.

to divulge, ausprengen,

11. faithful, treu.

19. middle size, mittlere Größe.

28. close, verschlossen.

12. safe, sicher.

awkward, unbehülflich.

29. vanity, Eitelkeit.

giddy, schwindlich, unbeständig.

20. shabby, (schabig) armselig.

to boast, sich brüsten.

shuffling, wankelmüthig, unredlich.

costly, kostspielig.

to despise, verachten.

13. a cheat, ein Betrüger.

21. fickle, flatterhaft.

33. prompt, schnell bereit.

14. advice, Rath.

ragged, (g hart) zerlumpt.

34. vindictive, rachebüchtig.

slow, langsam.

22. clownish, bäurisch, plump.

40. submissive, unterwürfig.

22. Mensch, ein Halbgelehrter.

19) National-Scheinwidersprüche.

15. abroad, in der Fremde.

20) Der Werth der Themse.

18. Worthies, berühmte Männer.

21. the reciprocation of the tides, Wechsel der Ebbe und Flut.

to remove, entfernen.

19. to owe, verdanken.

22. hence, daher.

Lord Mayor, Oberbürgermeister.

opulence, Wohlhabenheit.

23. to threaten, drohen.

24. bold, kühn.

20. well-conditioned, wohl beschaffen.

¹⁾ bill, ist der dem Parlament vorgelegte Gesetzantrag, act, der zum Gesetz erhobene Parlamentsbeschluß. ²⁾ gewöhnlich abgeleitet von dem Pöpen oder Pfeifen der jungen Bühnen, wenn sie aus ihrem Ei zum erstenmal hervorgucken; daher to peep im Engl. überhaupt zum Vorschein kommen bedeutet; z. B. the day begins to peep. ³⁾ to shelter, Schutz suchen; nach Hsyp. verwandt mit Behälter, aber wahrscheinlich von shield, Schild, wie to shield jetzt noch beschützen heißt. ⁴⁾ Durch die vornehmen Normanen wurden für die Speise die ächten Thiernamen in England verdrängt, daher beef, mutton, veal, pork &c. ⁵⁾ some als Endung entspricht unserem Deutschen sam, daher die Urbedeutung, handsam, einer, der bei der Hand ist, bereit, geschickt, wohlgemacht, schön. In Spenser trifft man, a handsome thief, ein gewandter Dieb.

ZWEITER ABSCHNITT.

Gespräche und dramatische Scenen.

1) Canuts Burechtweisung seiner Höflinge.

5. sea side, Meeresufer.

9. liege, Lehensherr, Fürst.
powerful, mächtig.

11. dust, Staub.

14. shore, Rüste.

15. boisterous, stürmisch.
wave, Wellen.

16. still, stille.

bidding, Gebot.

18. bosom, (spr. busm)
Busen.

to pour, ausschütten.

24. a chair, ein Sessel.

24. 5. a bounden duty, eine
verbindliche Pflicht.

7. to roll, wälzen.

to presume, wagen, sich
unterstehen.9. to pay regard, Rücksicht
nehmen.

11. fast, schnell.

13. folly, Thorheit.

to stay, bleiben.

14. if it be (Subjunct.).

16. to dash, spritzen.

angry, zornig.

foam, Schaum.

spray, Flugwasser, Gischt.

17. sycophant¹⁾, falscher
Schmeichler.a dupe, ein Betrogener, to
be the dupe of one, sich
von jemanden hintergehen
lassen.23. to assume, sich an-
maßen.

2) Die zwei Räuber.

28. tent, Zelt.

a fierce countenance, ein
wildeß Aussehen.chained and fettered, ge-
fesselt und gebunden.

30. exploits, Heldenthaten.

33. assassin, Mordel-
mörder.

34. to detest, verabscheuen.

36. to complain, sich be-
klagen.37. to set at defiance,
Trog bieten.38. to injure, Schaden zu-
fügen.

41. to endure, ertragen.

to inflict, verhängen.

25. 1. at all, überhaupt.

4. to silence, zum Still-
schweigen bringen.to deign, erniedrigen, sich
herablassen.

to converse, verkehren.

10. she speaks of me, too,
sie spricht gleichfalls von mir.

11. valiant, tapfer.

12. to scorn, verschmähen.

to boast, sich rühmen.

14. still, immerhin.

16. to blast, vernichten.

17. to ravage, verheeren.

to kill, tödten.

18. merely, bloß.

to gratify, befriedigen.

insatiable, unersättlich.

19. single, einzig, einzeln.

21. to strip, (et. abstreifen)
berauben.

22. hamlet, Weiler, Dorf.

27. to subvert, umwerfen.

to found, gründen.

to cherish, pflegen, unter-
stützen.31. ferocious, grimmig,
wild.mankind, Menschenges-
chlecht.

33. to repay, ersehen.

34. mischief, Unheil, Scha-
den.35. to use well, gut be-
handeln.Exit, (vom lat.) er geht
ab.

3) König Alfred.

26. 7. retired, (zurückgezogen)
einsam.

8. spot, Ort.

retreat, Einsamkeit.

9. tangled, (gewöhnlicher
entangled) verwickelt.

thicket, Dickicht.

to fence in, einzäunen.

11. pursuit, Verfolgung.

14. smoke, (et. schmauchen)
Rauch.to bend the steps, die
Schritte lenken.

thither, dorthin.

21. now a days, heutzutage.

22. come along, komm mit
mir.

24. weary, müde.

to chop wood, Holz hacken.

26. cake, Kuchen.

27. to dip, et. taufen, da-
her untertauchen.

28. barn, Scheune.

29. to entreat, anflehen.

30. shelter, Zufluchtsort.

36. a true-born English-
man, ein ächter Engländer.

¹⁾ συκοφάντης, wörtl. Feigenzeiger, d. h. ein Angeber, welcher Vergehen wider das Gebot, daß man keine Feigen aus dem Gebiete von Athen führen und verkaufen sollte, anzeigt, daher ein Angeber überhaupt, ein falscher Schmeichler.

37. to hate, hassen.
wicked, gottlos.
38. cattle, Vieh.
27. 1. heartily, von ganzem Herzen.
4. I fight, (fought, fought) ich fechte, kämpfe.
5. to bless, segnen.
9. to kneel down, niederknien.
to pray, beten.
13. he is thought to be dead, man hält ihn für todt.
14. sad, traurig.
15. to share, theilen.
loaf, Brodlaib.
16. too hungry to be nice, zu hungrig, um leckerhaft zu seyn.
18. hark ye, horch!
husband, Ehemann, Gemahl.
19. charitable, barmherzig.
a sin, eine Sünde.
22. he looks strong, er sieht stark aus.
23. any thing you choose, alles was ihr wollet.
to set about, sich an etwas machen.
26. to tie up, zusammenbinden.
faggots, Reisbündel.
neatly, reinlich, hübsch.
27. to be used to, an etwas gewöhnt seyn.
I am afraid, ich befürchte.
awkward, unbehülflich.
29. to thatch, Häuser mit Stroh decken.
to blow off, hinwegwehen.

32. to weave rushes, Binden flechten.
33. basket, Korb.
35. to stack hay, Heu aufschichten (stack, Heuschuber).
37. here's a fellow! das ist ein sauberer Mensch.
39. to rub, abreiben.
40. to watch, Achtung geben auf.
to milk the kine, die Kühe melken.
28. 4. to stain, beflecken.
7. to appoint, wählen, bestimmen.
8. shepherd, Schäfer.
to rescue, retten.
flock, Heerde.
ravenous, heißhungrig.
9. jaws, Kachen.
14. blunt, (wörtl. stumpf) derb.
16. pail, Wassereimer, Gelte.
18. mercy on us, Gott sei uns gnädig.
19. lazy, träg, faul.
23. to be in love, verliebt sein.
26. kettle, Kessel, Pfanne.
27. pr'ythee, für I pray thee, ich bitte dich.
hold thy tongue, sei stille! (halt's Maul!)
37. bare ground, nackter Boden.
38. noise, Lärmen.
trampling, Stampfen.
39. see what is the matter, sieh was es gibt.
40. heaven forbid, der Himmel verhüte.
41. I had rather, ich würde lieber.

4) Die Kolonisten.

14. a working farmer, ein Bauer.
a gentleman farmer, ein vornehmer, reicher Pächter.
labourer, Tagelöhner.
15. scarce, selten.
16. to clear wood, Wälder lichten.
to drain marshes, Moräste trocken legen.
17. stubborn, hartnäckig.
21. utensils, Werkzeug.

- to fall to work, sich an die Arbeit machen.
24. to grow corn, Korn pflanzen.
25. to grind, (ground, ground) mahlen.
28. a millwright, Mühlenbauer.
29. as for, was betrifft.
34. fence, Zaun.
furniture, Hausgeräthe.

29. 2. mercy defend us, Gott steh uns bei!
8. to shut up, einschließen.
to make a sally, einen Ausfall machen.
9. to slaughter, (et. schlachten) niedermegeln.
to gasp, (nach Luft schnappen) den Geist aushauchen.
11. raven, Rabe.
12. panic-struck, von panischem Schrecken ergriffen.
15. that tongue of thine, deine Zunge.
to undo, vernichten, ins Unglück stürzen.
20. to guess, errathen.
23. tidings, (Zeitung) Nachrichten.
27. to lift, in die Höhe heben.
29. to skulk, (besser to sculk) lauern.
31. fastness, fester Ort.
to flock to, in Schaaren herbeiströmen.
39. to mean harm, es böse meinen.
41. to afford, gewähren.
distress, (frz. détresse) Noth.
43. to reward, belohnen.
30. 1. to face the enemy, sich dem Feinde gegenüberstellen.
haughty, hochmüthig.
I vow, ich gelobe.
2. to sheath the sword, das Schwert in die Scheide stecken.
4. dove-like, (taubenähnlich) wie die Taube.

35. our timber is growing, außer Bauholz steht noch.
36. to fell trees, Bäume fällen.
to saw planks, Bretter sägen.
to shape posts, Pfosten behauen.
40. able hands, tüchtige Leute.
41. a blacksmith, ein Grobschmied.

31. 1. to do without, entbehren.
 2. bellows, Blasbalgen.
 3. anvil, Ambos.
 to set up a forge, eine Schmiede errichten.
 4. by the bye, im Vorbeigehen gesagt (à propos).
 6. a log house, ein Blockhaus.
 9. lime, Kalk.
 10. to try, versuchen.
 14. a raw hide, ein rohes Fell.
 16. to dress, zurichten.
 18. wages, Dienstlohn.
 19. a tailor, ein Schneider.
 21. a holiday suit, Festtagskleider.
 22. you are not above mending, Sie halten es nicht unter Ihrer Würde zu flicken.
 to botch, zusammenstückeln.
 23. me must not mind, wir müssen uns Nichts daraus machen.
 patched, geflickt.
 30. hemp, Hanf.
 31. cheap, wohlfeil.
 to import, einführen.

35. you will break us, Sie werden uns Bankerott machen.
 36. to starve one, einen aushungern.
 42. hair-dresser, Haarschneider.
 43. to shave, rasiren.
 44. to crop the hair, das Haar abstutzen.
 32. 3. to stand by itself, allein bestehen können.
 6. health, Gesundheit.
 8. surgery, Chirurgie.
 9. we are likely to get, wir werden wahrscheinlich erhalten.
 cut, Schnitt.
 bruise, Quetschung, Beule.
 19. it is worth your while, es ist der Mühe werth.
 20. a lawyer, ein Rechtsgelehrter.
 22. to go to law, prozessiren.
 25. to undervalue, geringschätzen.
 young folks, junge Leute.
 27. plain people, schlichte Leute.
 to make it a point, sich

- etwas fest vornehmen, auf etwas dringen.
 29. in the mean time, mittlerweile.
 30. to keep the accounts and records, die Rechnungen und Register führen.
 all that choose to attend upon you, alle welche zu Ihnen kommen wollen.
 37. to purchase, kaufen.
 38. just and fair, recht und billig.
 dealings, Handel, Geschäfte.
 41. settler, Ansiedler.
 42. tribe, Volksstamm.
 45. a soldier by trade, ein berufsmäßiger Soldat.
 33. 2. game, Wildbrät.
 plentiful, in großer Anzahl vorhanden.
 8. maintenance, Lebensunterhalt.
 12. valet, Kammerdiener.
 13. what inducement can we have for, was kann uns dazu verleiten?
 15. you will have the credit of, es wird Ihnen die Ehre einlegen.
 17. facetious, drollig.

5) Sinnbilder.

25. to comprehend, verstehen.
 27. notion, Begriff.
 28. vice, Laster.
 disgrace, Schande.
 30. understanding, Verstand.
 36. a beholder, ein Betrachtender.
 in order to, um zu.
 38. a type, ein Typus, Vorbild.
 40. Sessions-house, Assisenhof.
 41. trial, gerichtliche Untersuchung, Gericht.
 34. 2. ingenious, sinnreich.
 to point out, andenten, bezeichnen.
 7. token, Kennzeichen.
 to bear a relation to, sich beziehen auf.
 8. to weigh, erwägen.

9. a pair of scales, eine Waage.
 10. office, Amt.
 12. she is blindfolded, es sind ihr die Augen verbunden.
 15. though, jedoch.
 17. well objected, dein Einwurf ist richtig.
 inconsistent, im Widerspruch stehend.
 19. to drop, fallen lassen.
 22. Cupid, Cupido, Liebesgott der röm. Mythologie.
 23. bow (spr. boh) and arrow, Bogen und Pfeil.
 24. gross absurdity, grobe Albernheit.
 it is not countenanced by, (wörtl. es wird nicht geduldet) man trifft kein Beispiel davon bei zc.
 26. archer, Bogenschütze.

29. it means, es bedeutet.
 31. scythe, Sense.
 32. hour-glass, Stundenglas, Sanduhr.
 33. to interpret, auslegen.
 38. to mow (spr. moh) down, niedermähen, abmähen.
 40. wide-washing, (weit und breit verwüstend) alles verheerend.
 sway, (wörtl. Schwung) Macht, Gewalt.
 to sweep down, wegraffen.
 41. mower, (Mäher) Schnitter.
 42. a simile, (spr. simile, nicht simile) ein Gleichniß.
 the scriptures, die heilige Schrift.
 2. wings, Schwingen.
 35. 3. bald, kahl.
 a single lock, eine einzige Locke.

4. I have been told, man hat mir gesagt.
 6. to last, dauern, währen.
 8. swift, schnell, flink.
 12. weapon, (syr. weppn) Waffe.
 13. a pick-axe, Bicke, Spizart.
 suitable, passend.
 14. gradual, allmählig.
 15. to make it out, es herausbringen.
 16. to puzzle, in Verlegenheit setzen.
 it relates to, es bezieht sich auf.
 17. to seize, ergreifen.
 18. to recover, wieder gewinnen.
 19. fore-lock, vordere Locke.
 21. sugar-loaf, Zuckerhut.
 22. grocer, Specereihändler.
 shop, Laden.
 mortar, Mörser.
 27. implement, Geräth, Zubehör.
 31. a sailor, ein Matrose.
 33. button, Knopf.
 34. badge, Kennzeichen, Merkmal.
 35. navy, Flotte, Marine.
 44. the commission, (of an officer) Anstellungspatent, Bestallung.
 45. it's plain, es ist klar.
 36. 6. I have got, ich habe.
7. to try, versuchen.
 9. summit, Gipfel.
 a steep cliff, ein steiler Felsen.
 10. to plant a ladder against, eine Leiter anlegen an.
 cloud, Wolke.
 13. he is got high, er ist hoch hinauf gekommen.
 he wants, er möchte gerne.
 14. to venture up, sich hinaufwagen.
 16. hoodwinked, (wörtl. einen Hut über den Wink) mit verbundenen Augen.
 17. to cross a torrent, über einen Gießbach setzen.
 stepping-stones, steinerne Stufen, Schrittsteine.
 20. fool-hardiness, Tollkühnheit.
 an extinguisher, ein Löschhorn, Lichthütchen.
 26. props, Stützen.
 to saw through, durchsägen.
 29. crutch, Krücke.
 31. instability, Unbeständigkeit.
 32. to pore over, vertieft seyn in.
 sun-dial, Sonnenuhr.
 33. a candle, ein Licht.
 34. I am at a loss for that, das kann ich mir nicht erklären.
39. walking-stick, Spazierstock.
 40. crooked, gekrümmt.
 43. deception, Täuschung.
 at once, sogleich.
 37. 2. shadow, Schatten.
 3. I fancy, ich bilde mir ein.
 5. sower, Sämann.
 to scatter seed, Samen austreuen.
 8. hope, Hoffnung.
 9. to reap, ärndten.
 14. luminous, leuchtend, licht.
 15. brightness, Glanz.
 16. straightness, Geradheit.
 a plum-line, Senfblei.
 18. uprightness, Aufrichtigkeit.
 19. rectitude, Redlichkeit.
 20. stability, Dauer.
 pillar, Säule.
 21. to disentangle, loswickeln.
 to reel off, abwinden, abhaspeln.
 perplexed, verworren.
 skein of thread, (auch skain geschr.) Strang Zwirn oder Garn.
 24. brooding, brütend.
 30. demurely, ernsthaft.
 31. bridle, Zügel.
 33. confinement, Einschränkung.
 36. discretion, Besonnenheit.
- 6) Ueberwundene Abneigung.
38. 6. estate, Landgut.
 10. to spoil, verderben.
 11. I am sorry, es thut mir Leid.
 12. to agree, übereinstimmen.
 16. a sportsman, ein Jagdliebhaber.
 to join in an association, Mitglied eines Vereins werden.
 17. the game, das Wild.
 18. club, et. Kolbe, Keule, daher etwas durch Vereinigung Starkes, ein Klub, geschlossene Gesellschaft.
 21. a close unsociable temper, ein verschlossenes ungeselliges Gemüth.
22. niggardly, knickrig, geizig.
 24. his style of living, der Aufwand für seine Haushaltung.
 25. petty economy, kleinliche Sparsamkeit.
 26. charity, Wohlthätigkeit.
 27. it was but, es war erst.
 34. well stocked, wohl besetzt.
 deer, Rothwild.
 35. venison, Fleisch von Hochwild.
 36. frugal, sparsam.
 38. mutton, Hammelfleisch.
 39. to be sure, allerdings.
 41. to bear ill-will, einem übel wollen.
39. 1. he is wrong, er hat Unrecht.
 4. to have a horse upon sale, ein Pferd zum Verkauf aussetzen.
 the other day, neulich, vor Kurzem.
 5. to take a liking to, Lust bekommen zu.
 to be about, nahe daran seyn, im Begriff seyn.
 6. fair, (frz. foire) Jahrmarkt.
 to be passionately fond of, ein leidenschaftlicher Freund seyn von.
 9. to take a longing for, ein Verlangen haben nach.
 a cutting of a plant, ein Ableger von einer Pflanze.

10. his, der seinige.
I own, ich gebe zu, gestehe.
12. to charge one, einem den Auftrag geben.
on no account, unter keinen Umständen.
13. to turn off a man, einen aus dem Dienste jagen.
saucy behaviour, troziges, freches (wörtl. gesalzenes) Betragen.
15. upon his submission, wenn er sich reumüthig zeigen würde.
17. civil, höflich, artig.
to apply to, sich wenden an.
18. a character, Zeugniß (eines Dienstboten).
to entertain, Unterhalt verschaffen, in Dienst nehmen.
19. a gentleman, ein feingebildeter Mann.
20. to be rid of one, einen los haben.
I am concerned, ich bedaure.
25. he was burnt out, sein Haus brannte ab.
28. to make up a loss, einen Verlust ersetzen.
34. the very next day, schon am nächsten Tag.
36. to call upon one, einen besuchen.
to take up one's case, sich für jemanden verwenden.
40. relief, Unterstützung.
41. a draught upon a banker, eine Anweisung auf einen Bankier.
43. I am my own man again, ich bin wieder mein eigener Herr, wieder der Alte.
44. to purchase, kaufen.
cart, Karren, Bauernwagen.
a team of horses, ein Gespann Pferde.
40. 1. gift, Gabe, Geschenk (vgl. Mitgift).
6. foible, (spr. foibl, nicht fäbl) Schwäche.
7. I was mistaken, ich irrte mich.
to wrong one, einem Unrecht thun.
it is a pity, es ist Schade.
10. trifle, Kleinigkeit.
matters of consequence, Sachen von Wichtigkeit.
11. 'tis statt it is.
12. exertion, Anstrengung.
21. the plant would not move safely, die Pflanze würde sich nicht mit Sicherheit versetzen lassen.
24. a seedling, ein junges Pflänzchen, Sößling.
26. a note, ein Billet.
28. methinks, mich dünkt, statt I think, ich denke.
42. 2. to be acquainted, befaunt werden, Bekannte sich erwerben.
5. asunder, (et. abgesondert) aus einander.
20. to mend, sich verbessern.
23. I am likely to get it, ich werde die Stelle wahrscheinlich erhalten.
27. his interest, sein Einfluß.
to carry it, den Sieg davon tragen.
30. of his own accord, aus eigenem Antrieb.
on account of party, aus (politischen) Partheirücksichten.
35. the trustees of a school, das Directorium einer Schule.
affected, gerührt.
38. to breathe, athmen.
43. 12. to acknowledge, anerkennen.
13. errand, Botschaft; hier: beabsichtigter Besuch.
17. exeunt, lat. sie gehen ab.
41. 1. as fine as needs be, so schön als es nur seyn kann.
sound, gesund.
3. mare, (Mähre) Stute.
10. to alter, verändern.
11. after all, demnach.

DRITTER ABSCHNITT.

Erzählungen.

1) Beide Seiten einer Frage.

44. 2. knight-errantry, die irrenden Ritter.
paganism, Heidenthum.
5. to rest, ruhen.
11. a knight, (et. Knecht) Ritter.
14. to stop, anhalten, stehen bleiben.
15. workmanship, Arbeit, Ausarbeitung.
18. strictly, genau, aufmerksam.
24. temptation, Versuchung.
devotion, Ehrfurcht.
25. date, Datum.
26. above three years, mehr als drei Jahre.
27. smile, Lächeln.

28. to deliver, aussprechen.
29. challenge, Herausforderung zum Zweikampf.
45. 2. the rests, Lanzenstüb.
to fix the spear in the rests, die Lanze einlegen.
flew, von to fly, fliegen.
3. impetuosity, Ungestüm.
shock, Zusammenstoß.
rude, (roh) gewaltsam.
4. blow, Stoß, Schlag.
5. bruised, verstaucht.
6. a trance, Betäubung, Erstarrung.
7. Druid, Druiden, Priester der alten Britonen.
9. a sovereign balsam, ein Universalbalsam.

10. skilful, geschickt.
11. to staunch (besser stanch) the blood, das Blut stillen, hemmen.
12. as it were, gleichsam.
14. why, je nun.
15. yonder, jener, der dort.
18. a sigh, ein Seufzer.
19. brethren, Brüder.
either of you, jeder von euch beiden.
22. bloodshed, Blutvergießen.
to avoid, verhindern.
24. to entreat, flehentlich bitten.
26. fairly, billigerweise, unpartheiisch.

2) Der Fleiß des Demosthenes.

31. to be affected by, Eindruck erhalten von.
32. thenceforth, von dort an.
35. improvement, Verbesserung, Fortschritt.
36. essay, Versuch.
guardian, Vormund, Pfleger.
to refund, zurückbezahlen.
40. notwithstanding, ungeachtet.
a period, ein Satz.
40. to be hissed, ausgezischt werden.
46. 1. to withdraw, sich zurückziehen, entfernen.
2. actor, Schauspieler.
4. dejected, niedergeschlagen.

8. graces, Grazie, Anmuth.
9. gesture, Geberde.
13. defect of utterance, Fehler im Sprechen.
16. to surmount, überwinden.
18. the art he studied, (nämlich Rhetorik, also konnte er das r nicht aussprechen).
20. to overcome, überwinden.
21. pebble, Kieselstein.
26. harangue, Rede (aus dem althochdeutsch. hrinc, Ring, Kreis, also Rede vor einem Menschenkreise).
27. roar, Gebrüll.
29. action, Haltung (Agiren).

30. looking-glass, Spiegel.
33. to shrug up the shoulders, die Achseln in die Höhe ziehen.
to practise, einüben.
34. pulpit, (lat. pulpitem, Bretergerüst) Catheder, Kanzel.
rostrum¹⁾, Rednerbühne.
35. a halbert²⁾, Hellebarde.
41. to shave, abrasiren.
on purpose, absichtlich.
44. to go abroad, ausgehen.
47. 1. to smell at the oil, nach dem Del riechen.
to imply, um anzudeuten.
elaborate, künstlich oder mühsam ausgearbeitet.

¹⁾ Lat. rostrum, Schnabel, Schiffsschnabel, von den an den Rednerbühnen angebrachten erbeuteten Schiffsschnäbeln. ²⁾ Frz. hallebarde, vom goth. barta, Beil, Art; eigentl. helmharte, Helm zerhauende Art.

3) **Neid und Wetteifer.**

17. as so much taken from himself, als wäre ihm ebensoviel entzogen.
 18. to gain credit, sich Ruhm, Achtung erwerben.
 19. to decry, beschreiben.
 20. to throw out insinuations, Winke hinwerfen, (insgeheim) zu verstehen geben.
 22. to affect, vorgeben, sich stellen.
 a lucky hit, ein Glückswurf.
 24. proficient, einer der Fortschritte gemacht hat.
 a young proficient in the art, ein angehender Künstler.
 26. performance, Arbeit.
 27. to bestow, verleihen.
 31. designing-room, Zeichnungs-saal.
 35. attempt, Versuch.
 37. to become sensible, wahrnehmen.
 41. anniversary of the day, Jahrestag.
 42. to award prizes, Preise austheilen.
 48. 2. to heighten, erhöhen.
 varnish, Firniß.
 4. to contrive, (altfranz. controuver, Mittel finden, erdichten, veranstalten. artfully, hinterlistigerweise. to convey drops, Tropfen einfließen lassen, einschütten. phial, (φιάλη, Schale) Gläschen, Pbsole.
 5. caustic, (καυστικός, brennend) ägend, zerfressend.
 14. curtain, Vorhang. behold, siehe da!
 16. blotched, beschmutzt.
 17. youth, Jüngling. to burst into an agony of grief, in ein Jammergeschrei ausbrechen.
 18. to betray, verrathen. to be undone, verloren seyn. little less, kaum weniger.
 20. exquisite, vortrefflich, köstlich.
 23. to adjudge the prize, den Preis zuerkennen.
 27. to defraud, betrügen. hereafter, in Zukunft.
 28. fair competition, ehrliche Mitbewerbung. treachery, Verrath.
 30. encomium, (spätlat. Wort) Lobrede.

4) **Beispiele kindlicher Liebe.**

36. to proscribe, ächten.
 37. triumvirate, (Dreierherrschaft, Regierung von drei Männern).
 41. mutually, wechselseitig, gegenseitig.
 to condole, beklagen.
 49. 3. ample, reichlich.
 4. informer, Angeber, Denunziant.
 5. of course, natürlich.
 8. disappointment, enttäuschung, gescheiterte Hoffnung.
 11. groan, Stöhnen. to extort, auspressen.
 13. amazing, erstaunlich.
 20. tears, Zähren, Thränen.
 24. to behead, enthaupten.
 26. to record, überliefern.
 27. languishing, dahinschwachtend.
 39. tribe, Tribus, eine Abtheilung des röm. Volkes (anfangs 3, zuletzt 35).
 40. aedileship, das Amt eines Aedil, Aufschrift über öffentliche Gebäude und Besorgung der öffentlichen Schauspiele.
 41. to defray, bestreiten.
 42. shows, Festlichkeiten.
 50. 3. sports, Spiele.

5) **Crichton 1).**

9. to fence, fechten. bound, Sprung.
 antagonist, (griech.) Gegner.
 14. challenge, Herausforderung.
 the learned, die Gelehrten.
 20. reach, Bereich.
 29. an extempore poem, ein Gedicht aus dem Stegreif.
 31. unpremeditated, nicht vorher überdacht.
 commendation, Lob, Empfehlung.
 33. stupendous, erstaunlich.
 34. accomplishment, Bildungszweig.
 it becomes, es geziemt.
 39. to exhibit, zur Schau tragen.
 skill in horsemanship, Geschicklichkeit im Reiten.
 40. match, Wettstreit. tilting, Lanzenstechen.
 41. game, Spiel.
 51. 2. dice, Würfel. tennis 2), Ballspiel.
 lampoon 3), Pasquill, Spottgedicht.

1) James Crichton, einer der merkwürdigsten frühreifen Menschen, war geb. 1551 in Schottland, und starb 1583. Er stammte aus der königl. Familie der Stuarts. 2) Dies Wort wird von Skinner, (und nach ihm von Gilpert) vom frz. tenez, haltet! laßt den Ball nicht fallen! abgeleitet, das beim Ballspiel in Frankreich ausgerufen wird. 3) Wird von Gilpert von lambeau, Lumpen abgeleitet, kommt aber wahrscheinlich vom frz. lampons, Trinklied, welches eigentlich der Imperativ von lamper, laßt uns aussaufen, ist. Das Wort Pasquill, frz. pasquinade, kommt vom it. pasquino her, so heißt nämlich eine verstümmelte Bildsäule zu Rom, an welche man gewöhnlich satirische Anschlagzettel hing.

3. Sorbonne ¹⁾.
 4. tavern, Weinschenke.
 a retentive memory, ein behaltjames, treues Gedächtniß.
 9. recital, Hersagen.
 15. to stake, im Spiele setzen.
 16. pistole, span. Goldmünze.
 to mount the stage, die Bühne besteigen.
 17. reluctance, Widerwillen.

20. to ward a pass, einen Sieb oder Stoß pariren.
 to waste, vergeuden.
 22. to thrust through, durchstoßen, durchbohren.
 26. tutor, Hofmeister, Erziehender.
 27. loose, locker.
 turbulent, stürmisch.
 29. carnival, (it. carnevale, wörtl. Fleisch verschlingen, im Gegensatz zur Fastenzeit).

- to ramble, (lat. perambulare) herumschwärmen.
 31. address, Gewandtheit.
 32. leader, Anführer.
 33. pupil, (Pflögsohn) Zögling, vom lat. pupillus, unmündiger Waise.
 34. instigated, aufgestachelt.
 38. mourning, Trauer (von ahd. mornan, trauern, verwandt mit murren und lat. moerere, trauern).

6) Aussprüche berühmter Männer.

52. 5. to inculcate, einschärfen.
 to train up, auferziehen.
 8. motto, (it. motto, Wort).

22. a man of sense, ein verständiger Mann.
 33. to aggravate, schwerer machen, übertreiben.

- beyond bounds, über alle Grenzen hinaus.
 36. load, Ladung, Last.

7) Der goldene Mittelweg.

53. 2. drought, (spr. drout) Trockenheit (von dry).
 3. faint, (vom irischen faine, schwach werden) matt, ohnmächtig.
 4. boundary, Grenzen.
 5. to pant, schwachen, feischen (vom frz. panteler, feischen, et. lat. pantex, Wanst).
 7. to chirp, (zirpen) zwitschern.
 to bleat, blöcken.

10. sheaf, Garbe.
 13. breeze, (frz. brise, it. brezza, leichter rauher Wind) Brise, leichter Wind.
 14. spice, (frz. epice, vom spätlat. species für Speereien) Gewürze.
 20. scarcity, (von scarce, et. farg) Mangel.
 21. suffocation, Ersticken.
 26. to bubble up, aufwallen.
 27. rill, (lat. rivulus) Bächlein.

- meadow, (et. Matte) Wiese.
 28. fragrance, Wohlgeruch (spätlat. fragrantia, Geruch).
 29. to quench, löschen.
 35. to repine, (verwdt. mit Pein, franz. peine, lat. poena) mißvergnügt seyn, murren.
 41. mean, gemein, niedrig.
 54. 3. mound, Damm.
 5. to sweep away, weg-raffen.

8) Verschiedene und übereinstimmende Ansichten.

13. charity children, Armenfinder.
 to throng in, hereindrängen.
 15. meeting-house, Bethaus (der dissentirenden Gemeinden).
 alley, Gäßchen.
 17. to dip, tauchen.
 19. Quaker, von to quake, zittern, weil sie bei ihren göttl. Eingebungen in ein Zittern gerathen.
 attire, Kleidung.
 20. sedate, gesetzt.
 23. Methodist, Anhänger der von John Wesley gegründeten Secte.

- meanly habited, schlicht gekleidet.
 24. demeanour, Benehmen.
 25. Baptist, Täufer, Secte, deren Kinder bei der Taufe untergetaucht werden.
 27. service, Gottesdienst.
 to resound, widerhallen.
 responsive prayers, Responsorien, Gebete, die die Gemeinde laut spricht.
 32. strains of music, Melodien.
 tinkling, Geflingel.
 35. mental devotion, geistige, innere Andacht.
 40. whisper, Geflüster.

55. 20. congregation, Gemeinde.
 22. promiscuously, unter einander vermischt.
 it chanced, der Zufall wollte.
 23. a fit of apoplexy, ein Schlaganfall.
 he lay for dead, er lag wie todt da.
 25. beholder, Zuschauer.
 26. to flock round, sich schaarenweise um einen drängen)
 27. Churchman, ein Anhänger der Landeskirche (anglikan. Hochkirche).

¹⁾ Berühmte Schule der Theologie zu Paris, im 13. Jahrhundert von Robert Sorbon gegründet.

28. to lift, in die Höhe heben.

a Dissenter, ein Abtrünniger von der anglikanischen

Hochkirche, ein Dissenter.

29. to wipe, abwischen.

30. smelling bottle, Riechfläschchen.

assiduously, eifrig, emsig.

32. comfort, trösten.

9) Edle Rache.

38. faction, Partei.

56. to subvert, umwerfen.

4. lenity, Milde.

8. void, (franz. vide) leer, entblößt.

10. to convey, vorbringen.

11. a mechanic, ein Handwerker.

to trample upon, mit Füßen treten.

13. to be doomed, vom Schicksal verdammt sein.

14. to shrink into, zurücksinken.

15. to sting, (stung, stung) anstacheln.

to forbear, unterlassen.

19. to make obeisance, sich verbeugen.

23. wreck, Trümmer.

36. frame, Körperbau.

37. cheek, Wange.

39. to eye, anschauen.

45. ransom, Lösegeld, (aus frz. redemption und lat. redemptio, Loskaufung).

57. 2. to check, Einhalt thun, bändigen.

5. corsair, (vom franz. courir, qui court la mer) Seeräuber, Corsar.

10. a suit of apparel, Ausrüstung in Kleidern.

12. fetters, Fesseln.

14. the flutter, (ethym. Ge-flatter) Unruhe.

18. to dispatch business, Geschäfte abfertigen.

20. to ingratiate one's self with, sich bei einem beliebt machen.

25. to fit out, ausrüsten.

to slip, schlüpfen lassen.

36. to pour out, ausgießen.

39. transport, Entzücken.

42. to founder, scheitern, stranden.

58. 2. scorn, Schmach.

9. to cancel, vernichten¹⁾.

18. to apprise, benachrichtigen.

14. genuine, ächt (vom lat. genuinus, angeborn, unverfälscht).

10) Die zwei Brüder.

23. design, Plan.

to solicit, ersuchen.

25. share, Antheil.

28. to dissuade, abreden.

30. the succeeding, das Gelingen.

31. to agree, übereinkommen.

38. plough, Pflug.

harrow, Egge.

tool, Werkzeuge.

41. to expostulate, rechten. prosperous, günstig.

59. 1. to put into a port, in einen Hafen einlaufen.

3. pickaxe, Spikart.

shovel, Schaufel.

to dig, graben.

to refine, läutern.

5. to hire, miethen.

7. stout, stark.

harness, Geschirr.

16. he could not help, er konnte nicht umhin.

17. bore, (Imp. von to bear) tragen.

19. to divert, belustigen.

20. farm, Gut.

21. to raise cucumbers, Gurken ziehen.

22. lad, Bursche.

23. good luck, gut Glück.

30. to scorch, senken, verbrennen.

skin, Haut.

30. ore, Erz.

40. berry, Beere.

42. to crawl, kriechen.

60. 1. to toil, hart arbeiten.

2. husbandry, Landwirthschaft.

6. to prosper beyond etc. besser fortkommen als.

7. to yield, abwerfen.

10. at leisure times, in Musestunden.

21. bark, Rinde.

23. agreement, Uebereinkunft.

24. to interfere with, sich mischen in.

20. to accomodate, aus-helfen.

32. exorbitant, übertrieben.

34. to purchase, kaufen.

41. to resent, übel nehmen.

11) Früh aufstehen.

61. 21. of course, natürlich.

23. to trot, traben.

to overtake, einholen.

26. degeneracy, Ausartung, Verderbtheit.

32. fashionable, gewöhnlich, der Mode gemäß.

33. the fashionables, die Vornehmen.

40. crown, Kronenthaler.

42. abuse, Zauf.

62. 1. noon, Mittag.

2. to manage one's business, zu Werke gehen.

3. to mind, sich bekümmern.

¹⁾ franz. canceller, etwas Geschriebenes durchstreichen, et. frz. cancel mittellat. cancellus, Gitterchor (daher Kanzel) also "en barrant ou croisant l'écriture à traits de plume" mit Gitterstrichen durchstreichen.

4. threats, Drohungen.
Ibid him begone (be gone)
ich hieß ihn sich packen.
6. to comply, willfahren,
nachgeben.
14. docks, Schiffsdocken. 63. 1. axle, Achse.
anvil, Amboss.
15. blacksmith, Grob-
schmied.
16. I am for, ich trachte
darnach.
22. viz. abgefürzt vom lat.
videlicet, nämlich (NB. ge-
sprochen wird es entweder
to wit [zu wissen] oder
namely, oft auch vide-
licet.)
64. 1. study, Studirzimmer.
3. rumination, Nachsinnen.
5. shrill, durchdringend.
10. to dislocate, verrenken,
ausrenken.
13. mongrel, von gemisch-
ter Race, gemein.
puppy, Welf, junger Hund.
butler, Mundschenk, Keller-
meister.
16. to disencumber, ent-
ledigen.
tail, Schwanz.
18. mutilation, Verstümme-
lung.
33. shavings, Hobelspäne.
thatch, Strohdach.
35. to plane, hobeln.
38. hole, Loch.
deal, Brett.
40. engine, Maschine.
wedge, Keil.
mallet, Schlägel.
41. to crush, zerschmettern.
65. 1. trick, Streich, Kunst-
stück.
awkward, plump, tölpisch.
4. to hoot after, nach-
schreien.
5. to urge, treiben, drängen.
6. pale, Pfahl, Einspählung. 66. 6. breeches, Hosen.
asunder, auseinander.
29. to fit, anordnen, an-
passen.
43. clock, Wanduhr.
45. weight and string,
Gewicht und Schnur.
63. 1. axle, Achse.
2. wire, Draht.
brass, Messing.
3. to revolve, sich um-
drehen, umwälzen.
to set up, verursachen.
8. tingling, Klingeln.
to set a ringing zum Läu-
ten bringen.
16. to parley, parlamen-
tiren, unterhandeln.
- 12) Gegen Thierquälerei.
clog, Bengel (zum Hemmen
des Laufes der Thiere).
10. to worry, erwürgen.
mastiff, Bullenbeißer.
13. foam, Schaum.
14. brains, Gehirn.
flail, Dreschflegel.
16. to maim, verstümmeln.
carcase, Aas, Leichnam.
16. bullfinch, Gimpel, Blut-
fink.
17. to hatch, ausheken,
ausbrüten.
to soar, schweben, sich auf-
schwingen.
19. denizen, freier Bürger
to fledge, flügge werden.
20. wicked, gottlos.
to grasp, greifen.
26. rent, Hauszins.
29. to dread, fürchten.
30. gripe, Druck, Griff.
urchin, loser Bube.
fondness, Zärtlichkeit.
31. resentment, Rache.
42. knitting-needle, Strick-
nadel.
44. to drag, schleppen.
45. wires, Drahtgitter.
3. cock-chaffer, Maikäfer.
66. 6. breeches, Hosen.
8. grin, Grinsen.
- 13) Proceßiren.
Stier. Das engl. steer ist
bloß ein junger Ochse.
ferry, (to fare, fahren)
Ueberfahrt, Fähre; ferry-
boat, die Fähre, Ueber-
fahrtsboot.
17. to dash, zerschlagen.
18. to remind, einen erin-
nern an u.
20. to put out of the way,
entfernt halten.
22. veil, Schleier.
23. hardship, Beschwerde.
24. to transgress, über-
schreiten.
29. to cherish, unterhalten,
pflegen.
40. to prevail, herrschen,
bestehen.
38. to dwell, verweilen.
39. besetting, um sich greifend
40. cable, Ankertau.
9. to empale, spießen.
corking-pin, die größte
Art Stecknadeln.
23. to snatch up, auf-
schnappen, ergreifen.
- dung-fork, Mistgabel.
- pan, Pfanne.
29. trifler, fader Mensch,
Ländler.
- brink, Rand.
31. to whistle, pfeifen.
- barbed hook, Widerhaken.
33. to writhe, sich früm-
men (vor Schmerzen).
35. vital, lebendig, voll
Leben.
36. bait, Lockspeise, Köder.
45. lobster, Hummer, Meer-
krebs.
67. 1. wheel, Rad.
2. to roast, braten.
to skin, die Haut abziehen.
3. frying pan, Bratpfanne.
to scourge, geißeln.
4. wanton, wollüstig.
5. rabble, Pöbel.
6. amanuensis, Schreiber.
7. to tickle, figeln.
wrist, Handgelenke.
9. flea, Floh.
14. monitor, Ermahner.
20. to throb, beben.
26. to twist, (et. zwirnen,
r u. s verwandeln sich öf-

ter wie lost, verloren, chosen, erkoren) flechten. rope-fashion, nach Art eines Seiles.

28. dinner, Mittagessen, vom alten Tischgebet: dig-nare, Domine etc., daher mittellat. dignerium, disnerium, it. desinare, frz. dîner.

31. to spy, spähen, franz. espier, spioniren, die vielen Participien Präf. sind als Nachahmung des Gerichts- und Advokatenstils. turnip, Rübe, (Brassica rapa, L).

32. to scramble, flettern. 33. meal, Mahl, Mahlzeit, (auch feines Mehl).

34. mooring, das Anker, moorings, Hafenanfer, Ankerplatz, von moor, das Moor, der Morast, untiefe, seichte Stelle, zum Anker passend.

to float, (et. fluten) auf dem Wasser schwimmen.

36. to toss, stoßen, hin u. herwerfen.

37. action, Rechtshandel, Prozeß; to bring (enter od. lay) an action against, eine Klage wider Jemand eingeben, einen gerichtlich belangen.

30. trial, (von to try, versuchen, prüfen), Probe, Verhör, gerichtliche Untersuchung.

versus, (lat.) gegen. In

engl. Proceßsachen steht dieses lat. Wort zwischen Kläger und Angeklagte.

41. my Lord, Richter werden als lords angesprochen.

68.1. jury, (vom frz. jurer) Geschworene, Schwurgericht.

counsel, Anwalt.

2. indict, (spr. indeit) lat. indictus gerichtlich belangen¹⁾.

5. coach, (vom frz. coche, Landkutsche, lat. concha, Muschel) Kutsche.

8. thinkable, denkbar, ein für diese Gelegenheit geschmiedetes Wort.

10. guilty, (angels. gylt, prov. Gülte, Geldschuld, Steuer) schuldig im moral. Sinn.

11. bull ist hier ein Wortspiel, denn in diesem Sinne heißt es ein Widerspruch, ein Fehler; Schulausdruck: Bock, Schnitzer²⁾.

13. nonsuited, abgewiesen, (vom franz. suivre) nicht verfolgt, daher nonsuit, Aufhebung oder Zurückweisung einer Klage.

18. overrule, (überwältigen, überwiegen) als ungünstig verwerfen.

20. colour, (Wortspiel) colour, Farbe, to colour, färben, beschönigen, Anstrich geben.

22. reference, Verweisung. award, Urtheil.

14) Abenteuer eines Maurers.

69.1. adventure, Abenteuer, (lat. advenire) herzukommen, daher it. avventurare, durch Zufall zu etwas kommen, etwas unternehmen, auch das deutsche Abenteuer stammt davon her.

mason, Maurer; frz. maçon, it. mazzone, urspr. megen = schneiden, hauen, daher Steinmeg, Megger, megeln.

3. Saint Monday, der h.

23. acquit, (frz. quitter, verlassen) lossprechen.

26. water-bailif, Flußinspektor, ein Beamter, der den Fischhandel beaufsichtigt und den Flußzoll einnimmt.

27. to issue, (altfrz. issir, it. uscire, lat. exire ausgehen) erlassen.

28. travers, auch traverse, Rechtseinwand, Führung des Gegenbeweises. Die Aufeinanderhäufung dieser Wörter ist ironisch; whereas kommt besonders in der Gerichtssprache vor, wie unser altd. sintemal.

30. compos mentis, (lat.) zurechnungsfähig, einer, der seines Verstandes mächtig ist.

31. to administer an oath, einem einen Eid abnehmen. settle, (festsetzen) in Ordnung bringen.

attorney, (latein. ad, zu, torno, wenden) eine Person, an die man sich wendet, daher Anwalt, Advokat.

33. charter, Gesetzesurkunde.

34. record, Dokument, Urkunde.

36. nicety, Subtilität, Spitzfindigkeit.

37. quibbling, (von quib oder quip, Stich, daher to quip, sticheln), in Wortspielen reden, witzeln.

Montag, d. i. machte einen blauen Montag.

5. earn, (ärnten, lat. arare, ackern) hier: verdienen.

6. to rouse, gewaltsam aufwecken.

knock, klopfen, et. knacken,

¹⁾ Dieß geschieht zuerst in Folge des Ortspolizeiverhörs, sodann kommt es vor die Grand Jury, 24 angesehene, eidlich verpflichtete Männer, die nach Abhörnung der Zeugen und Zeugnisse zu bestimmen haben, ob Grund der Zulässigkeit einer Anklage da sei oder nicht; auf ihr Urtheil hin findet erst das Hauptverhör vor dem Gerichtshof und der Common Jury, oder den 12 Geschworenen statt, die das Schuldig oder Unschuldig auszusprechen haben. ²⁾ Dieser Ausdruck kommt von der päpstlichen Bulle her, die die Engländer für alles das hielten.

schallen, einen schlagenden Schall verursachen, mit einem Schall zerbrechen.

7. behold, (den Blick auf etw. hinhalten) anschauen. tall, lang, hoch, groß, schlank ¹⁾.

meagre, mager, (μακρός, ausgedehnt, lang, lat. macer, frz. maigre).

8. hark, hörchen.

ye, ältere Form von you.

10. a job, kleine Arbeit, (frz. coup, Stieb, Schlag; daher eine niedrige, unbedeutende Arbeit, die gleichsam mit Einem Schlag abgemacht werden kann).

11. Señor, das spanische für it. Signor, engl. Sir.

16. priest, (franz. prêtre, von presbyter, προσβύτερος von προσβύς, alt, die Älteren der Kirche), Priester.

lane, enge Gasse.

18. key, (frz. clef, latein. clavis) Schlüssel.

creak, knarren.

winding, sich windend, frumm.

lock, Schloß (an der Thüre etc.), altnord. loka, Riegel, frz. loquet, Klinke, etwas, was niederfällt und durch das Niederfallen verschließt.

20. bolt, Riegel, et. Bolze, βολτς, Pfeil, von der pfeilartigen Form, to bolt, riegelein.

corridor, (ital. corridore, von correre, laufen, wie Gang von gehen); Flurgang.

22. dimly, matt, spärlich beleuchtet, et. dämmern.

25. vault, (frz. voûte, it. volta, vom latein. volvo, drehen, woher auch wölben kommt), das Gewölbe.

39. mansion, (lat. mansio, Aufenthalt, Wohnung, frz. maison), hauptf. großes Gebäude.

ghastly, (von ghost, Geist) geisterhaft, entsetzlich.

40. portly, (vom franz. porter, also tragfähig, große Erhabenheit im Aeußern zeigend), stattlich. jar, (it. giara, frz. jarre), irdener Krug.

1. pavement, (lat. pavementum) Estrich, aus Steinchen, Erde und Kalk dicht geschlagener Boden, daher Pflaster.

obliterate, (lat. oblitero) etwas Geschriebenes ausstreichen, auslöschen; überhaupt verwischen, vertilgen.

4. maze, Labyrinth, von missen, wo man den Weg leicht missen kann.

alley, (franz. allée, Gang) Gäßchen, Durchhaus.

6. toll, (lat. tollō, in die Höhe heben), tolling a bell, Anziehen einer Glocke, daher läuten.

matins, (lat. matutinus) die Mette, Gottesdienst bei Anbruch des Tages.

11. peal, (lat. pello, in Bewegung setzen) Glockenschall.

16. Xenil, (spr. Chenil) Fluß, der an Granada vorbeifließt.

he made the best of his way, ging so schnell als möglich.

16. holidays, heilige Tage, Feiertage.

17. gaunt, mager, dürr, et. zweifelhaft, vielleicht von to wane, u. der Verfallsge, abnehmen, altd. wānen, woher Wahn = leer, irrig, wie in Wahnsinn, Wahnkorn, Wahnwitz.

ragged, lumpicht, von rag, (ράκος), Lumpen, Lappen. crew, Bande, Schaar ²⁾.

gipsy, Zigeuner, aus Egyptian.

18. hovel, kleine Hütte, (et. das Höfel, kleiner Hof).

to accost, (frz. accoster, lat. costa, Rippe, Seite) zu einem hintreten, einen anreden.

19. curmudgeon, ein Geizhals, Knicker ³⁾.

20. griping, (von to gripe, greifen), also wörtl. zugreifend, alles erhaschend, habfüchtig.

landlord, (lord, zus.gez. aus dem angl. laford, pers. Ursprungs) der Herr des Landes, Gutsbesitzer, u. im engeren Sinn Hausherr, Wirth.

21. shagged, zottig, rauh. eyebrows, Augenbraue, (Augenbraune ist die verderbte Form).

27. decay, (frz. déchoir, lat. cadere, fallen) Verfall, Abnahme.

29. contrive, ausfinden.

patch, (it. pezzo, Fegen, Stück), daher to patch up, mit Lappen bedecken, flicken, ausbessern; prov. patschen.

37. miserly, geizig, Adj. von miser, (latein. miser) ein elender Mensch, Geizhals.

41. friar, (frz. frère, Klosterbruder.

44. to take the law of one, jemanden verklagen.

1.2. to groan, (et. greinen) stöhnen, seufzen.

to moan, wehklagen, winseln.

4. tenant, einer, der eine Wohnung oder ein Gut

¹⁾ δολχός, lang, alt. dol, mhd. dolde, Baumwipfel, und jetzt noch Dolde, die Spitze der Gewächse; schwz. Dolder, Hauptast eines Baums. In tall liegt auch meistens nur die Idee von lang, schlank, Höhe, zu Grunde, a tall pine, a tall chimney, a tall man, aber nicht a tall mountain. ²⁾ Hilpert leitet es vom frz. crue, Anwachs, ab, aber viel wahrsch. kommt es wie crowd, Menschenmenge, vom Gleichen bedeutenden angl. cruth, Gesellschaft. ³⁾ Nach Johnson vom frz. coeur méchant, aber wahrsch. vom it. caramogio, Zwerg.

inne hat, ein Miethsman, Pächter.

9. to daunt, (frz. dompter, lat. domitare, bezwingen)

in Schrecken setzen, muthlos machen.

10. shape, (et. schaffen) Gestalt.

bag, (et. Pack, frz. bagage) Sack.

14. defunct, verstorben.

19. to reveal, offenbaren.

15) Die Wanderungen Godolpys, des Muschelsammlers ¹⁾.

Huy, alterthümliche Stadt an der Maas (Meuse).

to kill, tödten ²⁾.

wages (frz. gage), Lohn.

powder and shot, Pulver u. Blei.

foreign, fremd (aus fremdem Lande, vom it. forestiere, von fuori, lat. foras, nach außen); synonym. strange, fremd, überh. unbekannt.

war, Krieg ³⁾.

saving, ausgenommen.

72.4. gate, Thor, Thüre, wahrsch. mit Gatter, Gitter, verwdt.

buoyant, hehend, erhebend ⁴⁾. 73. league, die franz. Lieue = 3 engl. Meilen.

season, frz. saison, vom lat. satio, das Säen, also eigentl. Saatzeit, dann überh. Jahreszeit.

prolific (lat. von proles u. facio), fruchtbar.

forenoon, Vormittag, noon, Mittag, vom lat. nona, die neunte Stunde, Hauptmahlzeit (coena) der Römer, u. daher zur Bezeichnung des Mittagessens u. der Mittagszeit überh.

leisure (frz. loisir, vom

lat. licet, es ist erlaubt, steht frei), freie Zeit, Muße.

gloomy, (angels. glommung, Dämmerung, prov. glumm), düster.

to handle, anfassen, berühren. Rhenish, Rheinwein.

dawn, (vom urspr. to dayen, tagen, dämmern), Dämmerung.

a square, wörtl. Quadrat, viereckiger Platz, freier Platz in einer Stadt.

to muffle, einmuffeln, ver mummen, einhüllen.

flurried, beunruhigt, bestürzt (verwdt. mit dem nordd. flirren = einen zitternden Schein oder Glanz von sich werfen).

to seize, ergreifen (frz. saisir, das vom ahd. sezzan, setzen, abstammt, zuerst in Besitz setzen, u. dann in Besitz nehmen).

poniard, Dolch (frz. poignard, von poing, lat. pugnus, die Faust).

blow, Schlag, Streich, Stoß (et. bläuen = schlagen, das nicht von blau her stammt, sondern vom goth.

bliggvan, ahd. blivan, pluan, schlagen).

slight, et. schlicht, schlecht, vom geringem Werthe, gering, leicht.

struggle, Abmühung, Kampf (verwdt. mit straucheln u. streichen = hauen, schlagen, einen Streich versetzen).

to wrest, einem etwas aus der Hand ringen (angels. wraestan, prov. wreußen).

hilt (von halten), das Heft, Gefäß an einem Degen.

madness, Tollheit; mad, thöricht, wahnsinnig, vom

it. matto, μάτος, μάταιος.

to waver, schwanken, unentschlüssig sein, von wave, Woge.

to witness, Zeuge sein, (vom altengl. to wit, wissen.)

customer, Kunde (von custom), frz. coutume, lat. consuetudo, Gewohnheit.)

74.6. galley, Galeere, frz. galère, it. galea, galera, mittell.

galca, Seeschiff, γαῦλος, Lastschiff, lat. gaulus, phöniz. Rauffahrteischiff.

scaffold, Schaffot ⁵⁾

¹⁾ Rüttich besitzt eine der größten Muschelsammlungen der Welt, die sie dem unermüdlischen Eifer des Sieur Godolphe verdankt, der in der Mitte des vorigen Jahrh. lebte u. dessen Schicksale H. D. Inglis in seinen 'Einsamen Wanderungen durch viele Länder', angeblich nach einer von Godolph selbst verfaßten Lebensschilderung, in dem hier aufgenommenen Stücke beschrieben hat. ²⁾ nach Hils. von κέλλω, treiben, lat. cello, percello, zu Boden werfen, erschüttern, schlagen, aber wahrsch. von to quell, niederdrücken, das früher auch tödten bedeutete, u. mit quälen verwdt. ist. ³⁾ it. guerra, frz. guerre, von wirren, angels. vurre = Krieg, u. nicht wie gewöhnl. abgeleitet wird von wehren, das von wahren, angels. varjan, abstammt, u. mit dem das it. guarire, frz. guérir, heilen, verwdt. ist. ⁴⁾ Von buoy, die Boje, frz. bouée, ein Stück Holz oder eine Tonne, welche durch ein Seil am Anker befestigt auf dem Wasser die Stelle des Ankers zeigt. Die Bojen dienen hauptsächlich wie die Warnpfähle zur Bezeichnung des Fahrwassers durch Untiefen u. zum Anbinden von kleineren Fahrzeugen im Hafen; to buoy, schwimmend oder flott erhalten, to be buoyed up, vom Wasser emporgehoben werden, u. figürlich durch Hoffnungen, Erwartungen erhoben werden. ⁵⁾ Merkwürdig ist es, daß das dem Fremden entlehnte Wort Schaffot einen deutschen Ursprung hat; nämlich das frz. échafaud kommt vom it. catafalco, dieses von catapalco, Schangerüst, das mit palco, Balken, zus. ges. ist.

that's f. that is.
 harkee f. hark ye, horchet!
 gallows, Galgen (angl. galga = Kreuz, Galgen).
 alternative, Wahl zwischen zwei Dingen.
 to convict, überführen, als schuldig beweisen.
 risk, Gefahr, it. risico, mlat. rescussa, eigentl. die gewaltsame Wiederholung einer Handlung.
 to share, theilen, (altd. scheeren=schneiden, theilen.)
 villain, Schurke, frz. vilain, garstig, von mlat. villanus, bäurisch.
 to turn out, eine Wendung nehmen, ausfallen.
 recollection, Wiedersammlung des Geistes, Erinnerung.
 disguise, Verkleidung, frz. déguiser, vom it. guisa, das von Weise = Art abstammt, also eine andere Weise annehmen.
 twelve years ago, vor 12 Jahren, für are gone, sind vorüber, daher ago immer hinten steht.
 to try, versuchen, untersuchen, vor Gericht bringen.
 habit, Gewohnheit.
 at all events, auf alle Fälle, jedenfalls.
 75. discrepancy, Widerstreit, Mangel an Uebereinstimmung, lat. discrepo, von crepo, rauschen, also: nicht zusammenrauschen, tönen.
 3. beam, Strahl, von beam, Baum, Balken, daher beam auch einen stärkeren, kräftigeren Strahl bedeutet, als ray.

spire, spiziger Thurm, vom lat. spira, das Gewundene, pinnacle, Zinne. (Kirch-76. lat. pinnaculum, Giebel).
 to hush, stille sein ¹⁾.
 to loiter, herumlottern, müßig umhergehen.
 to chime, von Glocken schlagen, läuten.
 chimes, Glockenspiel, das Wort wird bald von cimbul, bald vom it. chiamare, rufen, bald von chirme, churme, verworrener Lärm, abgeleitet.
 pier (frz. pierre, Stein), Pfeiler, Hafendamm.
 cable, Ankertau, Schiffsseil.
 to moor a boat, ein Boot an einen Stein, Block zc. anbinden.
 bustle, Unruh, Lärmen, Geschäftigkeit, von busy.
 to drop down a river, stromabwärts segeln, fahren.
 to drop, tropfen, herabtriefen, fig. fallen, sinken.
 fare, Fahrt, Fahrgeld.
 copeck, Kopecke ²⁾.
 pledge, Pfand, verwandt mit plight, Pflicht.
 Buda, das von der Stadt Pesth durch die Donau getrennte Dfen in Ungarn.
 noise, Lärmen, Geräusch, frz. noise, Zank, lat. nauseo, Ungereimtheiten vorbringen, die Ekel erwecken.
 swift, schnell, von to sweep, schweifen, das nordd. schwippen bezeichnet eine schnelle Bewegung überhpt.
 to cheat, betrügen (wahrschl. vom frz. acheter, kaufen.)
 to cheat of, um Etwas betr.

45 gibbet, (spr. dſhibbet). Galgen ³⁾.
 to be bound for, Schiffsausdr., die Bestimmung haben nach -- auf einen Ort gefrachtet sein.
 loath, auch loth geschr., abgeneigt, keine Lust habend; angl. lath, gehässig, et. leid.
 narrow street ⁴⁾.
 to descry, (altfrz. descrier, lat. discerno), erspähen, auskundschaften.
 shop, (et Schoppen, Schuppen, leichtes Gebäude), Kaufladen.
 to snap, (et. schnappen), — in two, entzweibrehen.
 to jerk, losreißen, durch Anlegung des Armes an die Seite etwas fortschleudern, prov. schergen, schür-gen = stoßen, daher der Scherge.
 grasp, Griff, prov. Grapfe, von grepsen, grappen = greifen.
 77. bauble, auch bawble, Spielzeug, Tand, Kleinigkeit, frz. babioles, von mlat. baubellum, Juwel, unnöthiger Schmuck.
 forceps, (lat.) Zange.
 a flaw (verwdt. mit Flecken), Bruch, Sprung, Riß, Flecken.
 roguery, Schurkenstreich, rogue verwdt. mit rake, Racker, frz. roué, Wüstling, liederlicher Mensch.
 a gap, Deffnung, Loch, eine Lücke, von to gape, gaffen, den Mund aufsperrn.
 78. on the eve of, (wörtl. am Vorabend von) nahe daran.
 traffic, Handel, (it. traffico,

¹⁾ von hush! husch! Ausrufswort, welches eine schnelle Bewegung, verbunden mit einem gewissen zischenden Schalle ausdrückt, u oft im Ob. Deutschl. um Stillschweigen zu gebieten gebraucht wird. ²⁾ Russische Scheidemünze von etwa 3¼ Pfennig. Hundert Kopecken machen einen Rubel. Der Name kommt vom russ. Kopi, Spieß, weil St. Georg mit dem Speer darauf abgeprägt ist. ³⁾ Frz. gibet, mlat. gibbetus, von wippen = an der einen Seite hinab- und auf der andern in die Höhe ziehen; daher einen Verbrecher wippen, ihn an einen Schnellgalgen aufziehen und plötzlich wieder herunterfallen lassen. ⁴⁾ Sieur Godolphe spricht von Dfen, wie es vor hundert Jahren war, statt der langen engen Straße führt jetzt eine schöne breite Straße vom Fluß in's Herz der Stadt.

von tratta, Handel, Tauschhandel, und lat. facio, machen.

quay, (frz. quai, aus dem holl. Kaai), ein mit Mauerwerk eingefasstes Ufer, Schiffslände, Kai.

crescent, (wörtl. wachsend), der zunehmende Mond, Halbmond.

to lessen, wörtl. geringer werden, in der Schiffssprache nach und nach aus dem Gesichte verlieren.

disaster, (lat. aster, Stern) Unstern, Unheil.

to double a cape, ein Cap umschiffen, wahrscheinlich rührt der Ausdr. davon her, daß man die Länge desselben doppelt durchmisst.

emporium, *εμπορίον*, Stapelplatz, Platz, wohin Seehandel getrieben wird.

hatchway, der Weg durch die Luken ¹⁾.

stern, das Hintertheil des Schiffs, auch im Deutschen Stern genannt, ohne Zweifel von to steer, steuern, weil sich das Steuerruder

hinten befindet; daher bei Shafsp. sternage statt steerage.

hold, Kielraum, Schiffsraum, von to hold, halten. aufbewahren.

gunpowder, Schießpulver, gun, vom altfrz. engin, engl. engine, mlat. ingenium, Kriegsmaschine, woher Ingenieur u. dgl.

awful, furchtbar, (von awe, angels. oga, heilige Furcht.)

glare, heller Glanz, viell. vom lat. clareo, glänzen, vgl. schwz. glaren.

to flare, schimmern, vielleicht nur andere Form von to glare oder verwdt. 80. mit Glitter = etwas glänzendes.

79. 44. pitch. Pech, lat. pix, πίσσα.

hold, Haltpunkt, to quit oder let go one's hold, das, woran man sich ge- 81. klammert hat, fahren lassen.

to crakle, knackern, knastern, knistern, ein Geräusch machen, hptschl vom Feuer gebraucht.

boom, Brausen, Knall ²⁾.

to fling, (eigentl. to set

flying, etwas fliegen machen), werfen, schleudern.

to hiss, (tonnachahmendes Wort), zischen.

spark, Funke, im nordd. auch Spark.

to drift, vom Wind oder Wasser getrieben werden.

shelving, abhängig, abschüssig, schwz. schelb, von schel = schief.

hillock, Hügelchen. ock = Diminut. z. B. bullock,

junger Bulle, Farren, paddock, kleines Gehege.

hue (angels. hiu), Farbe.

to run races, mit einander wetteifern.

bent, (von to bend, sich beugen) Richtung.

to long for, ein Verlangen nach etwas haben.

to stud, besäen ³⁾.

to wean, entwöhnen.

fretting, unruhig ⁴⁾.

to dip, tauchen, et. taufen, das ursp. ins Wasser tauchen bedeutet, it. tuffare,

δύπτης, der Taucher.

clime, poetisch für climate, Klima.

16) Forester, der junge Sonderling.

stagecoach, Landkutsche.

carrier, der Bote (als Fuhrmann).

Penrith, Stadt an der Grenze von Cumberland und Westmoreland.

82. footmann, Lackey (frz. la-

quais vom altd. läcken = laufen).

drawing-room, der Gesellschafts-saal ⁵⁾.

threadbare, fadenscheinig, abgetragen.

to abash, (vom frz. abaisser), verlegen machen, beschämen.

laird, schott. für lord, Herr, Gutsherr, Grundherr.

Mackenzie ⁶⁾.

Levaillant, berühmter Reisender.

¹⁾ Die viereckigen Löcher in den Berdecken, welche mit Fallthüren, Lukendeckeln und Klappen verschlossen werden können und die von einem Berdeck auf das andere führen.

²⁾ Kommt nach Hilpert her von boom, (Baum). Seespr. Spiere, Ende des Mastbaumes, daher to boom, mit vollen Segeln fahren und fig. fortstürmen, fortbrausen; doch ist es in der Bedeutung von Knall wahrscheinlicher vom it. bombo und rimbombo, Knall, Widerhall, woher das Wort bomba, Bombe, kommt. ³⁾ Mit hervorragenden Gegenständen verzieren, von stud, vom nordd. Studde = Stütze, Pfosten, Eckpfeiler, dann der plattirte Nagel, Knopf, daher to stud, mit Nägeln beschlagen. ⁴⁾ to fret, in heftige Bewegung bringen, (wahrschl. vom frz. frétiller, hüpfen, aus dem lat. fricare, reiben, gleichsam frictulare, sich hin und her reiben; daher it. fretta, Eile. ⁵⁾ Eigentlich the withdrawing-room, der Saal, in den sich die englischen Damen nach beendigter Mahlzeit zurückziehen, während die Herren noch beim Weine zurückbleiben. ⁶⁾ Das Mac, mit dem so viele schott. Namen anfangen, und das häufig in Mc oder M' abgekürzt wird, bedeutet Sohn, also der Sohn des Kenzie — wie im irländ. Fitz (von fils) z. B. Fitzjames, Fitzwilliam.

etiquette, urspr. Zeichen, Kennzeichen, vom nordd. Lecken, woher das engl. ticket, Theaterbillet, Zettel zur Bezeichnung zc., daher fig. äußere Zeichen, Ceremonien.

83. mere, wie das lat. merus, unvermischt, pur, lauter, bloß. matter of course, eine Sache, die sich von selbst versteht.

8. ladyship, eigentl. Ihre

scripture, die h. Schrift.

Sir Samuel Hood, engl. Admiral, geb. 1735, † 1816.

hunt (et. hunzen, mit hound, Hund, verwdt.), Jagd.

sapphire (griech.), Sapphir, blauer Edelstein.

ruby, Rubin, rother Edelstein (lat. ruber, rufus, roth).

tourmalin (indian. Name), Turmalin, Edelstein, hat verschiedene Farben, der unreine heißt Schörl; die rothen aus Ceylon werden unter dem Namen Siberit als Schmucksteine benützt.

chrysoberyl, der Goldberyll (χρυσός, Gold).

corundum, Korund, Diamantspath (indian. Name); es gibt 4 Arten von Korund: 1) der Spinel, 2) Automolite, 3) Sapphir u. Rubin, 4) Chrysoberyl.

85. well-bred, wohlgebildet (von to breed, brüten, erzeugen, anziehen), of good breeding, von feiner Bildung, Lebensart.

aides-de-camp, wie Adjutant, Gehülfe im Feld.

knowing (kennend), erfahren, aber auch schlau.

quizzical (von to quiz, spötteln), höhnisch.

¹⁾ Welches zur Bezeichnung eines Ritters (Knight), der untersten Adelsklasse, oder Barons (Baronet), der nächstfolgenden, gebraucht wird, wird nur vor den Taufnamen gesetzt, also Sir Samuel Hood, oder Sir Samuel, aber nicht Sir Hood. Das Sir stammt vom frz. Sieur, it. Signor, lat. senior, der Ältere, ab, und wohl nicht, wie Hilpert meint, von κύριος, lat. vir.

Ladyship wie lordship, 84. Mrs., spr. Missis, abgef. aus Mistress, das fem. von master.

shrewd, schlau, listig, von shrew, böses Weib, Zauberin, u. to shrew, prov. schrauen = verwünschen, verfluchen.

to inculcate, (lat.), scharf anempfehlen, einprägen.

to insinuate, (lat. sinus, Busen). sich einschmeicheln.

silly, einfältig, albern, nordd. füll, ein dummer Mensch.

pickled cucumbers, einge-machte Gurken, et. böfeln, einpöfeln.

ward (vom frz. garder, et. warten), der Mündel, Pflegesohn.

17) Das Diamantenthal.

glance, Blick (et. Glanz), plögllicher Strahl, Schimmer, Streifblick.

queer, et. quer, schräg, überzwerch, daher sonderbar.

joke (lat. jocor, scherzen), Scherz.

Sir Samuel ¹⁾.

to be quizzed out of, sich hinausspötteln lassen, sich durch Spöttelien verleiten lassen, seinen Plan aufzugeben.

basket (aus dem Brit. ins lat. baseauda, Juvenal), geflochtenes Brodkörbchen, Korb.

titter, verbissen oder heimlich lachen, fichern, gickern.

garnet, die Granate, dunkel-rother Edelstein, frz. grenat, it. granato, vom lat. granum, Korn, weil er in der Gestalt von Körnern gefunden wird.

Sinbad, weltbekannt aus Tausend und Eine Nacht.

alluvial, angeschwemmt (vom lat. alluo, bespülen).

gravel (Gräupel = zerstoßene oder lockere Stücke Erz oder Metall), grober Sand, Kies.

leave (et. Laub), Blatt, im Plur. auch Laub.

to pick (et. picken, mit

dem Schnabel hauen), auflesen.

cargo (it. carico, frz. charger), Ladung, Schiffs-ladung.

rubbish (von to rub, reiben, Abgeriebenes, Abgefallenes), Schutt, Sand.

stow, stauen, d. h. Güter in den Schiffsraum bringen.

poulterer, der das Geflügel besorgt, auch ein Federvieh-händler, vom lat. pullus, Huhn, frz. poule.

hencoop, Hühnerkorb, h. Behältniß auf den Schiffen (von coop, Kufe, Kübel, Faß).

fowl, et. Vogel, Geflügel, Federvieh.

cabin (vom frz. cabinet, it. gabinetto, lat. cavum, Loch), Kajüte.

tub, et. Zuber, Tonne, Wanne, bucket, Wassereimer, Kübel.

stuff, Stoff, Zeug, auch im Engl. verächtl. das ganze Zeug.

dish, Platte, Schüssel; urspr. δίσκος, Scheibe; daher das deutsche Tisch, eine auf Füßen ruhende Platte; vgl. auch a desk, Schreib-tisch, Pult.

forecabin, die für geringere

Personen bestimmte Kajüte
im Vordertheil des Schiffes.

jewel, Juwel; frz. joyau,

stanch, auch staunch, fest,
standhaft, zuverlässig. (frz.
estanc, von einem Schiff,
dicht, ohne Wasserlücken).

unswerving, einer, der nicht
von der geraden Linie ab-
weicht, consequent bleibt,
von to swerve, et. schwär-
men, prov. schwarzen.

aunt, (et. Ahn, altfrz. ante,
lat. anus, altes Weib), die
Tante, Base.

to yearn, heftig verlangen,
verwandt mit begehren,
Gier, gerne.

prop, Stütze.

endowment, Ausstattung,
Naturgaben. frz. douer,
lat. dotare, anstauern,
ausstatten.

Clapham, in der Grafschaft
Surrey, eine der vielen
durch Häuserreihen mit
London verbundenen Städte.

luggage, Gepäck, von to
lug, schleppen.

plum-cake, Rosinenkuchen,
von plum, Pflaume u.
Rosine.

to whoop, schreien (frz.
houper, Jagdausdr. zu-
rufen, daß ein Wild komme).

to halloo, halloh rufen,
schreien, lärmen.

to gambol, hüpfen, sprin-
gen, am Rhein: gamm'len,
(frz. gambiller, hüpfen,
zappeln, vom it. gamba,
das Bein).

boisterousness, Ungeßüm,
Heftigkeit.

clasp-knife, Einlegemesser,
Taschenmesser, von clasp,
Sack, um etwas Zuge-
machtes verschlossen zu
halten.

a hack, eine Hacke, Haue.
slice, eine Schnitte, ein
Schnitz, (et. schleifen.)

von jouer, spielen (von
Juwelen, glänzen).

86. 4. for all that, bei alle dem,
dessen ungeachtet.

18) Achates Digby.

to giggle, prov. ficheln,
fichern, auflachen.

fractions, Bruchrechnung,
division, Dividiren.

cravings, ungestüme Bitten.

87. 20. juncture, (wörtl. Fuge),
Zeitpunkt, Lage.

gallant, brav, tapfer, muthig.
bluebottle, die blaue
Schmeißfliege (musca vo-
mitoria).

to buzz, summen, sumsen.

the dominie, der Dominus,
sam. Vorsteher der Erzie-
hungsanstalt, der Schul-
meister.

27. to be horsed, Schul-
ausdr. für to be horse-
whipped, Hosen gespannt,
gepeitscht werden.

28. to tell tales, etwas
berichten, sam. einen ver-
schwären.

to serve one in the same
way, es einem ebenso
machen.

to thrash, dreschen, durch-
prügeln.

the hint, der Wink, to take
the hint, sich etwas ge-
sagt sein lassen.

to impose upon, einen
hintergehen.

to keep oneself to one-
self, sich absondern, etwas
für sich behalten.

to strip, berauben, et. strei-
fen, durch Streifen mit
der Hand etwas absondern,
entblößen.

to harass, ermüden, plagen,
erschöpfen, frz. harasser,
urspr. harasse, großer,
schwerer Schild, der den
Träger ermüdete.

8. to challenge, (altfrz.)
herausfordern.

misdemeanor, schlechtes

to establish a point, seine
Absicht erreichen, eine Sache
durchsetzen.

Betragen, vom altfrz. de-
mesner, sich aufführen.

neck-or-nothing-courage,
halbsbrecherischer Muth, der
Alles oder Nichts auf's
Spiel setzt.

88. crony, sam. alter Freund,
vielleicht von χρόνος,
Zeit, Saturn.

guardian, Vormund.

42. lots of, Umgangsspr.
für plenty, Taschengeld
die Hülle und Fülle.

89. partnership, Genossenschaft,
von part, Theil.

a bright boy, ein heller
Kopf.

drudgery, Plackerei, niedrige
oder harte Arbeit.

to look over, durchsehen,
corrigiren.

sums (Schulausdr.), Rechen-
Exempel.

suits, vollständiger Anzug,
Kleider.

lavish, verschwenderisch.

to sip, (et. sippen, saufen),
schlürfen, nippen.

90. to arch, Bogen machen,
wölben.

glossy, glänzend, von to
gloss, (glozen von glau
= glänzend).

sluggish, träge, verwandt
mit schluckern = hin und
her schwanke.

a rocking-horse, Wiegen-
pferd, von to rock (et.
rücken, wiegen).

to rein in, durch den Zaum
anhalten, zügeln, bändigen.
barb, Berberroß.

by-the-bye, (viell. aus by
the way entstanden) im
Vorbeigehen gesagt, franz.

à propos.

faculty, nämlich die medici-
nische Fakultät.

33. at any rate, jedenfalls,

um jeden Preis, vom frz. rate, lat. rata pars, bestimmter Preis.

crotchet, (frz. crochet von croche), Hacken, fig. einen Hacken im Kopf, einen stechenden, seltsamen Einfall, eine Grille haben.

pony, (von puny, franz. puiné, nachgeboren, klein, gering), eine Race kleiner Pferde, die hptsächl. im

hardship, Beschwerde.

to hit upon, auf etwas stoßen.

92. clerk, Commis.

capital! vortrefflich!

deceased, gestorben.

joke, Spaß.

slightly, ein wenig.

testator, Erblasser.

to concoct, (wörtl. zusammenkochen) auskinnen.

sundry, (et. abgesondert) verschieden.

to drop in, sich einstellen bei, bei einem vorsprechen.

a hoax, (ags. hucs, Spott) eine Erdichtung, ein Schwanf (sam. Jux).

trifle, Kleinigkeit, Bagatelle.

a suit of mourning, ein Traueranzug.

to forfeit, verlustig werden.

93. slips of paper, Papierstreifen.

wardrobe, Garderobe.

to be on the look-out for, sich umsehen nach.

lucrative, einträglich.

investment, Geldanlage.

to make up one's mind, sich entschließen.

bleak, (et. bleich) kalt, frostig. scantily clad, dürftig gekleidet.

gust of wind, Windstoß.

98. to limp, hinken.

to absorb, verschlingen, aufzehren.

to sob, schluchzen.

church spires, Kirchtürme.

Ned, abgefürzt von Edward.

nördl. Schottland und auf den Shetlandinseln zu Hause sind.

to canvass over, sichten, prüfen, auseinander setzen. Von canvass (lat. cannabis, Hanf), grobe Leinwand, Segeltuch, Sieb, woher die Bedeutung sichten.

had thrown out, hatte fallen lassen.

bulk, Umfang, Masse.

19) Wie ich reich wurde.

premises, Gebäulichkeiten.

madness, Wahnsinn.

done, Topp! einverstanden.

lap, Schooß.

candour, Aufrichtigkeit.

to prevail on, einen vermögen zu etwas.

to suit, passen.

a draft, eine Geldanweisung.

amount, Betrag.

to bow, sich verbeugen.

94. to cash, in baar Geld auswechseln.

your esteemed favour, Ihr werthes Schreiben.

loan, Anlehen.

Cortes, das spanische Parlament.

piastre, spanische Thaler.

(4 s. 4 d.)

premium, Assuranceprämie (der Versicherungspreis, den der Asscurant von dem Asscurirten erhält).

in sheer amazement, vor lauter Erstaunen.

account current, Conto Current.

principal, Kapital.

to have misgivings, Befürchtungen hegen.

20) Der einzige Makel.

lap, Schooß.

to bend, sich bücken.

she checked herself, (sie bezwang sich) sie hielt inne.

wistfully, (et. von Wissen voll) gedankenvoll.

tramp, Stampfen.

to shout, schreien.

crimson, carmoisiröth, hochroth.

91. steward, (et. Wächter) Verwalter, Haushofmeister.

lease, Pachtvertrag, verm. mit lassen, überlassen.

premises, Haus mit seinem Zugehör, überh. Gebäude, Grundstücke.

to be settled, sich häuslich niederlassen.

to deem, (angels.) dafürhalten. Daher doom, Urtheil-, Schicksalspruch.

stock, Grundcapital.

to assign, anweisen.

bequest, Vermächtniß.

95. deposit, Einlage.

calls, Rateneinzahlung, Einschuß.

shares, Actien.

avalanch, Lawine.

parcel, Parthie, Loos.

to sell out, ausverkaufen.

the proceeds of a sale, der Ertrag eines Verkaufs.

to grant a charter, ein Patent, Privilegium gewähren.

96. to be worried by, belangweiligt werden durch.

to be short of cash, kurz an baarem Geld sein.

to be shocked, entsetzt sein.

97. ominously, Unglück weissagend.

ludicrous, lächerlich.

feature, Zug, Erscheinung. bubble, Seifenblase.

a cheque, (frz. echec) eine Geldanweisung.

solvency, Zahlungsfähigkeit.

compunction of conscience Gewissensbisse, Reue.

His Majesty's Judges, die Königlichen Richter.

High-Sheriff, Landvogt.

javelin men, Spießträger.

Lent Assizes, Assisen, die zur Fastenzeit gehalten werden.

gaudy, bunt, aufgeputzt.

to clasp hands, die Hände falten.

- to temper, erweichen.
gaol, (spr. jail, wie es auch
manchmal geschrieben wird)
Gefängniß.
to stand one's trial, vor
Gericht stehen.
stragglers, einzelne Fuß-
gänger, Wanderer.
mountebank (der die Banke
besteigt, um seine Waare
anzupreisen) Quacksalber.
caravans of wild beasts,
Menageriewagen.
the circuit, die Runde, oder
Gerichtsbezirke, in denen der
Reihe nach Assisen gehalten
werden.
the shows, die Schau-
buden, Ausstellungen.
99. to linger, zögern, harren.
to be ahead of, voraus sein.
wayfarer, Wanderer.
suburb, Vorstadt.
to chat, plaudern.
housekeeper, Haushälterin.
homely, ungekünstelt, ein-
fach.
to trudge, (auch drudge)
sich mühsam fortzuschleppen.
to drown a reply, eine
Antwort (ersäufen) unter-
drücken.
we've statt we have.
a draught of cider, ein
Schluck Apfelmoss.
to grumble, murren.
to manage, einrichten.
repast, Mahl.
with a choking utterance,
(wörtl. eine erstickende Aus-
sprechung) mit halberstickter
Stimme.
100. to moan, stöhnen.
cast down, niedergeschla-
gen.
weary, müde.
to arouse, aufwecken.
balm, Balsam.
poaching, Wildddiebstahl
(vom frz. poche, in die
Tasche stecken).
affray, Schlägerei, Hand-
gemenge.
gamekeeper, Wildjäger,
Waldschütz.
errand, Auftrag, Geschäft.
to plead, sich verantworten.
to grudge, mißgönnen, sich
gereuen lassen.
transportation, Deportation
auf eine überseeische Colonie.
101. Crown Court, der Königl.
Gerichtshof.
to struggle, sich wehren.
to brave, trotzen.
faintness, Ohnmacht.
dock, die Anklagebank.
to be screened, verdeckt sein.
to attend to, aufmerken auf.
brushing back his grey
locks, indem er seine grauen
Locken zurückstrich (wörtl.
bürstete)
to gaze, blicken.
to enlist, sich anwerben
lassen.
abode, Wohnung.
to indulge, nachhängen, be-
friedigen.
102. warily, vorsichtig (von be-
ware, sich in Acht nehmen,
nicht von war (Krieg) spr.
daher warisi).
hatred, Haß.
to shatter, zerschmettern.
sling, Schlinge, Armbinde.
small shot, Schrot.
a look of defiance, ein
trotziger Blick.
beyond redress, auf ewig
(über alle Abwehr oder
Hülfe hinaus).
to snare game, Wild fangen
(et. Schnur, daher Schlinge,
Falle legen).
pinched for food, vom
Hunger geplagt (wörtl. um
Speise gezwickt).
to lift, erheben.
103. rails, Geländer.
a vacant gaze, ein leerer
Blick.
to beckon, winken.
witness-box, die Zeugen-
bank.
to taint, beflecken.
to sum up, Alles zusam-
menfassen.
evidence, Zeugenaussage.
conviction, Ueberführung.
proceedings, Verfahren.
verdict (lat. vere dictum,
wahr gesprochen), Wahr-
spruch der Geschwornen.
doom, Loos.
to award, zuertheilen.
to cherish, verpflegen.
convict ship, das Depor-
tationsschiff.
freight, Fracht, Ladung.
104. to implore, flehentlich bitten.
to interpose in behalf of,
sich zu Gunsten jemandes
ins Mittel legen.
fearing lest he might pass,
befürchtend, er könnte vor-
beikommen.
pantry, (vom franz. pain,
Brod, also Brodkammer)
Speisekammer.
maid, Kammerjungfer.
to beckon, winken.
to cheer, aufmuntern.
who have you here, gram-
matikalisch richtiger wäre
whom have you here?
request, Bitte.
to harbour, beherbergen.
secret agency, geheime Ver-
mittlung.
to drag, schleppen.
frame, Körper.
cometh, altengl. Form statt
comes.
105. ticket of leave, Urlaubss-
karte.
to hoard, aufspeichern, auf-
sparen.
pony, Pony, eine kleine
Pferdrace im nördl. Schott-
land.
briskly, lebhaft, schnell.
to step out, weit ausgreifen.
chimes, Geläute.
106. Fred., abgefürzt von Fre-
deric.
to dismount, vom Pferde
steigen.
latch, Thürschnalle, Klinke.
a stout lad, ein kräftiger
Junge.
to proffer, anbieten.
107. mould, Menschenschlag.
faltering, stammelnd, stot-
ternd.
those guns of yours, deine
Büchsen hier.

108. a spare body, ein magerer Leib.
 a carpet-bag, ein Reisesack.
 to have a fancy, eine große Neigung zu etwas haben, gesonnen seyn.
 Custom House, Zollamt.
 to be abashed, sich schämen, verlegen seyn.
 brush, Bürste.
 railway train, Eisenbahnzug.
 Cologne, Köln.
 wiry, (wörtl. von Draht gemacht) steif.
 prim, geziert, in schöner Ordnung, plattgebürstet.
 dishevelled, mit aufgelöstem fliegendem Haar.
 to have the assurance, die Frechheit haben.
 sneering, höhnisch.
 dirty, schmutzig.
 whiskers, Backenbart.
 to come shuffling up, herbeiwackeln.
 a touter, Rundschaffer (der Name kommt von to toot, oder tout, ins Horn blasen, spähen).
 to lie in ambush, im Hinterhalt, auf der Lauer liegen.
 to entice, anlocken.
 lair, Lagerplatz eines wilden Ortes, Ort der Lauer.
 palaver, unnützes Geschwätz (aus dem Portugies. palavra vom ital. parlare).
 board, Kost.
 at the rate of, für den Preis von.
 half-a-crown = 2 s 6 d.
 bargain, Handel.
 conceit, Vorliebe.
 customer, Kunde, Gast.
 public-house, Wirthshaus.
 forthwith, auf der Stelle.
 109. smock-frock, Fuhrmannsfittel, Kittel im Allgem.
 coalheaver, Kohlenträger.
 dray man, Kärchner.
 porter, Lastträger.
 clay pipe, kölnische Pfeife.
 braid, Haarslechte, Zopf.
 skull-cap, Lockenhaube.

21) Verlassen in London.

embroidered, gestickt.
 beads, Perlen.
 habitué, wie customer, (einer der die Gewohnheit hat) Kunde, gewöhnlicher täglicher Gast.
 to bustle off, hinweggehen.
 the bar, der Schenkstisch (wörtl. die Schranke [barrière], die den Wirth vom Gaste trennt).
 bewildered, verwirrt.
 uproar, Lärmen.
 but that morning, erst diesen Morgen.
 sundry, verschieden.
 blunt, stumpf.
 to become bail, als Bürge einstehen.
 toughness, die Zähheit.
 haunter, Besucher.
 jaw, Kachen.
 shark, Haifisch.
 half-agonised, halb in Todesangst.
 den, Höhle.
 to alight, aussteigen.
 Jew, Jude.
 anxious, bemüht.
 to peer out, heraus schauen.
 licentious, liederlich.
 small knots, kleine Gruppen.
 swaggering deportment, großthuendes, prahlerisches Benehmen.
 a heroine of rows, (spr. rau, nicht roh) eine Heldin in Straßenhändeln.
 110. for all that, dessen ungeachtet.
 to avoid, meiden, ausweichen.
 stratagem, Kriegslist.
 squalid, schmutzig.
 the very air, selbst die Luft.
 the "città dolente", ital. „die trauernde Stadt“ im ersten Gesang von Dantes Hölle.
 rakish, liederlich (vom alt-deutschen Recke).
 in shirt-sleeves, in Hemdärmeln.
 scarlet, scharlachroth.
 Calpac, eine Art Mütze.

accomodation, Unterkommen.
 damp, (et. Dampf) feucht.
 grate, Kamin.
 cinders, ausgeglühte Kohlen.
 wearing apparel, Kleidungsstücke.
 stone-bottles, steinerne Krüge.
 a Flushing jacket, holländische Jacke, von Flushing, engl. Name der Stadt Bliessingen.
 brass, Messing.
 twang, widriger Ton.
 strings, Saiten.
 haggard, hager, groß.
 cough, (spr. foaff) Husten.
 consumption, Auszehrung, Schwindsucht.
 111. to brag, prahlen.
 to stir the fire, die Steinkohlen aufstüren, daß sie bessere Glut geben.
 fender, Schutzblech auf dem Boden vor dem Kamin.
 dismay, Entsetzen.
 to be the worse for liquor, betrunken seyn.
 soap, Seife.
 huge, ungeheuer.
 meal, Mahlzeit.
 coarse, grob.
 waiter, Kellner, Aufwärter.
 spoon, Löffel.
 carver, Transchirer.
 stripping himself of his upper garment, indem er seinen Rock auszog.
 to tuck up the sleeve, den Ärmel aufstülpen.
 sausages, Würste.
 great proficiency, vollkommene Kenntniß.
 112. in rusty black, in rostigen Schwarz, in rostfarbenem Rock.
 boisterous, stürmisch, heftig.
 to be in the nick of time, gerade zur rechten Zeit kommen.
 sovereigns, engl. Souverains oder Pfund Sterling.
 coin, Münze.

- a penny roll, ein Kreuzerwecken, Kreuzersammel.
 farrier, Hufschmied.
 to run a nail in to the foot, sich einen Nagel in den Fuß treten.
 to cure skins, (Gerberausdruck) Felle zubereiten.
 to disable one, einen zu etwas unfähig machen.
 hareskin, Hasenfell.
 to stamp upon, mit Füßen treten auf.
 to be tricked out of, durch einen böshaften Streich vertrieben werden.
- 113.** to cough, husten.
 typhus, Nervöses Fieber (aus Mangel an Lebenskraft entstanden).
 from sheer weakness, lauter Schwäche.
 to scrub, schrapen, scheuern, fegen.
 laziness, Trägheit.
 Corpus Christi procession, Frohnleichnamsp procession.
 Kirmess, Kirchweihe.
 a starry night, eine sternhelle Nacht.
 to indite a letter, einen Brief aufsetzen, abfassen.
- 114.** plaster, die Lünche, der Mörtel.
 unpapered wall, untapezirte Wand.
 the fittings, die Zurüstung, hier: das Gestell.
 sheet, Leintuch.
 blanket, wollene Bettdecke.
 I am chilled, mich friert.
 a Dutchman, ein Holländer.
 potted salmon, eingemachter (wörtl. in Töpfen aufbewahrter) Lachs.
 schiedam, ein geistiges Getränk, das in Schiedam in der Nähe von Rotterdam fabrizirt wird.
 to be elated, hoch erfreut seyn.
- a house of public resort, ein öffentliches Vergnügungshaus, ein Wirthshaus.
 shaggy, zottig, rauh, langhaarig.
 trying, (was einem Prüfung auferlegt) anstrengend.
 cross-questions, Kreuz- und Querfragen.
 it would not do, das gehe nicht an.
 grimly, verdrießlich, mürrisch.
 to ply with, überhäufen mit.
 to spice, eine Würze geben, versüßen.
- 115.** to crush, zermalmen.
 awkwardness, Unbequemlichkeit.
 loneliness, Einsamkeit.
 to foster, pflegen, unterstützen.
 publisher, Verlagsbuchhändler.
 suicide, Selbstmord.
 Soho, öffentlicher Platz in London.
 I am hard up, es geht hart mit mir, ich bin in der äußersten Noth.
 soothing, besänftigend.
 a cant phrase, ein familliärer, unedler Ausdruck.
 sting, Stachel.
 to sally out, (wörtl. einen Ausfall thun) sich auf den Weg machen, umherstreifen.
- 116.** toast¹⁾, geröstete Brodschnitte, dry toast, trockenes Brod, d. h. ohne Butter darauf.
 bill, Anschlagzettel, Ankündigung.
 exorbitant, (wörtl. was über den Kreis, lat. orbis, hinausgeht) übertrieben, ungeheuer.
 to knock down, zu Boden schlagen.
 it struck me, es fiel mir auf.
 straitened circumstances, bedrängte Lage.
- landing, die Treppruhe, Absatz einer Treppe.
 wash-hand stand, Waschtischchen.
 sitting-room, Wohnzimmer.
 block-tin, Blockzinn (reines unverarbeitetes Zinn).
117. glare, Glanz.
 a thoroughfare, wörtl. Durchfahrt, eine Straße, in der viel Verkehr ist, belebte Hauptstraße.
 dizziness, Schwindel.
 to stun, betäuben.
 stationer, Schreibmaterialienhändler.
 flock bed, Flockenbett (ein mit Wolle ausgestopftes Bett).
 to "do" a room, ein Zimmer in Ordnung bringen.
 a Hackney²⁾ servant, ein Lohnbedienter.
 postmans' knock, des Briefträgers Klopfen.
 to be choked, ersticken.
 penny wise and shilling foolish, sparsam im Kleinen und verschwenderisch im Großen.
- 118.** sausage roll, Wurstknopf, eine Art Pastete mit Wurstfleisch gefüllt.
 to stint, einschränken, entziehen.
 an essay, ein Versuch, ein Aufsatz.
 to hint, andeuten, Wink geben.
 pettish, empfindlich, verdrießlich.
 nursery tale, Ammenmärchen.
- 119.** periodicals, periodisch (wöchentl., monatl.) erscheinende Zeitschriften.
 to live upon next to nothing, von fast gar Nichts leben.
 pence and farthings, Kreuzer und Heller (farthing der 4te Theil von 1 penny).

¹⁾ Daher der Name toast, Toast, das Gesundheitstrinken, es wurde nämlich früher eine geröstete Brodschnitte in das Glas gethan, welche dem zu Theil wurde, der den Rest austrank.

²⁾ Das Wort hackney, das für Miethkutschen, Miethpferde zc. gebraucht wird, kommt vom frz. haquenée, (vom lat. equus, equina) Paßgänger, Zelter (von Zelt = Paßgang des Pferdes) daher Miethpferd, das leicht zu besteigen ist und den Paß geht.

news-vendors, Zeitungs-
agenten.
meat-pie, Fleischpastete.
they did for me, sie paß-
ten für mich.
copy-book, Schreibheft.

sulky, mürrisch, trozig.
unheeded, unbemerkt.
Hackney Vorstadt Londons.
to set in, anbrechen.
pang, Bangigkeit.
morbid, krankhaft.

120. foreign department, der
Theil einer Zeitung, der
das Ausland betrifft.
he prospers, es geht ihm
gut.

22) Beförderung.

the mess, Regimentstisch.
wig (von periwig aus frz.)

perruque entstanden) Perrücke. bald, fahlsköpfig.

23) Ehrliches Geständniß.

sergeant, Sachwalter,
Rechtsgelehrter, Licentiat.
brethren of the coif, Col-
legen eines Sachwalters,

sogenannt weil sie ein ei-
gentümliches Käppchen
(frz. coëffe) tragen.

a fee ein Honorar.
to arraign vorladen.
to pledge verpfänden.

VIERTER ABSCHNITT.

Bilder aus der Natur.

1) Der Elephant.

121. to dig up, ausgraben.
tusk, Fangzahn.
to upset, umstürzen.
122. shapeless, unförmlich.
to make out, herausfinden.
carcass, Gerippe.
clearly, völlig.
ice-crag, Eisklippe.
to decay, verderben.
spine, Rückgrat.
pelvis, Becken.
to shrink, einschrumpfen.
tuft, Busch.
bristly, borstig.
bristle, Borste.
coarse, grob, rauh.
123. flat, stumpf.
awkward, plump, unbe-
holzen.
slender, dünn.
brush, Büschel.
perforation, Oeffnung.
nostrils, Nüstern.
124. to make up, zusammen-
setzen.

tendon, Sehne.
to twist up, aufwärts drehen
canine teeth, Hundszähne.
tree fern, Farnkrautbaum.
layer, Lage, Schichte.
dentition, das Zahnen.
grinder, Backenzahn.
to shed, abwerfen.
125. lamina, Plättchen.
ridge, Streifen.
enamel, Schmelz.
chisel, Meißel.
jaw, Kinnbacken.
to grind, zermahlen.
implicitly, unbedingt, blind-
lings.
crop, Getreide, Früchte.
stockade, Stafete.
126. kettle, Pauke.
to ensnare, verstricken.
the door of the outlet,
das Ausgangsthor.
to entice, anlocken.
to butt, stoßen.
noose, Schlinge, Schleife.

127. girth, Gurt.
to train, abrichten.
unruly, unlenksam, unbändig
outrageous, wüthend.
plaintain tree, Pifang.
craving, Forderung.
to decoy along, herbei-
locken.
128. to coax, liebkoosen.
to squirt, spritzen.
to pat, tätscheln.
to contrive, mit etwas
umgehen.
129. shrill, gellend.
squeak, Schrei.
to rush upon, über einen
kommen.
proboscis, Rüssel.
to launch, vom Stapel lassen
130. fit, Anfall.
to tank up, einziehen.
131. estate, Vermögen, Gut.
crib, Häuschen.
gorgeous, prachtvoll.

2) Die Riesenschlange.

- coluber, Ratter.
 to crush, drücken.
 to masticate, kauen.
 gullet, Schlund.
 scale, Schuppe.
 spinous, dornig, hässlich.
 132. notch, Kerbe, Einschnitt.
 deer, Rothwild.
 to coil, sich winden.
 glutinous, flebrig.
 saliva, Speichel.
 solvent, Auflösungsmittel.
 to lubricate, schlüpfrig ma-
 chen.
 deglutition, das Verschlucken
 snap zuschnapper Ring.
 awn, die Granne an der
 Aehre.
 gorge, vollstopfen, sättigen.
 stupor, Betäubung, Unem-
 pfindlichkeit.
 133. to float, schwimmen.
 rankness, wuchernder
 shrub, Strauch. [Schlamm.

- drought, Dürre, Trockenheit.
 buskin, Halbstiefel.
 rifle, Büchse.
 swamp Sumpf.
 in the way of game, beim
 Weidwerk.
 to rustle, schütteln.
 to drench, benetzen, an-
 feuchten.
 stilly, dumpf, ruhig.
 to come on, herannahen.
 to shoot, prickeln, stechen.
 corns, Hühneraugen.
 wail, Wehklagen.
 134. halo, Hof.
 pitchy dark, pechfinster.
 crash, Krachen.
 slope, Abhang.
 to bellow, brüllen.
 to roost, nisten.
 to blend, vereinigen.
 to wriggle, sich wälzen, sich
 schlängeln.
 to crowd, sich drängen.

- ravine, Bergschlucht.
 haunt, Höhle, Lager.
 whirlpool, Strudel.
 bank, Damm, Ufer.
 to writhe, winden, sich
 krümmen.
 fold, Ring (einer Schlange).
 to twist, flechten, winden.
 135. to dart down, herabstürzen.
 longe, Stoß, Wurf.
 to encompass, umschließen,
 umflechten.
 double-barrelled, doppel-
 läufig.
 dingle, Thal.
 to make of, zugehen auf.
 it told well es traf gut.
 to squeek, quicken, schreien.
 to spurt, spritzen.
 slash, Hieb.
 lump, Klumpen.
 litter, Säufte.

3) Der Walfisch.

136. to bring forth, zur Welt
 bringen, gebären.
 transverse flake, Quer-
 schichte.
 longitudinal fibrous, län-
 genfaserig.
 range, Weite.
 to twist about, umwenden.
 unwieldly, schwerfällig,
 unbehilflich.
 swimming paw, Schwimm-
 pfote.
 scapula, bladebone, Schul-
 terblatt.
 humerus, Schulterbein.
 radius, Armspindel.
 ulna, Elbogenbein.
 137. vertebra, Wirbelbein.
 porpoise, Meerschwein.
 cuticle, das Oberhäutchen.
 piebald, scheckig.
 adipose tissue, Fettgewebe.
 blubber, Thran.

- spermaceti, Walrath.
 spermaceti whale, Bott-
 fisch.
 138. whalebone whale, Fisch-
 bein, Walfisch.
 bone of the palate, Gau-
 menbein.
 to fold up, sich zusammen-
 legen.
 strainer, Seiher.
 funnel, Durchgangsröhre.
 to get entangled, sich ver-
 wickeln.
 fringe, Franse.
 valve, Klappe.
 jet, Wasserstrahl.
 striking, erstaunlich.
 139. helm, Steuerruder.
 the bows, die Backen (eines
 Schiffs).
 to lean, sich neigen.
 to pull in strength, stark
 anziehen.

- to coil, aufwickeln.
 to spout, spritzen.
 to dispatch, tödten.
 to lash, binden.
 belly, Bauch.
 messmate, Tischgenosse,
 Schüssellkamerad.
 to tow, ziehen, bugfieren.
 larboard side, Backbord-
 Seite.
 140. spur, Sporn, Stachel.
 specksioneer, Speckschnei-
 der.
 tackle, Tasje, Seil und
 Rübel.
 hold, Kielraum.
 whisker, Backenbart.
 to lop of, abhauen.
 to turn adrift, den Wellen
 preisgeben.
 shark, Haifisch.
 to be owing to, herühren,
 eine Folge sein von.

4) Der Brodbaum.

core, Mark.
pithlike, markartig.
roll, Wecken, Semmel.
slice, Schnitte.
to fry, braten, rösten.
catkin, Räschen (an Pflanzen).
to wrap up, einwickeln.
towel, Handtuch.
juice, Saft.

crack, Riß, Sprung.
yam, Brodwurzel.
tuber, Knollen.
141. cutting, Ableger.
to bear away, davon segeln, vor dem Winde segeln.
brisk, lebhaft.
142. to hoist out, hinablassen.
launch, Schiffsboot.
joint of pork, Schweinskeule.

to shift for one's self, selbst für sich sorgen.
spare, spärlich.
allowance, Ration.
greedily, gierig.
143. to have a relish for, Geschmack finden an.
to fall in with (ein Land) entdecken.

5) Das Nordlicht.

144. gloom, dunkel.
dim, blaß, matt.
tint, Farbe, Schattirung.
russet, rothbraun.

coruscation, Leuchten, Fun-
keln.
to insulate, vereinzeln.
to strike with horror, mit
Schauer erfüllen.

to crackle, knistern, knarren.
sparkle, Funken sprühen.
mock sun, Nebensonne.

6) Das Erdbeben zu Lissabon.

145. to stir, sich regen.
to stun, betäuben.
to rock, wanken, wackeln.
crack, Riß, Spalt.
rafter, Querbalken.
to start from, abspringen,
abweichen.
lime, Kalk.
to choke, ersticken.
146. to totter, wanken.
to get clear of, etwas los
werden.
parish-church, Pfarrkirche.

147. to heave, aufschwellen,
steigen.
to foam, schäumen.
to roam, brausen.
to have a narrow escape,
mit genauer Noth davon
kommen.
beam, Balken.
area, offener Raum, freier
Raum.
to toss, hin und her schleu-
dern.
cable, Ankertau.

to wave, wogen, schwanen,
mooring, Ankerplatz.
148. to fathom, (mit der Senf-
leine) ergründen.
to ride, (auf der Rhede)
liegen.
wax-taper, Wachskerze.
grand, großartig.
to be upon a level, ein-
ander gleich sein.
easy in circumstances, in
wohlhabenden Umständen.
convenience, Bequemlich-
keit.

7) Das Meer.

surge, Woge.
to amaze, mit Staunen
erfüllen.
speck, Fleckchen.
149. to set in, hereinbrechen.
eddy, Wasserwirbel.
level, flach.
causeway, Kunststraße.
contrivance, Einrichtung,
Scharfsinn.
honey-comb, Wachs-, So-
nigscheibe.
bibulous, schwammicht.
to sheath, einschneiden, ein-
wickeln.
to chill, erkälten.
sunfish, Klumpfisch.

to act the part of, die
Stelle vertreten.
excrescence, Auswuchs.
nautilus, Schiffschnecke.
to unfurl, auf-, ausspannen.
rooted, festgewurzelt.
150. to shoot, treiben.
to range, durchschweifen.
uncouth, seltsam, wunder-
lich, roh.
tenant, Bewohner.
mackarel, Makrele.
creek, Bucht.
recruits, Ergänzung, Ersatz.
to spawn, laichen.
by scores, schockweise.
cod, Kabeljau.

havoc, Verheerung.
jutting, hervorragende
Stellen.
to forage, berauben.
to tack, befestigen.
151. genial, besuchend.
pit of brine, Salzwasser-
behälter.
to refine, reinigen.
brinish, salzig.
tincture, Geschmack.
bituminous, erdharzig.
sediment, Bodensatz, Rück-
stand.
to ooze, hervorfließen.
to trickle along, dahin
rieseln.
nauseous, ekelhaft.

8) Ebbe und Fluth.

tides, Ebbe und Fluth.
visionary, träumerisch.
wild, ausschweifend, seltsam.
to account for, erklären.

152. fulcrum, Stützpunkt.
swing, Schwingung.
lunar, mondlich.
neap, niedrig.

spring tide, Springfluth.
balance-wheel, Steigerad.

9) Die Winde.

153. compass, Umfang.
breeze, Lüftchen.
gale, frischer Wind.

trade wind, Passatwind.
tide, Fluß, Strom. [Ocean].
monsoon, Muffon (im ind.

to shift, wechseln.
tract, Strecke.

10) Perlenfischerei.

154. diver, Taucher.
mitten, Klapphandschuh.

rake, Harke, Rechen.
to muddy, trüben.

11) Eindrücke eines Blindgeborenen beim Sehendwerden.

155. to couch, den Staar stechen.
to strike with horror, mit
Entsetzen erfüllen.

locket, Armband, Medaillon.
bushel, Scheffel.

12) Die Bergwerke Englands.

156. down, Düne.
fire-damp, schlagende Wetter, der feurige Schaden.
to maim, verstümmeln.
to blow up, in die Luft sprengen.
report, Knall.
wire, Draht.
pit, Grube.
chaldron, ein Kohlenmaß, 36 Scheffel.
cannel, candle-coal, Rohrsteinkohle.
glossy, glänzend.
to cleave, spalten.
flake, Platte.
standish, Schreibzeug.
pea-cock, Pfau.

157. ore, Erz.
spar, Spath.
brittle, zerbrechlich.
crootes, provinz. Ausdruck, der im Text erklärt ist.
to marl, durchmergeln.

hundred weight, Centner.
brook, Bach.
adit, Stollen.
gallon, Gallon (4 englische Quart).
pulley, Rolle, Flaschenzug.
black stone, Bergtorf.
short, zäh.
clay, Thon, Lehm.
to sift, sieben.
gad, Prügel, Klotz.
charcoal, Holzkohle.
ladle, Löffel.

158. malleable, was sich hämmern läßt, dehnbar.
to alloy, legiren, vernichten.
gravelly, sandig.
drop, Kügelchen.
to branch, mit Zweigen versehen.
to fringe, besranzen.
to twist, flechten, drehen.
fillagree work, Filigran, feine Drahtarbeit.

dye, Färber.
mundic, Schwefelkies.
tinner, Zinngräber.
curdy, klumpig.
speltre, Zink, Spiauter.
lapis calaminaris, Galmei (unreines Zinn).
black-lead, Reißblei.
quarry, Steinbruch.
cellular, zellig.

159. stannary law, Zinnengesetz.
heir apparent to the crown, Kronprinz.
shaft, Schacht.
to shake, zittern.
stamping-mill, Stampfmühle, Bodwerk.
to pound, stoßen.
to grind, mahlen.
dross, scoria, Schlacken, Abschaum.
to scum off, abschäumen.
to fetch over,

FÜNFTER ABSCHNITT.

Geschichte.

1) Die alten Britten.

160. refinement, Verfeinerung.
shocking, erstannlich.

requisite, nothwendig.

to rear, errichten.

to shift, ändern.

to actuate, treiben.

want, Bedürfniß.

scanty, gering, ärmlich.

161. to acquire a relish for,
Wohlgefallen, Geschmack
finden an.

to minister, den Gottes-
dienst verrichten.

to enjoy an immunity
from, frei sein von.

penalty, Strafe.

to be forbidden access to,
nicht zugelassen werden zu.

to be debarred all in-
tercourse, von allem Um-
gang ausgeschlossen sein.

to inculcate, einschärfen.

votary, Anhänger.

grove, Hain.

to commit to writing,
schriftlich aufzeichnen.

conquest, Sieg, Eroberung.

signal, merkwürdig.

162. to reconcile to, versöh-
nen mit.

penal statute, Strafgesetz.

2) Die Römer in Britanien.

to set sail, sich einschiffen.

to maintain a struggle,
einen Kampf durchführen.

to rush forward into, sich
stürzen in.

charge, Angriff, Andrang.

to listen to, Gehör schenken.

invader, Eindringling.

163. contest, Kampf.

to dismay, schrecken.

by no means, keineswegs.

ungalled, unverletzt.

to engage in, sich mit et-
was abgeben.

to betray, verrathen.

to introduce to the pre-
sence of, jemanden einem
vorstellen.

frantic, aberwitzig, wahn-
sinnig.

with dishevelled hair,
mit fliegenden Haaren.

to daunt, erschrecken.

to quell, stillen, dämpfen,
unterdrücken.

164. destruction, Untergang.

to raise, aufstellen, au-
bringen.

sweets, Annehmlichkeiten,
Gemächlichkeiten.

to prevent, verhindern.

3) Die Scoten und Pikten.

blessed, glücklich.

to engage in the party
of, Jemand's Partei er-
greifen.

standing, bleibend.

to overwhelm, überwälti-
fastness, fester Ort. [gen.

to depend upon, sich auf
etwas verlassen.

avail, Nutzen.

to pour in upon, ein-
überschwemmen.

to waste, verschwenden.

wretched, jämmerlich, elen-
bemoaning, fläglich.

4) Die Sachsen.

166. pitch, Grad, Stufe.

to engage, gewinnen.

to rattle, schütteln.

nice, genau.

scrutiny, Untersuchung.

unshaken, unerschütterlich.

to survive, überleben.

167. I am opposed by, es steht
mir Jemand gegenüber.

to maintain, ernähren.

to go beyond, übersteigen.

tillage, Ackerbau.

inroad, Einfall.

officer, Beamte.

to prompt, anreizen, auf-
fordern.

168. to pierce, dringen.

necessitous, dürstig.

intelligence, Rundschau, 169. anxious, bekümmert, be-
Nachricht. müht.

pusillanimity, Kleinmü-
thigkeit.

to fail, betrügen.

to withdraw, entziehen.

extremities, Noth.

to rouse to indignation,
aufbringen.

rash, unbesonnen.

5) Alfred der Große.

to settle, ansäßig machen.
to straggle, herumschweifen.
to indulge one's self in
committing violence, sich
Gewaltthaten erlauben.
to betake one's self to,
sich überlassen, hingeben.
to join, sich mit Jemand
vereinigen.
hundred, Ranton.
tithing, Bezirk von zehn
Familien.
170. decennary, dasselbe wie
tithing.
fribourg, (ebenso) Freibürg-
schaft.
headbourg, Gemeindevor-
steher.
borsholder, Bürgermeister
to appoint, bestimmen, ver-
ordnen.
outlaw, geächtet.
warrant, Vollmacht.

privity, Mitgenossenschaft,
Mitwissenschaft.
fine, Geldstrafe.
frank-pledge, Freibürg-
schaft.
inured, gewöhnt.
171. to devise, ausfinden.
freeholder, Freisäße.
hundreder, Oberhaupt eines
Rantons.
wapentake, Hundertbezirk.
Michaelmas, Michaelisfest.
alderman, Älteste, Rathsherr.
sheriff, Landvogt, Landrich-
to engross, einnehmen.
earl, Graf.
malversation, Uebelver-
halten.
172. to frame, entwerfen.
states, Stände.
previously, schon vorher.
bravado, Trogbieten, Prah-
lerei.

pursuit, Aufgabe.
bent, Neigung.
accession, Thronbesteigung.
to interpret, verdolmetschen.
service, Gottesdienst.
to enjoin, einem etwas
auferlegen, anbefehlen.
hyde, Hufe.
173. diet, Nahrung.
exercise, Bewegung.
taper, Wachsferze.
lanthorn, Laterne.
suited, angemessen.
geometry of dialling, die
Kunst, Sonnenuhren zu
machen.
leisure, Muße.
apologue, Fabel.
apopthegm, Spruch,
to couch, abfassen.
deem, achten,
derogatory from, nachthei-
lig für.
174. to push, treiben.

6) Die Schlacht bei Hastings.

riot, Schwelgerei.
jollity, Fröhlichkeit.
discomfiture, Niederlage.
to entitle, berechtigen.
prowess, Tapferkeit.
rear, Nachtrab, Rücken.
host, Kriegsheer.
to anathematize, in den
Kirchenbann thun.

prognosticate, vorher an-
zeigen, Weissagen.
175. trench, Graben.
to stand upon the defen-
sive, vertheidigungsweise
zu Werke gehen.
van, Vortrab.
brink, Rand.
dismayed, erschreckt, verzagt.

stratagem, Kriegslist.
advisable, rathsam.
to face about upon, Front
machen gegen.
176. array, Schlachtordnung.
gall, schwächen.
to give ground, weichen.
discomfited, geschlagen,
zerstreut.

7) Heinrich VII.

rapacity, Raubgier.
to give up to, widmen.
177. brutal, viehisch.
to rise upon, sich erheben,
empören gegen.
attainments, Eigenschaften.
bog, Sumpf.
outrage, Gewaltthat.
redress, Hilfe.
to plan, den Plan entwer-
fen zu etwas.

ravish, schänden.
to have recourse to, seine
Zuflucht nehmen zu.
to hold of, zu Lehen neh-
men von.
letters patent, ein offenes
Schreiben.
178. privately, heimlich.
knight, Ritter.
esquire, Knappe.

to strike with awe, mit
Schrecken erfüllen.
to expedite, abschicken.
to expatiate on, (mit Wor-
ten) sich über etwas ver-
breiten.
to put to the rout, schla-
gen, zersireuen.
179. trifling, unbedeutend.
appendage, Anhängsel.

8) Richard I.

viscount, Burggraf.
to comply with, will-
fahren.
to take aim, zielen.
to rankle, verlegen.
gangrene, Brand.

to draw towards a period,
sich seinem Ende nahen.
wretch, Wicht.
180. nuisance, Beschwerde,
schädlicher Mensch.
to humble, demüthigen.

to flay, schinden.
conduct, Aufführung.
incident, gewöhnlich, eigen.
calculated, geeignet.
to dazzle, blenden.
crusade, Kreuzzug.

9) Die große engl. Freiheitsurkunde.

to encamp, sich lagern.
 181. congé-d'élire, Erlaubniß-
 brief.
 to supersede, aufheben.
 check, Beschränkung, Hin-
 derniß.
 lay, westlich (Laie).
 estate, Vermögen.
 relief, Lehensgefäß.
 fee, Lehen.
 to ascertain, festsetzen.
 wardship, Vormundschaft.
 waste, Verlust, Schaden.
 pond, Teich.
 disparagement, Beeinträch-
 tigung.
 dower, Witthum.
 soccage, Frohne.
 scutage, Dienstentschädigung
 in Geld.

aid, Steuer.

chattel, bewegliches Ver-
mögen.182. constable, Befehlshaber.
able-bodied, handfest,
stark.to incapacitate, unfähig
machen.to draw on, veranlassen,
bewegen.

clause, Satz.

concurrence, Mitwirkung.

provision, Verordnung.

burgh, Flecken.

circuit, Assisenrunde.

sheriff's turn, das Gericht
des Sheriffs.countleat, Patrimonialge-
richt.183. to hold a plea, einen
Prozeß führen.to put upon trial, in's
Verhör nehmen.

tenement, Grundeigenthum.

peer, seines Gleichen, Ra-
merad.

villain, Leibeigener.

implement of husbandry,
Ackerbangeräthe.

outline, Umriß.

bare of circumstances,
nicht ausführlich genug.

tenor, Inhalt, Geist.

to depart from, fahren
lassen, aufgeben.184. exorbitant, übermäßig,
übertrieben.

safeguard, Schutz.

10) Eduard I.

to counterbalance, das
Gleichgewicht halten.
 185. to burst forth, ausbre-
 chen.
 umpire, Schiedsrichter.
 award, Entscheidung.

liege lord, Lehensherr.

galling, drückend.

to harass, quälen, plagen.

prisoner at large, Gefange-
ner mit Freiheit.

to track, ausspüren.

186. to promise well, guten
Fortgang verheißen.

kinsman, Verwandter.

scheme, Plan.

Longshanks, Langschenkel,
Langbein.

11) Die Schlacht bei Crecy.

perplexity, Verlegenheit,
Bestürzung.
 to issue, ergehen lassen.
 hazardous, gefährlich.
 187. plate, Silbergeschirr.
 to dislodge, aufbrechen.
 to attend, beobachten.
 vanguard, Vortrab.
 to starve, verhungern.
 sound, fest.
 188. rearguard, Nachtrab.
 tide, Fluth.
 disgrace, Schande.
 eagerness, Begierde.
 disappointment, vereitel-
ter Anschlag.
 to hurry on, antreiben,
verleiten.
 to concert, entwerfen.

intrenchment, Verschanz-
ung.

to compose, beruhigen.

cheerfulness, Heiterkeit.

189. hover, hangen, schweben.

by degrees, nach und nach.

clumsy, plump, schwerfällig.

management, Handhabung,
Bedienung.

to contrive, ersinnen.

level, Gleichgewicht.

to overmatch, übertreffen,
überwinden.

encumbrance, Hinderniß.

190. to draw up, aufstellen.

seasonably, zu rechter Zeit.

manageable, lenksam.

cross bow man, Armbrust-
schütze.thunder shower, Gewitter-
regen.to fall short, fehlen, nicht
erreichen.to put to the sword, über
die Klinge springen lassen.

191. to hem, einschließen.

feat of arms, Waffenthat.

to accost, zu einem treten.

throng, Gedränge.

rout Verwirrung, Nieder-
lage.to acquit one's self, sich
halten, sich einer Aufgabe
entledigen.

192. to allege, anführen.

crest, Federbusch, Helm-
zierde.

12) Die Jungfrau von Orleans.

to tend, warten, besorgen.
 193. wild, schwärmerisch.

bashfulness Schüchternheit.

visionary, Träumerei.

194. to anoint, salben.

to give in to, beitreten.

- cap-à-pee, von Kopf zu Fuß. 197. to advance, behaupten.
 steed, Ross. implement, Werkzeug.
 fond fancy, Lieblingsidee. to enforce, darthun, be-
 195. prepossession, Vorurtheil. weisen.
 to grasp, in d. Hand halten. to dub into, zu etwas er-
 flower-de-luce Schwert- heben.
 lilie. to overtake, einholen.
 in right of, frast. 201. to head, sich an die Spitze
 pass, Zustand, Lage. stellen.
 sally, Ausfall. to recoil, zurückweichen.
 to array, fleiden. to eclipse, verdunkeln.
 garb, Tracht. to blast, vereiteln, zerstören.
 redoubt, Schanze. to forfeit, verwirken.
 to overawe, in Furcht se- unstained, unbefleckt.
 gen, halten. cloak, Deckmantel.
 196. unaccountable, unerklär- 202. mean, gemein, niedrig.
 lich, seltsam to browbeat, finster, mür-
 to infer, schließen, folgern. risch ansehn
 votary, Verehrer, Anhänger. to buoy, erheben.
 reverse, Wechsel. to recant, widerrufen.
 to check hemmen, dämpfen. 203. a suit of men's apparel
 to dress (a wound), ver- ein männlicher Anzug.
 binden. appointment, Anordnung,
 amazement, Bestürzung. Befehl.
 insidious, hinterlistig.

13) Der Krieg der Rosen.

- disposition, Gemüthsart. avenger, Rächer.
 unprincipled ohne Grund 205. to take by surprise, über-
 säße, gewissenlos. raschen, überrumpeln.
 sway, Gewalt. to crowd, sich drängen.
 to blaze forth, ausbrechen. fickle, wankelmüthig.
 204. a pitched battle, regelmä- to style, betiteln, benennen.
 ßiger Krieg. gallant, stattlich, tapfer.
 to espouse, vertheidigen, sich pitiless, unbarmherzig.
 verloben mit. to scatter, verbreiten.
 to disgrace, schänden. to impeach, anklagen.
 disappointment, mißlunge- ner Anschlag.

14) Heinrich VII.

- to afford, gewähren. 208. landholder, Grundbesitzer.
 cheering, froh. craving, Anforderung.
 overgrown, übermäßig. consumption Schwindsucht.

15) Heinrich VIII.

- pleasing, erfreulich, freudig. 210. the Holy See, der heilige
 to listen, Gehör schenken. Stuhl.
 to give up, hingeben, preis- to mortify, demüthigen,
 geben. fränken.
 resentment, Rache. compliant, willfährig.
 exaction, Erpressung. undeviating, unwandelbar,
 accomplishment Fertigkeit, unererschütterlich.
 Talent. indiscriminating, keinen
 to court, um etwas buhlen. Unterschied machend.
 209. to lavish, verschwenden, to disgrace, in Ungnade
 durchbringen. fallen lassen.
 effervescence, Aufwallung. to embrace, benützen.

16) Entdeckung von Amerika.

211. crew, Schiffsvolk.
to waft, führen.
waste, Wüste, Einöde.
to victual, sich mit Lebens-
mitteln versehen.
knot, Rote.
control, Widerspruch.
to bend one's self upon,
sich in den Kopf setzen.
agreement, Vertrag.
212. to consult, auf etw. denken.
to discountenance, miß-
billigen.
to soothe, besänftigen.
refractory, widerspenstig.
track, Lauf, Richtung.
stern, Hintertheil (eines
Schiffs).
rigging, Takelwerk.
to stand to, segeln nach,
gegen.
213. breeze, Wind.
despondency, Kleinmuth,
Verzweiflung.
to scatter, zerstreuen, trennen.
caravel, Caravelle (Art por-
tugiesischen Schiffs).
214. to hoist, aufziehen.
field bird, Landvogel.
to miss, verfehlen.
heron, Reiher.
fragrant, wohlriechend.
215. defiance, Herausforderung,
Streit.
weed, Seegras.
reed, Schilfrohr.
board, Bret.
carve, schnitzen.
gloom, Gram.
doublet of velvet, Sammt-
wammis.
to keep the lead, voraus-
segeln.
- poop, Hintertheil (eines
Schiffs).
to range, herumschweifen
lassen.
dusky, dunkel.
gentleman of the king's
bed-chamber, königlicher
Kammerherr.
216. round-house, Wachhaus.
to take in, einziehen.
lay to, beilegen.
dawn, Morgendämmerung.
scoff, Spott.
fragrance, lieblicher Geruch.
grove, Wäldchen, Hain.
to swarm upon, einen
umschwärmen, einem durch
den Kopf gehen.
to dawn, tagen, anbrechen.
spicy grove, Spezerei-
Wald.
fane, Tempel.

17) "Noche triste," oder die Schreckensnacht zu Mexiko.

- expediency, Nutzen, Zweck-
mäßigkeit.
217. main land, Festland.
to argue, behaupten.
obvious, einleuchtend, augen-
scheinlich.
to deal, es zu thun haben.
to throw off, entfernen.
to anticipate, zuvorkommen.
wedge, Klumpen, Keil.
218. wary, vorsichtig.
to take heed, sich warnen
lassen.
bulk, Größe, Umfang.
to pine for, sich nach etwas
sehnen.
greedily, gierig.
to stow away, verwahren.
wallet, Quertasche.
conveyance, Transport-
mittel.
battle, Haupttreffen. [pen.
picked soldiers, Kerntrup-
to superintend, die Ober-
aufsicht führen.
breach, Kanal.
219. drizzling, nebelicht.
hushed in silence, in
Schweigen begraben.
to lurk, lauern.
- ambush, Hinterhalt.
to take the alarm, Alarm
machen.
huge, ungeheuer. [her.
gathering, von allen Seiten
to splash, plätschern.
220. at random, aufs Gerathe-
wohl.
to rend, zerreißen.
arrowy sleet, Pfeilregen,
Hagel von Pfeilen.
to dash, stoßen.
piece, Flinte.
to smart, zu leiden haben.
volley, Salve.
clustered, dicht bei ein-
ander.
sturdy, stark, verwegen.
framework, Zimmerarbeit.
to wedge, hineinklemmen.
import, Sinn, Inhalt.
221. pellmell, unordentlich unter
einander.
stunned, bestürzt, betäubt.
to shatter, zerschmettern.
so grapple, ins Sandge-
menge kommen.
faint, schwach.
scream, jämmerliches Ge-
schrei.
- target, Tartsche (Schild).
ingot, Goldklumpen.
fordable, zu durchwaten.
to cheer on, aufmuntern.
to falter, stocken.
grasp, Handvoll, Hand.
222. din, Getöse.
to shroud, bedecken.
to reel, wanken.
bludgeon, Keule.
verge, Rand.
223. frame, Gestalt.
to clear, überspringen.
feat, That.
to rival, sich mit etwas
messen können.
to jade, ermüden.
mail, Rüstung.
to tatter, zerreißen.
ooze, Morast.
rent, Riß, Loch.
bruise, Quetschung.
ghastly, schrecklich.
to soil, besudeln.
panoply, Ausrüstung.
wistfully, ernst.
224. brunt, heftiger Angriff.
minute, ausführlich.
to brand, brandmarken.

ANHANG I.

Fünzig Jahre oder die Abenteuer zweier Schulkameraden.

225. usher, Lehrgehilfe.
under-clerk, Unterschreiber.
livelihood, Unterhalt.
226. to defray, bezahlen.
homely, bäurisch.
drawingroom, Gesellschaftszimmer.
haberdasher, Krämer.
227. to fetter, fesseln.
settled, abgemacht.
228. disappointment, Widerwärtigkeit, Täuschung.
to turn philosopher, ein Philosoph werden.
abtruse, dunkel, schwierig.
229. to boast, rühmen.
preamble, Vorrede.
to take umbrage, Mißtrauen fassen.
good breeding, gute Lebensart.
stage, Bühne.
gauze, Gaze.
230. accessit, Nebenpreis.
to bring up, erziehen.
231. to put to the test, auf eine Probe ankommen lassen.
agreed, es bleibt dabei.
effects, Zahlung.
bill, Wechsel, Rechnung.
to break one's self of the habit, sich etwas abgewöhnen.
232. never mind, laß es gut sein!
to get on, Fortschritte machen.
place of appointment, verabredeter Platz.
all stuff, lauter Unsinn!
233. puppy, Gelbschnabel.
unbecoming, unanständig.
- who the deuce? was Teufels?
to get one's self into a scrape, sich in Verlegenheit bringen.
to endear, werth machen.
blockhead, Dummkopf.
to avow, erklären.
234. to recollect one's self, sich fassen.
there's the cloven foot, da schaut der Pferdefuß (des Teufels) heraus.
to pinch, drücken.
greenhorn, fam. Landfrosch.
collar, Kragen.
to comment upon, Anmerkungen machen zu.
235. cotton mill, Baumwollenfabrik.
marriage portion, Heirathsgut.
wing, Flügel des Hauses.
236. spark, Feuerbrand.
scoundrel, Schuft.
to put up with, einstecken, sich gefallen lassen.
to depend on, sich verlassen auf.
237. heir-loom, Erbstück.
jackanapes, Manlatze.
to grovel, kriechen.
238. stocked, versehen, besetzt.
to see, begleiten.
sneer, Stichelrede.
counting house, Comptoir.
to show in, einführen.
239. suspense, Ungewißheit.
paltry, armselig.
to be in store for, einen erwarten (aufgehäuft sein für).
240. stock broker, Actienmäkler.
- to recollect, sich eines erinnern.
bore, langweiliger Mensch.
to grub up, ausrotten.
partner, Associé, Compagnon.
241. check (Geld) Anweisung.
mechanic, Handarbeiter, Handwerker.
want, Bedürfniß.
office, Expeditionszimmer, Comptoir.
unaccountable, unerklärlich, seltsam.
242. a tone of authority, anmaßender, befehlender Ton.
to crawl, kriechen.
disdainfully, hochmüthig, verächtlich.
243. to bargain, handeln.
to blow, zersprengen.
244. affability, Liebenswürdigkeit.
improvement, Verbesserung.
to undervalue, geringschätzen, unterthäten.
245. clever, geschickt.
to be fond of, gerne thun.
to disgust, anekeln, verdrießen, beleidigen.
to be mistaken, sich irren.
pique, Groll, Haß.
to owe a grudge, grollen.
townhouse, Rathhaus.
head, Kapitel, Punkt.
to keep to, bei etwas bleiben.
to scold, zanken.
to bespeak, verkündigen, verrathen.
246. enormity, Abscheulichkeit.
void of manners, unbekannt mit guter Lebensart.
247. to overcome, überraschen.

ANHANG II.

Vermischte Gedichte.

248. to scatter, zerstreuen.
 knavish, bübisch.
 trick, Tücke, Streich.
 to sway, schwingen; führen
 (den Scepter).
 huzza, hurrah!
 main, die hohe See.
 strain, Weise, Gesang, Lied.
 in their turns, der Reihe
 nach.
 blast, Windstoß.
 matchless, ohne Gleichen.
249. to launch, in die See
 gehen, vom Stapel lassen.
 to match, die Spitze bieten.
 to sweep, ziehen.
 to start, aufsteigen, sich er-
 heben.
 steep, steile Rüste.
 meteor flag, Meteor-Flagge
 (von dem flammenden Stern
 in der englischen Flagge).
 Minstrel-boy, der junge
 Minnesänger.
 to sully, beflecken.
 note, Gesang.
 sod, der Rasen.
 dimly, trübe.
 sheet, Leintuch.
 shroud, Grabschut, Leichen-
 schut.
 to wind, wickeln.
 billow, Woge.
 to upbraid, schelten, tadeln.
 to reckon, sich kümmern.
 random gun, unregelmä-
 ßiges Kanonenfeuer.
250. gory, blutig.
 main, Kraft, Gewalt.
 to wait about, aufwarten.
 quo' für quoth, sagte.
 dear, schrecklich, hart.
 gear (g hart), Habe.
 to shrink, zittern.
 shallow, schwach.
 livings, Pfründen.
 cheer up! lustig! munter!
251. crozier, Krummstab.
 mitre, Bischofsmütze.
 rochet, Chorhemd.
 cope, Chorrock.
 noble, eine alte Goldmünze
 im Werth von 6 Schill.
 8 Pence, Rosenobel.
 to task, Einem Arbeit auf-
 legen.
 fleecy, wollicht.
 complexion, Gesichtsfarbe.
252. to fan, fächeln.
 to dress, zurecht machen.
 to loll, sich träge lehnen,
 sich gütlich thun.
 board, Tisch, Tafel.
 match, Lunten.
 to deem, halten für.
 to tarnish, verdunkeln.
 to question, bezweifeln.
 trainband, Milizsoldaten,
 Bürgerwehr.
 eke, auch, noch dazu.
 linen-draper, Leinwand-
 händler.
 calender, Tuchbereiter.
 agog, lüstern.
 smack, klatsch.
 saddletree, Sattelbaum.
 Cheapside, die belebteste
 Kaufstraße Londons.
253. to suit to the mind, nach
 Wunsche bedienen.
 good lack, daß Gott erbarm.
 curling, gekrümmt, gebogen.
 ear, Henkel.
 nimble, schnellfüßig.
 shod für shoed, beschuht,
 beschlagen.
 to snort, schnauben.
 to gall, wund reiben.
 curb, Kinnfette, Zaum.
 to stoop, sich bücken.
 neck or nought, über Stock
 und Stein.
 to run a rig, einen leb-
 haften Hengst reiten (und
- als Wortspiel: einen lusti-
 gen Streich machen).
 streamer, Fahne, Flagge.
 loop, Schnur, Schlinge.
 to bawl, schreien.
 to ride a race, wettrennen.
 in a trice, im Nu.
 turnepikeman, Weggeld-
 einnehmer. [triefen.
 to reek, dampfen, dunsten,
 to baste, mit einer Flüssig-
 keit begießen. [meln.
 to dangle, baumeln, bam-
 waist, Leib.
 gambol, Luftsprung.
254. trim, Aufzug.
 guise, Weise. [ahnen.
 to forebode, voraussagen,
 pin, Laune, Stimmung.
 comely, artig.
 to stare, staunen.
 bootless, unnütz, erfolglos.
 amain, über Hals und Kopf.
 to lumber, schlumpfen,
 schlankeln.
 to scamper, eilig reiten.
 the hue and cry, das
 Geschrei, womit Verbrecher
 verfolgt werden.
255. passing bell, Todtenglocke.
 to toll, läuten, ertönen.
 shed, Hütte.
 to wail, jammern, weh-
 klagen.
 gasp, Athemzug.
 agonised, zu Tode gequält,
 in den letzten Zügen liegend.
 clod, Klump, Kloss.
 fun, Posse.
 to frolic, lustige Streiche
 machen.
 to go about, mit etwas
 umgehen.
 to peep, gucken.
 peep, der (verstohlene) Blick.
 good-bye, gehab Dich wohl,
 leb' wohl.

256. knell, Todtenglocke.
to chide, schelten.
kindred, verwandt.
broad stone, Quaderstein.
to quail, verzagen.
bolt, Pfeil, Donnerkeil.
to peal, frachen, donnern.
shackles, Fesseln.
clime, Erdstrich.
charger, Schlachtroß.
curl, Locke.
to cluster, wassen.
wood-land, Waldung.
257. stocking, Strumpf.
kerchief, Tuch, Halstuch.
to hem, säumen.
porringer, Suppennapf.
to slide, schleifen, schlurren.
household, Familie.
glee, Freude, Fröhlichkeit.
lone, einsam.
to wrap, wickeln.
colours, Fahne.
lit von light, light up,
erleuchten, erhellen.
258. to lift, erheben.
to haunt, heimsuchen.
rapture, Entzückung.
to crave, verlangen, suchen.
to burst, aufsprengen, öffnen.
to wreath, winden.
bower, Laube.
- to encompass, umschließen,
umfassen.
throb, der Herzschlag.
to peal, schallen.
clarion, Zinke.
pennon, Fahne.
plume, Federbusch.
259. blast, Ton, Schall.
pelf, Geld, Mammon.
stern, crust.
meet, passend, geeignet.
shaggy, rauh.
sire, Vater.
rugged, schroff.
to chill, durchkälten.
leech, Arzt.
to droop, herabhängen.
falchion, Ballasch.
to sling, werfen.
260. to cleave, spalten.
pennant, Flagge.
linke, Kette, Band.
to rove, wandern, schweifen.
seeming, Aussehen.
to twine, verbinden.
playmate, Spielfamerad.
to carouse, zechen.
bosom-crony, Busenfreund.
to muse on, über etwas
sinnen.
haunt, Aufenthaltsort.
buglehorn, Hifthorn.
261. bough, Zweig.
fawn, Rehkalb.
hill and hollow, Berg
und Thal.
ringlet, Locke.
glen, Thal.
to ramble, streichen, schweifen.
palmer, Pilger.
keen, scharf, schneidend.
drifted, aufgehäuft.
to crouch, sich schmiegen.
form, die Sasse (das Lager
eines Hasen).
sullen, düster.
roar, Brausen.
ford over, durchwaten.
ranger, Wildmeister, Forst-
wart.
dank, feucht.
alder, Erle.
rank, Reihe.
to welter, sich wälzen.
262. to see from, unterscheiden.
bolt, Blitz.
to impart, mittheilen, ver-
leihen.
aught, etwas.
to bide, ertragen.
to quicken, beleben.
to bestow, verleihen.
incense, Weihrauch.

Druckfehler.

Seite 11 Zeile 35 und 36 lies the building und Manufactory statt theabuilding und Ma-
nuf ctory. S. 24 3. 37 l. authority st. authority. S. 40 3. 8 l. real st. rea; und 3. 28 me-
thinks st. methings. S. 48 3. 23 l. prize st. price. S. 66 3. 25 l. broken st. brocken.
S. 96 3. 7 l. I know st. I know. S. 110 3. 27 und 28 l. until u. led st. until u. leed.
S. 111 3. 12 l. landlady st. landlay. S. 112 3. 34 l. disabled st. dis abled. S. 129 3. 18
l. It is st. Is it. S. 139 3. 36 l. over st. ower. S. 166 3. 37 l. survive st. survis. S. 167
3. 4 l. maintained st. maintained. S. 171 3. 23 l. possessed st. possesed. S. 172 3. 22
l. That it st. That is. S. 176 3. 32 l. solemn st. solem. S. 199 3. 12 l. extorted statt
exorted. S. 213 3. 36 l. persisted st. peristed. S. 222 3. 24 l. of followers st. a followers.
S. 231 3. 8 l. agreed st. agree.

V e r z e i c h n i s s

der

englischen und italienischen Lehrbücher des Verfassers.

Englische Schulgrammatik in zwei stufenweise geordneten Abtheilungen.

Zweite verbesserte Auflage. 1852.

I. Abtheilung: Elementar-Cursus. 56 fr. oder 18 Sgr.

II. Abtheilung: Höherer Cursus. 1851. 1 fl. 12 fr. oder 24 Sgr.

Study and Recreation oder Englische Chrestomathie in zwei Cursus. Zweite Auflage. 1852.

I. Cursus für mittlere Real- und Gymnasialklassen 1 fl. 12 fr. oder 24 Sgr.

II. Cursus als Handbuch der englischen Literatur für höhere Lehranstalten.

(Unter der Presse.)

Hours of Conversation oder Englische Sprechschule, nach naturgemäßen, logischen Grundsätzen bearbeitet (unter der Presse). 1852.

Studio Italiano, Italienische Chrestomathie für Real- und Gelehrtschulen. 1848. 1 fl. oder 20 Sgr.

Stuttgart, im März 1852.

Ebner & Seubert,

Verlagsbuchhandlung.

1811

No

Received of the Treasurer of the County of ...

the sum of ...

for ...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

Gantter, Ludwig, 1815-1876

Englische Chresthomatie für Real- und gelehrte Schulen und den
Privatgebrauch

Bd.: 1. Für mittlere Classen. - 2., veränd. Aufl. - 1852. - VIII, 311 S.

Stuttgart 1852

Augsburg, Staats- und Stadtbibliothek -- Spw 733 -1
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11280464-6